

ne T 919.18.680

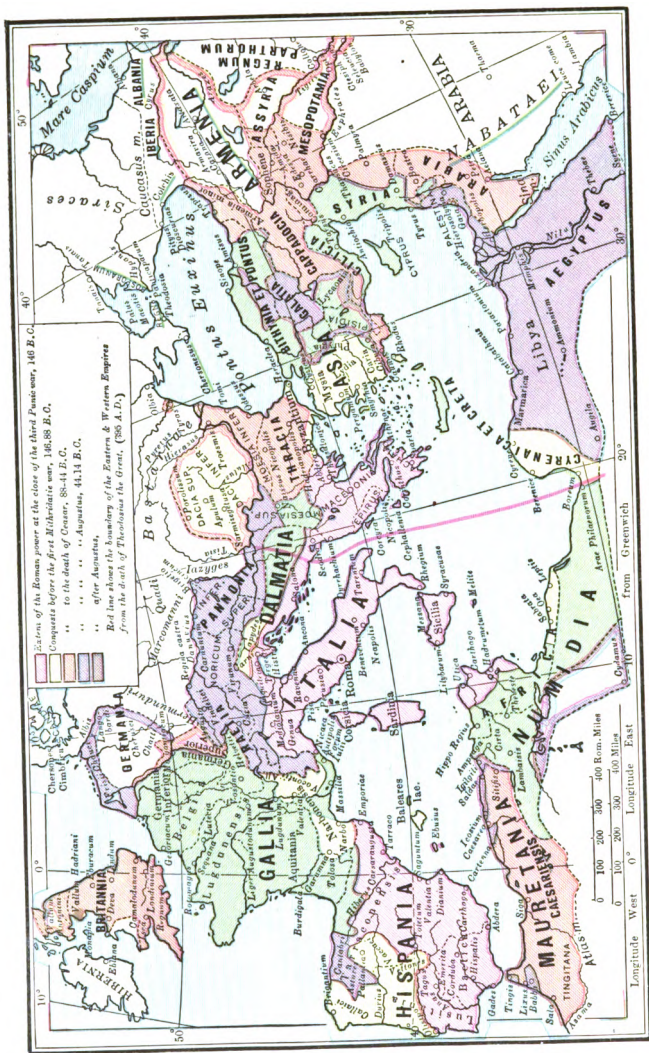
Albert A. Howard

With the Author's Compliments,
Albert S. Perkins

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY



3 2044 097 074 553



THE ROMAN EMPIRE

BEGINNING LATIN BOOK

BY

ALBERT S. PERKINS

HEAD OF DEPARTMENT OF ANCIENT LANGUAGES
DORCHESTER HIGH SCHOOL
BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS

οὐ πολλ' ἀλλὰ πολύ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

CHICAGO

NEW YORK

BOSTON

Educ T 919.18.680
v

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
FROM THE LIBRARY OF
PROF. ALBERT ANDREW HOWARD
OCT. 15, 1929

COPYRIGHT, 1918,
BY BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

PREFACE

THIS book is based on the idea that Latin originals should be correlated with English derivatives, in college preparatory, general, commercial, and other vocational classes of the High School or Junior High School. Consequently, the Latin words in the Vocabularies have been so selected that nearly all lead to English derivatives. There are about 500 of these roots in the first 79 Lessons, 100 or so in the Additional Lessons, 84 in the exercise, "Added Words Leading to English Derivatives," and some 175 more in the Reading Matter, Quotations, Mottoes, Abbreviations, and Latin Songs. Thus, allowing for repetitions, there are in the whole book about 750 Latin roots, not counting prefixes.

In the selection of Latin words for the Vocabularies, Lodge's "Vocabulary of High School Latin" has been consulted, with the result that a large portion are Caesarian, with a comparatively small number exclusively from Cicero, Vergil, or other sources. Since, in the words of Professor Marsh in the new Century Dictionary, "the vocabulary of literature and commerce contains a majority of words of foreign origin, chiefly Latin," the commercial vocabulary fits in admirably with this scheme.

It is intended that each Lesson shall constitute a day's work for the class. If, however, the Latin sentences are read at sight, there will be time for considerable review work on the days when the reading exercises are given. If the teacher does not feel the need of such review, the next Lesson may be begun, with much saving of time.

Principles of syntax are given early. But I am firmly of the opinion that they should be studied inductively and not overemphasized, by far the most important consideration being that the pupil shall understand the Latin text when these principles appear. In general I have used the terms recommended by the Joint Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature.

For the illustrations I am indebted in large measure to my wife, Mrs. Mattie C. Perkins, who has also given me help in the selection of material and in the preparation of the sentences in the earlier Lessons. The illustrations were taken largely from photographs and originals at the Boston Museum of Fine Arts. A few were obtained from well-known works of art, Hekler, Baumeister, and other sources.

For grammatical principles I have consulted Lane, Allen and Greenough, Bennett, Hale and Buck, and Burton. In the matter of "hidden quantity," I have been guided by both Bennett's "Latin Language" and Hale and Buck's Grammar.

With reference to the Reading Matter, *A Roman Girl*, *An Ancient Ghost Story*, and *Death of the Pet Sparrow* were selected both on account of their literary merit and because they contain a large number of Latin words which lead to new derivatives or serve as a review of those that have occurred before. The extracts from the "Story of Robinson Crusoe" were adapted from the book of G. F. Goffaux, a Latin scholar of the time of the First Napoleon. This work was based, not on the original of Defoe, but on a German adaptation and abridgment. There are two copies in the Widener Library of Harvard University, one of which, bearing on the fly leaf the name of James Russell Lowell, written in a boyish hand, is in the prize collection of Charles Eliot Norton. This book may not be taken from the Library. The second copy, from which I made the selections, printed

in Paris in 1813, was picked up in that city in 1845 by the late Dr. Samuel Kneeland of Boston. My attention was first directed to Goffaux's work by Dr. A. A. Howard of Harvard University, who, after commenting on the fact that the Latin teacher, as compared with a teacher of Modern Languages, is handicapped in the matter of interest because there is no Latin literature exclusively for young people, mentioned Goffaux's "Robinson Crusoe" as of unusual interest for boys and girls, and on the whole written in very good Latin. The vocabulary is excellent, whether considered from the viewpoint of English derivation or as a foundation for Caesar, while the simple constructions are almost exclusively Caesarian.

For practice in the direct method, oral exercises have been placed at the end of the English-Latin sentences as far as Lesson XLV, and subsequently in connection with the easy Latin stories preceding *A Roman Girl*, pp. 215-219. The Latin Quotations, Proverbs, and Phrases, Latin Mottoes, and Abbreviations have been carefully selected and verified. With reference to the Latin Songs, one is the Latin version of an old nursery rhyme, set to the tune of a Spanish folk song, another is perhaps the most popular Latin student song extant, and the third is the well-known ode of Horace, with music by Flemming.

I take this occasion to acknowledge my indebtedness to friends who have examined the manuscript or read proof-sheets, correcting mistakes and suggesting improvements. Accordingly I express my gratitude to Dr. H. R. Fairclough of Stanford University, general editor of the series; Professor G. H. Stempel of Indiana University; Miss Frances E. Sabin of the University of Wisconsin; Dr. B. L. Ullman of the University of Pittsburgh; Dr. C. B. Randolph of Clark College; Miss Edith S. Cushing, Miss Lillian G. Marr, and Mrs. Laura S. Clark of the Dorchester High School; Mr. W. L.

Anderson, Head of the Commercial Department of the same school, who first suggested to me the idea of the study of Latin for English vocabulary; Mr. E. H. Atherton, Head of the Department of Ancient Languages of the Boston Girls' Latin School; Miss Mary J. Foley of the same school; Mr. H. C. Jones, Head of the Department of Latin in the Boston Public Latin School; Mr. F. A. Kennedy, Head of the Latin Department in the Boston Girls' High School; Miss Caroline W. Trask, Head of the Latin Department in the West Roxbury High School; Miss Adele Allen, Head of the Latin Department in the Holyoke High School; Miss Elise H. Martens of the Oakland, California, Technical High School; Dr. A. P. McKinley of the Lincoln High School, Portland, Oregon; Mr. Hopkin Jenkins of the Jefferson High School, Portland, Oregon; Miss Winona Bailey of the Queen Anne High School, Seattle; Miss Jessie Keith of the Broadway High School, Seattle; Miss Lillian V. Johnson of the Lincoln High School, Seattle; Mr. W. L. Carr of the University High School, Chicago; and finally Prof. Clifford H. Moore of Harvard University, my Latin instructor in the Classical Seminary.

ALBERT S. PERKINS.

JANUARY, 1918.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	iii
DIRECTIONS TO TEACHERS	xvii
LATIN LANGUAGE. PRONUNCIATION.	
Latin Language. Alphabet. Vowels. Diphthongs. Consonants. Quantity. Syllables. Accent. Parts of Speech. Inflection	1
LESSON	
I. FIRST OR a-DECLENSION.	
Est, Sunt, Amat, Amant. Subject. Object. Predicate Noun	6
II. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON	9
III. SECOND OR o-DECLENSION. NOUNS IN -us.	
Apposition. Limiting Genitive, Indirect Object	11
IV. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON	13
V. Amō, Amor, Sum.	
Some Present Indicative Forms	15
VI. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON	17
VII. SECOND DECLENSION (<i>Continued</i>).	
Nouns in -er and -ir. Neuters. Ablative of Place. Ablative of Accompaniment. Vocative	19
VIII. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON	20
IX. ADJECTIVE AGREEMENT. PAST INDICATIVE. ADVERBS.	
Adjectives in -us. Past Indicative of Sum . Past Indicative, Active and Passive, of Amō . Adverbs. Agreement of Adjectives. Dative of Possession	23

LESSON	PAGE
X. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON . . .	24
XI. ADJECTIVES. FUTURE INDICATIVE. ADVERBS.	
Adjectives in -er . Future Indicative of Sum .	
Future Indicative, Active and Passive, of Amō .	
Adverbs. Ablative of Respect	26
XII. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON . . .	28
REVIEW OF LESSONS I-XII	30
XIII. THIRD DECLENSION. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.	
PERFECT INDICATIVE.	
Third Declension. Nouns with Mute Stems.	
Principal Parts of the First Conjugation. Per-	
fect Indicative of Sum . Perfect Indicative	
Active of Amō . Ablative of Manner	33
XIV. EXERCISES	36
XV. THIRD DECLENSION. PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE	
PERFECT.	
Third Declension of Nouns. Liquid Stems.	
Past Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative of	
Sum . Past Perfect and Future Perfect Indica-	
tive of Amō . Ablative of Cause. Predicate	
Accusative. Nonne , Num , and -ne in Questions	37
XVI. EXERCISES	39
XVII. THIRD DECLENSION (<i>Continued</i>).	
Third Declension. <i>i</i> -Stems. Mixed Stems.	
Partitive Genitive. Dative of Purpose or Tend-	
ency	40
XVIII. EXERCISES	42
XIX. IRREGULAR NOUNS. Amō (<i>Continued</i>).	
Irregular Nouns. Perfect, Past Perfect, and	
Future Perfect Indicative Passive of Amō .	
Locative	43
XX. EXERCISES	45
REVIEW OF LESSONS XIII-XX	47

CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XXI. PREPOSITIONS. PREFIXES. DATIVE WITH COM- POUND VERBS	49
XXII. ADJECTIVES. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF Moneō . DE- SCRIPTIVE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE. Adjectives of Third Declension with Three Terminations. Adverbs. Principal Parts and Indicative, Active and Passive, of Verbs of Second Conjugation. Descriptive Genitive and Ablative	51
XXIII. EXERCISES	53
XXIV. ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND INFINITIVES. Adjectives of Third Declension with One and Two Terminations. Adverbs. Infini- tives of Sum , Amō , and Moneō , Active and Passive. Genitive with Adjectives	54
XXV. EXERCISES	56
XXVI. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. PARTICIPLES. Irregular Adjectives of First and Second Declensions. Participles of Amō and Moneō , Active and Passive. Future Participle of Sum . Dative with Adjectives	57
XXVII. EXERCISES	59
XXVIII. COMPOUNDS OF Sum . Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles of Possum , Prōsum , and Other Compounds of Sum . Complementary Infinitive	60
XXIX. EXERCISES	62
REVIEW OF LESSONS XXI-XXIX	63
XXX. FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS. Declension of Domus . Relations of Time. Extent of Space	67
XXXI. EXERCISES	69

LESSON	PAGE
XXXII. THIRD CONJUGATION.	
Principal Parts, Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles, Active and Passive, of Third Conjugation. Possessive Genitive. Predi- cate Genitive	70
XXXIII. EXERCISES	72
XXXIV. THIRD CONJUGATION (<i>Continued</i>).	
Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles, Active and Passive, of -iō Verbs of Third Conjugation. Ablative Absolute . . .	73
XXXV. EXERCISES	75
XXXVI. DEPONENT VERBS.	
Dependent Verbs. Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles of First Three Conjugations. Subject Accusative	77
XXXVII. EXERCISES	79
REVIEW OF LESSONS XXX-XXXVII . . .	80
XXXVIII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJEC- TIVES. ABLATIVE OF PRICE	83
XXXIX. EXERCISES	85
XL. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.	
Particles for Asking Questions: Nonne , Num, -ne	86
XLI. EXERCISES	88
XLII. RELATIVE PRONOUNS	89
XLIII. EXERCISES	90
XLIV. INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES	92
XLV. EXERCISES	94
REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVIII-XLV . . .	96

CONTENTS

xi

LESSON	PAGE
XLVI. COMPARISON.	
Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs. Declension of Comparative. Ablative of Comparison, When Quam , Than , Is Omitted .	99
XLVII. EXERCISES	102
XLVIII. COMPARISON (<i>Continued</i>).	
Comparison of Adjectives in -er and of Six Adjectives in -lis . Comparison of Corresponding Adverbs. Ablative of Measure of Difference	104
XLIX. EXERCISES	107
L. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.	
Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of Plūs	109
LI. EXERCISES	111
LII. IRREGULAR COMPARISON (<i>Concluded</i>).	
Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (<i>Concluded</i>). Irregular Comparison of Adverbs .	113
LIII. EXERCISES	117
REVIEW OF LESSONS XLVI-LIII	118
LIV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.	
Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles, Active and Passive, of Audiō . Deponents of Fourth Conjugation. Ablative of Means with Ūtor , Fruor , Fungor , etc.	122
LV. EXERCISES	124
LVI. CARDINAL NUMERALS.	
Cardinal Numerals. Declension of Duo , Trēs , Mīlia . Genitive of Measure	125
LVII. EXERCISES	127

LESSON	PAGE
LVIII. ORDINAL NUMERALS.	
Ordinal Numerals. Semi-Deponents . . .	129
LIX. EXERCISES	131
LATIN DERIVATION.	
Derivation and Composition of Latin Words.	
Corresponding English Suffixes . . .	132
REVIEW OF LESSONS LIV-LIX	137
LX. IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
Imperative of Sum , Prōsum , and of Four	
Conjugations, including Deponents . . .	140
LXI. EXERCISES	142
LXII. GERUND, GERUNDIVE, AND SUPINE.	
Gerund, Gerundive, Supines, of Four Con-	
jugations. Simple Indirect Discourse . . .	143
LXIII. EXERCISES	145
LXIV. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FIRST TWO CONJUGATIONS.	
Subjunctive Mood, Active and Passive, of	
First and Second Conjugations. Harmony of	
Tenses. Indirect Questions	146
LXV. EXERCISES	148
LXVI. PURE PURPOSE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, THIRD AND	
FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.	
Subjunctive, Active and Passive, of Third	
and Fourth Conjugations. Subjunctive of De-	
ponents. Cum Temporal. Clauses of Purpose	149
LXVII. EXERCISES	150
LXVIII. USÈS OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Subjunctive of Sum , Possum , and Prōsum .	
Subjunctive in Independent Clauses : (a) Com-	
mands and Exhortations ; (b) Wishes . . .	152
LXIX. EXERCISES	154

CONTENTS

xiii

LESSON	PAGE
LXX. USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE (<i>Continued</i>).	
Subjunctive in Independent Clauses (<i>Concluded</i>); (c) Prohibitions; (d) Potential; (e) Dubitative	156
LXXI. EXERCISES	158
REVIEW OF LESSONS LX-LXXI	159
LXXII. Ferō. CAUSAL CLAUSES.	
Ferō and Its Compounds. Cum Causal. Quod, Quia, and Quoniam Clauses	163
LXXIII. EXERCISES	165
LXXIV. Fīō. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES. CONSTRUCTION WITH	
VERBS OF FEARING	167
LXXV. EXERCISES	169
LXXVI. Volō, Nōlō, Mālō. TIME CLAUSES.	
Volō, Nōlō, Mālō. Uses of Postquam, Dum, etc.	170
LXXVII. EXERCISES	172
LXXVIII. Eō. RELATIONS OF PLACE. PURE RESULT	173
LXXIX. EXERCISES	175
REVIEW OF LESSONS LXXII-LXXIX	177

ADDITIONAL LESSONS

I. PURPOSE CLAUSES.	
Pure, Relative, and Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Construction with Verbs of Fearing	180
II. EXERCISES	182
III. RESULT CLAUSES.	
Pure, Relative, and Substantive Clauses of Result. Descriptive Relative Clauses. Quān and Quōminus Clauses	184

LESSON	PAGE
IV. EXERCISES	186
V. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	188
VI. EXERCISES	189
VII IMPERSONAL VERBS.	
Impersonal Verbs. Construction with Miseret , Paenitet , etc., and with Réfert and Interest . Verbs Which Govern Dative. Construction in Passive	192
VIII. EXERCISES	193
IX. DEFECTIVE VERBS.	
Defective Verbs. Subjunctive of Proviso. Dif- ferent Ways of Expressing Purpose. Construc- tion with Verbs of <i>Remembering</i> and <i>Forgetting</i>	195
X. EXERCISES	197
REVIEW OF ADDITIONAL LESSONS I-X	199
XI. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF INTEREST	203
XII. EXERCISES	205
XIII. THE INFINITIVE.	
Infinitive as Noun. Infinitive Clauses	206
XIV. EXERCISES	208
XV. GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE	209
REVIEW OF ADDITIONAL LESSONS XI-XV	210
ADDED LATIN WORDS LEADING TO ENGLISH DE- RIVATIVES	212
READING MATTER :	
The Bad Boy	215
The Sporting Doctor	216
Too Clever	217
The Young Shaver	218
The Touch of Gold	218
A Roman Girl	219

CONTENTS

XV

	PAGE
An Ancient Ghost Story	222
Death of the Pet Sparrow	224
Story of Robinson Crusoe	226
NOTES TO READING MATTER	246
LATIN SONGS :	
Mica, Mica, Parva Stella	259
Gaudeamus Igitur	260
Integer Vitae	261
FAMILIAR LATIN QUOTATIONS, PROVERBS, AND PHRASES	262
LATIN MOTTOES	268
ABBREVIATIONS FROM THE LATIN	272
PARADIGMS	273
RULES OF SYNTAX	319
VOCABULARY — LATIN-ENGLISH	335
ENGLISH-LATIN	405
INDEX	431

DIRECTIONS TO TEACHERS

IN the opinion of the author, the purpose and end of the study of Latin in secondary schools is English vocabulary building and ability to read simple Latin literature readily and appreciatively. Hence in a Beginning Book, while forms must be mastered, and principles of syntax familiarized by inductive study, yet the chief emphasis — or, at least, much emphasis — should be placed on the correlation of English derivative with Latin original, both in college preparatory and vocational classes. Thus the Latin helps the English, and the English helps the Latin. In fact, in the author's experience, no means of reading Latin at sight has been found so effective as association of English derivative, whose meaning the pupil knows, with Latin original, whose meaning he may not know.

This association of English and Latin should begin with the first Latin sentence in the Beginning Book, and continue in the case of every Latin author subsequently read. That the pupil may learn unconsciously to think of English derivatives in connection with Latin originals, it is recommended that all Latin sentences in the Beginning Book be *read at sight*, both in college preparatory and vocational sections. The method of procedure should be the same for both classes, at least in the beginning weeks. In general, in a vocational class the teacher will naturally emphasize English vocabulary, while in a college preparatory division, although the English side of the subject is in reality an aim, yet it may often appear chiefly as an aid in mastering the Latin, and in learning how to read easily and appreciatively.

The author believes that the Index Book and the Derivative Notebook should be kept by college preparatory and vocational pupils alike throughout the course, and presented

at the time of the examination for admission to college exactly in the same way as a laboratory notebook in Science. In college preparatory classes, however, excellent results have been obtained by discontinuing the notebooks after Lesson XXX or thereabouts and associating the English with the Latin orally, or by merely correlating the two languages from the start without the use of a notebook at all. It is needless to add that a teacher not believing in English vocabulary building — if such can be found — may omit the English derivatives entirely, and use the Beginning Book in exactly the same way as the ordinary first-year book.

The Latin words should first be recorded in the Index Book, which may be any small, inexpensive notebook large enough to contain 600 or 700 Latin words. In addition to the Index Book the pupils should be provided with a Derivative Notebook of 100 pages, more or less, about 6½ by 8½ inches, ruled. For the college preparatory course of four years, four or five of these books will be required. Loose sheets of punched paper, such as are commonly used in laboratory courses, may be substituted.

After a word has been recorded in the Index Book, it is assigned to a page in the Derivative Notebook. Then the pupil begins his search for derivatives. He should first consult an English dictionary, such as Webster's Secondary School Dictionary,¹ and find as many English words as possible from the simple root of the Latin word, and then for additional derivatives go through with the Latin prefixes, taken in alphabetical order. A list of these prefixes (see Lesson XXI, pp. 49-51) should be pasted on the inside cover of every Derivative Notebook.

The derivatives are classified as parts of speech, and defined, the definitions being framed by the student so far as possible from the meaning of the Latin roots, prefixes, and

¹ A small English dictionary may be obtained at most school supply stores for ten cents. The Latin derivation in such books is usually not given, but pupils experience no difficulty in using them, since the roots of the English and Latin words are the same.

suffixes. These derivatives are to be reviewed and added to whenever the Latin word is subsequently met.

It will be found helpful for students to bring into class, perhaps once a week, a few difficult English words of Latin origin which they have encountered in their school work or outside reading. These should be connected with the Latin originals, and their meanings traced, the pupils thus being trained to look for Latin roots in English words. In order that students may familiarize themselves with the practical use of the words they have recorded and defined, they should be required from time to time to compose, both orally and in writing, sentences containing given derivatives. Dictation exercises should also be given at frequent intervals.

In the Index Book make a division of the pages into twenty parts. Omit J, K, W, X, Y, and Z. Have a larger number of pages for A, C, I, P, and S, a smaller number for G, H, N, R, and U, and only a few pages for B and Q.

In the Reading Exercises the Latin and English sentences marked **b** may be omitted entirely, if the teacher wishes to save time, or they may be taken by the more proficient pupils as additional exercises, or by the whole class in review.

The Review Lessons may be taken as a whole, after the lessons immediately preceding have been finished, or in part from day to day in connection with these lessons. The Additional Lessons in college preparatory classes may be omitted entirely, or taken by the more proficient pupils, or by the whole class at the beginning of the second year, as review exercises before beginning Caesar. The exercise entitled Added Words Leading to English Derivatives is intended primarily for vocational classes.

For Junior High School pupils, especially of the seventh grade, it is recommended that emphasis be placed on the English side of the subject and that all sentences under **b** be omitted.

The lessons are arranged so that the class on one day study forms, syntax, or vocabulary, and the next day in the sentences make application of what has already been learned.

It will be noted that this logical arrangement lends itself naturally to the modern idea of supervised study.

In the opinion of the author, the Beginning Book contains sufficient material for a two years' vocational course. It should be given one and a half or two years in the seventh and eighth years, in the Junior High School, while in the ninth-year classical courses the entire book should be covered in one year.

SAMPLE PAGE OF PUPIL'S DERIVATIVE NOTE-BOOK (NOUN)

ANNUS, I, M., "YEAR"

annalist, n.,	a writer of annals.
annalistic, a.,	
annals, n. pl.,	yearly records
anniversary, {	{ n., (<i>verto, versum</i> , turn), a stated day,
	{ a., coming once a year
	returning on a stated day each year
annual, {	{ a., pertaining to the year, yearly
	{ n., a thing happening yearly, a work published once a year
annually, adv.,	
annuitant, n.,	one who receives, or is entitled to receive, an annuity
annuity, n.,	a yearly allowance of money
biennial, a.,	happening once in two years
biennially, adv.,	
centennial, {	{ a., (<i>centum</i> , hundred), happening once in
	{ n., 100 years
	celebration of the hundredth anniversary; a centenary
millennium, n.,	(<i>mille</i> , a thousand), a thousand years; the reign of Christ for 1000 years, when holiness is to be triumphant
millennial, a.,	pertaining to the millennium
millennialist, n.,	one who believes in the doctrine of the millennium
perennial, a.,	lasting through the year; never failing
perennially, adv.,	
semi-annual, a.,	half-yearly
semi-annually, adv.,	
superannuate, v.,	to disqualify by age or infirmity
superannuated, a.,	too old for usefulness
superannuation, n.,	

SAMPLE PAGE OF PUPIL'S DERIVATIVE NOTE- BOOK (VERB)

QUATIŌ, QUASSUM (IN COMPOSITION, -CUTIŌ, -CUSSUM),
"SHAKE"

quash, v.,	beat down or in pieces, crush, put an end to
quassation, n.,	the act of shaking, or the state of being shaken
quassative, a.,	tremulous, easily shaken
concussion, n.,	the act of shaking or agitating, especially by the stroke or impact of another body, state of being shaken, the shock caused by two bodies coming suddenly and violently into collision
concussive, a.,	having the power or quality of shaking by sudden or violent stroke or impulse
concutient, a.,	coming suddenly into collision, colliding
discuss, v.,	agitate, debate, reason upon
discussable, a.,	capable of being discussed
discusser, n.,	one who discusses
discussion, n.,	debate, argument about something
discussional, a.,	of or pertaining to discussion
discussive, n.,	a medicine that disperses or scatters, a discutient
discutient, { a.,	dispersing morbid matter
{ n.,	a medicine or application which disperses a swelling or effusion
percuss, v.,	strike against, so as to shake or give a shock to
percussion, n.,	the striking of one body against another
rescue, v.,	(re, ex, -cutiŌ), liberate, release, free from confinement, danger, violence
rescuer, n.,	one who rescues

BEGINNING LATIN BOOK

LATIN LANGUAGE. PRONUNCIATION

1. The Latin Language. Latin was the language of the ancient Romans, a people whose chief city was Rome, in Italy, and whose realm at the period of greatest power, about the beginning of the Christian era, included virtually the whole civilized world. From the Latin are derived not only modern French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese, but fully sixty per cent of the words in our English vocabulary. Since these words are the most difficult in the language to spell and understand, it is evident that the study of Latin is essential to a thorough mastery of English.

2. The Alphabet. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *J* and *W*. *J* is merely a very late form of *I*, and was not used by the Romans. *I* is therefore a consonant, as well as a vowel. *I* is usually a consonant at the beginning of a word before a vowel, and when standing between vowels. *K* occurs in only a few words.

3. Vowels. The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*.

4. Pronunciation. Quantity. Vowels are either *long* or *short*. The long vowels differ from the short not only in the length of time taken for utterance, but also (except *a*) in quality, being *closer* than the short.¹ A *long* vowel is marked thus: *ā*. Unmarked vowels in this book are *short*. The vowels have the following sounds :

<i>Long</i>	<i>Short</i>
<i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i> . <i>fās, hāc.</i>	<i>a</i> as in <i>along</i> . <i>stat, amat.</i>
<i>ē</i> as in <i>they</i> . <i>mēns, lēx.</i>	<i>e</i> as in <i>let</i> . <i>et, ego.</i>
<i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i> . <i>īdem, mīles.</i>	<i>i</i> as in <i>pin</i> . <i>iter, ille.</i>
<i>ō</i> as in <i>holy</i> . <i>nōn, ōrdō.</i>	<i>o</i> as in <i>obey</i> . <i>octō, opus.</i>
<i>ū</i> as in <i>rule</i> . <i>ūnō, nūmen.</i>	<i>u</i> as in <i>full</i> . <i>urbs, ut.</i>
<i>y</i> like French <i>u</i> , German <i>ü</i> .	

5. Diphthongs.

ae as *ai* in *aisle*. *aetās, saepe.*

au as *ow* in *now*. *aut, audāx.*

ei as in *eight*. *deinde* (also as *de-inde*).

eu, short *e* followed by short *u* in one syllable. *seu.*

oe as *oy* in *toy*. *foedus, moenia.*

ui occurring almost exclusively in *cui* and *huic*, which are pronounced much like *kwee* and *wheek*.

6. Consonants. The consonants may be classified as follows :

Mutes : Labials, *p, b* ; Gutturals (or Palatals), *k, c, g, q* ; Linguals, *t, d*.

Liquids, *l, r*.

Nasals, *m, n*.

¹ Vowels are either *open* or *close*. With the former, the tongue is lax and allows the breath to pass out without hindrance ; with *close* vowels the tongue is raised and tense, so as to leave only a narrow space for the breath.

Spirants, *f*, *s*, *h*. *H* is merely a rough breathing, and need not be counted as a consonant.

Double consonants, *x*(*ks*), *z*(*ds*).

7. Pronunciation.

b, *d*, *f*, *h*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *r* are pronounced as in English, except that *bs*, *bt* are pronounced *ps*, *pt*, and *r* is trilled or rolled.

c is always pronounced as *k*.

g is always as in *get*, never as in *gem*.

i consonant is always like *y* in *yet*.

qu, *gu*, and sometimes *su*, before a vowel have the sound of *kw*, *gw*, and *sw*, respectively. Here *u* has the value of consonant *v*, and is not counted a vowel.

s always has the hissing sound, as in *sea*, never as in *rose*.

t always like *t* in *native*, never as in *nation*.

v like *w*.

x as *ks*, like *x* in *extreme*, never as in *examine*.

ch, *ph*, *th* are like *c*, *p*, and *t*, followed by a breathing.

Doubled letters, as *ll*, *mm*, *tt*, etc., should be so pronounced that both consonants may be distinctly heard.

8. Syllables. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels and diphthongs: **mer-cā-tō-re**, **mī-li-tēs**. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the one which follows it: **vo-lat**, **a-mat**. Doubled consonants, as *tt*, *ss*, etc., are always separated; as, **vit-tae**, **dē-fes-sus**. Other combinations of two or more consonants are regularly separated, and the first consonant is joined with the vowel which precedes. An exception occurs when the two consonants consist of a mute followed by *l* or *r*. In such cases both consonants are regularly joined to the following vowel; as, **a-grī**, **mā-trēs**. But if the *l* or *r* introduces

the second part of a compound, the two consonants are separated; as, **ab-rumpō**, **ad-lātus**.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the syllable before the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult the *antepenult*.

9. Quantity of Vowels.

(a) Diphthongs are long.

(b) A vowel is long before *nf*, *ns*, and probably before *nx* and *nct*; also, when it is the result of contraction.

(c) A vowel is generally short before another vowel or *h*; also, as a rule, before *nt*, *nd*, *ss*, and, in final syllables, before single consonants other than *s*.

10. Quantity of Syllables.

(a) A syllable is long by nature when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

(b) A syllable is long by position when it contains a short vowel followed by a double consonant (*x* or *z*), or by any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*. In the last case a syllable with a short vowel is said to be common (either long or short); thus **pātris** (from **pāter**), but **mātris** (from **māter**).

(c) A syllable is long if it contains the vowel *a*, *e*, *o*, or *u* followed by consonant *i*.

(d) A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel or a single consonant.

(e) In determining the quantity of syllables *h* is not counted as a consonant.

11. Accent.

(a) Words of two syllables are accented on the first.

(b) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult when the penult is long, and on the antepenult when the penult is short.

12. The Parts of Speech. The parts of speech in Latin, as in English, are nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections. The Latin has no article.

13. Inflection. Of these eight parts of speech, nouns, pronouns, verbs, and adjectives are capable of *inflection*, that is, of undergoing change of form to express change in meaning. With nouns, pronouns, and adjectives this change of form is called *declension*; with verbs it is called *conjugation*.

14. Gender of Nouns. The names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.

The names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine.

Indeclinable nouns, also infinitives and phrases used as nouns, are neuter.

The gender of many nouns is indicated by the ending of the nominative singular, as will be shown later.

15. Number of Nouns. The Latin has two numbers, the singular and plural. The singular denotes one object; the plural, more than one.

16. Cases of Nouns. There are six cases in Latin :

Nominative. Case of the *subject*.

Genitive. Case of the *objective* with *of*, or the *possessive*.

Dative. Case of the *objective* with *to* or *for*.

Accusative. Case of the *direct object*.

Vocative. Case of *address*.

Ablative. Case of the *objective* with *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*, *on*, or *at*.

17. Conjugation. Latin verbs have three moods: *indicative*, *subjunctive*, *imperative*; also the forms: *infinitive*, *participle*, *gerund*, *gerundive*, and *supine*.

The tenses are the same in Latin as in English: *present*, *past descriptive*,¹ *future*, *perfect*, *past perfect*,² and *future perfect*.

There are two voices in Latin, *active* and *passive*.

18. Base of a Word. The *base* of an inflected word is the *permanent part* to which terminations are added.

LESSON I

FIRST OR a-DECLENSION

Est, Sunt, Amat, Amant. Subject, Object, Predicate Noun.

19. Learn the declension of *insula*, Paradigms, p. 273.

20. Study the rules for *Subject*, *Object*, and *Predicate Noun*, Rules of Syntax, 1, 2, 4, p. 319.

Examples:

Subject: The sailor praises. Nauta laudat.

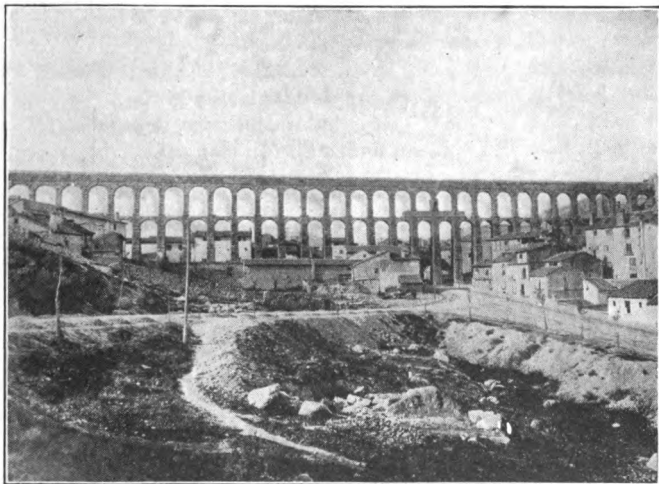
¹ Commonly called the *imperfect*.

² Commonly called the *pluperfect*.

Object: The girl loves (her) native land. Puella patriam amat.

Agreement of Verb: The islands are small. Īnsulae sunt parvae.

Predicate Noun: Octavia is a lady. Octāvia est domina.



ROMAN AQUEDUCT AT SEGOVIA, SPAIN

21. Learn the words in the Vocabulary. Be prepared to give the Latin, if English words are called, or the English, if Latin words are called. Nouns of the first declension end in **-a** in the nominative case. Notice that the adjectives given here have the same endings as the feminine nouns.¹

¹ Nouns of the first declension are feminine, unless they denote males.

VOCABULARY

<i>aqua</i> , -ae, f., ¹ <i>water</i> .	<i>longa</i> , adj., <i>long</i> .
<i>domina</i> , -ae, f., <i>lady, mistress</i> .	<i>magna</i> , adj., <i>large, great</i> .
<i>fābula</i> , -ae, f., <i>story</i> .	<i>multa</i> , adj., <i>much</i> ; pl., <i>many</i> .
<i>insula</i> , -ae, f., <i>island</i> .	<i>parva</i> , adj., <i>little, small</i> .
<i>nauta</i> , -ae, m., <i>sailor</i> .	<i>est</i> , <i>he, she, or it is</i> .
<i>Octāvia</i> , -ae, f., <i>Octavia</i> .	<i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i> .
<i>patria</i> , -ae, f., <i>native land</i> .	<i>amat</i> , <i>he, she, or it loves</i> .
<i>puella</i> , -ae, f., <i>girl</i> .	<i>amant</i> , <i>they love</i> .
<i>serva</i> , -ae, f., <i>female servant</i> , <i>slave</i> .	<i>laudat</i> , <i>he, she, or it praises</i> .
<i>silva</i> , -ae, f., <i>forest</i> .	<i>laudant</i> , <i>they praise</i> .
<i>et</i> , conj., <i>and</i> .	<i>nārrat</i> , <i>he, she, or it tells</i> .
<i>in</i> , prep. with the abl., <i>in, on</i> .	<i>nārrant</i> , <i>they tell</i> .
<i>nōn</i> , adv., <i>not</i> .	<i>portat</i> , <i>he, she, or it carries</i> .
<i>bona</i> , adj., <i>good</i> .	<i>portant</i> , <i>they carry</i> .

22. Index Book and Derivative Notebook. For the Index Book and Derivative Notebook consult Directions to Teachers, p. xvii. Note the sample page.

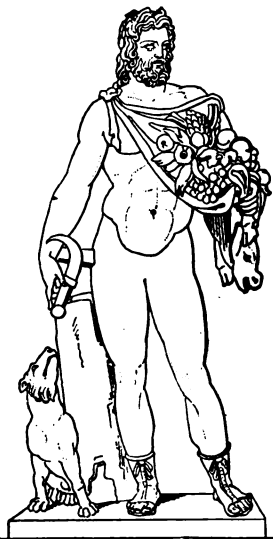
Divide the Index Book into twenty parts for the various letters of the alphabet, omitting *J*, *K*, *W*, *X*, *Y*, and *Z*. An equal number of pages should be assigned to each letter, with the following exceptions: a larger number of pages to *A*, *C*, *I*, *P*, and *S*; a smaller number to *G*, *H*, *N*, *R*, and *U*; and only a few to *B* and *Q*.

Number the pages of the Derivative Notebook, and rule them by drawing a line, preferably in red ink,

¹ In the Vocabularies, if a word is a noun, its genitive ending is given, and its gender, as *m.*, *f.*, or *n.* A verb is indicated by its English meaning. Later, the principal parts of the conjugation of a verb will be given. Adjectives are indicated by *adj.*, or by their masculine, feminine, and neuter endings. Adverbs and other parts of speech are indicated by the corresponding abbreviations.

from top to bottom an inch and a half from the left. On the right of this line at the top of the page, Latin words with their definitions are to be written, and on the left of the line, below the respective Latin words, English derivatives and abbreviations for the parts of speech, with definitions to the right.

After the Index Book has been alphabetized, and the Derivative Notebook ruled in red ink, consult an English dictionary to determine the Latin words in the Vocabulary which yield derivatives. In the Index Book, under the initial letters, record these Latin words, assigning them to pages in the Derivative Notebook, where they are also to be recorded at the top of the page, with meanings. Be sure to indicate in the Index Book the page of the Derivative Notebook to which the Latin words have been assigned. Always use ink.



SILVANUS, GOD OF FIELDS
AND FORESTS

. LESSON II .

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON

23. For English derivatives of the Latin words in the Vocabulary of Lesson I, already set down in the

Derivative Notebook, consult an English dictionary. Record the definitions, framed, so far as possible, from the meaning of the Latin roots.

EXERCISES

24. I. Translate into English: a. 1. *Īnsulae*; *īnsulārum*; *patriā*. 2. *Dominās*; *silvīs*; *silvārum*. 3. *Octāvia est domina, nōn serva*. 4. *Nautae patriam amant et laudant*.¹ 5. *Parvae puellae sunt bonae*. 6. *Nauta longam fābulam nārrat*. 7. *Octāvia silvās magnās patriae amat*.

b. 1. *In īnsulā est aqua multa*. 2. *Domina et puellae parvae aquam nōn portant*. 3. *Bonās servās domina laudat*.

II. Translate into Latin: a. 1. Of the island; of the sailor; of the forest. 2. Of the girls; of the servants; of the stories. 3. To the water; for the native land. 4. With long stories; on the large island. 5. The sailors praise the good girl.

b. 1. Octavia is not the mistress of the servant. 2. The servants do not love (their)² mistress. 3. The stories of the sailor are many and long. 4. The servant of Octavia carries water.

¹ Word Order. In the normal arrangement of a Latin sentence the subject is put first, followed by its modifiers, and the verb last, preceded by its modifiers. As the pupil will notice later, an adjective usually precedes a noun, and an adverb normally stands before the verb. A dative may stand either before or after an accusative. Often for the sake of emphasis the emphatic word is put at the beginning, less frequently at the end of the sentence, or the normal order of words is reversed.

² Do not translate into Latin words enclosed in parentheses.

III. Answer¹ orally in Latin the following questions:
 1. Laudatne nauta patriam? 2. Estne Octāvia parva puella? 3. Portantne servae aquam? 4. Amatne domina servās bonās?

LESSON III

SECOND OR o-DECLENSION. NOUNS IN -us²

Apposition, Limiting Genitive, Indirect Object.

25. Learn the declension of **servus**, Paradigms, p. 274.

26. Study the rules for *Apposition*, *Genitive of Possession* (or *Connection*), and *Indirect Object*, Rules of Syntax, 5, 6, 7, p. 319.

Examples:

Apposition: The sailor loves (his) daughter, Octavia.
Nauta filiam Octāviam amat.

Genitive of Possession: The sailor praises the servant of (his) friend, Marcus. **Nauta servum amīcī Mārci laudat.**

¹ The answer **yes**, as will be shown later, is expressed by certain adverbs. Often, however, the verb or other important word is repeated from the question.

The answer **no** is expressed by other adverbs. Often, however, a negative is used with the verb or other important word repeated from the question.

When one asks a question without implying the answer **yes** or **no**, the enclitic **-ne** is used. This is joined to the emphatic word, which is usually placed first.

² Nouns of the second declension in **-us** are masculine.

Indirect Object: Octavia gives a wreath to (her) daughter. Octāvia filiae corōnam dat.

27. Learn the words in the Vocabulary. Notice that the adjectives of this Vocabulary, as well as those in the Vocabulary of Lesson I, are declined like **servus**, when used with *masculine* nouns, and like **insula**, when used with *feminine* nouns.

As in Lesson I, consult the English dictionary, and determine the words which yield derivatives. Record such words in the Index Book, and assign them to pages in the Derivative Notebook.



POMPEII. EXCAVATIONS IN PROGRESS

VOCABULARY

aequus , ¹ -a, <i>even, level, fair, just.</i>	glōria , -ae, f., <i>glory, renown.</i>
altus , -a, <i>high, lofty, deep.</i>	herba , -ae, f., <i>herb, plant, grass.</i>
amicus , -i, m., <i>friend.</i>	hortus , -i, m., <i>garden.</i>
animus , -i, m., <i>mind, soul, spirit.</i>	servus , -i, m., <i>servant, slave.</i>
aquila , -ae, f., <i>eagle.</i>	via , -ae, f., <i>way, road.</i>
cōpia , -ae, f., <i>abundance; pl., forces, troops, supplies.</i>	Mārcus , -i, m., <i>Marcus, Mark.</i>
corōna , -ae, f., <i>wreath, garland, crown.</i>	dat , <i>he, she, or it gives.</i>
dominus , -i, m., <i>master.</i>	dant , <i>they give.</i>
fēmina , -ae, f., <i>woman.</i>	habet , <i>he, she, or it has.</i>
fidus , -a, <i>faithful, trusty.</i>	habent , <i>they have.</i>
filia , -ae, f., <i>daughter.</i> ²	sed , conj., <i>but.</i>
	ubi , adv., <i>where.</i>

LESSON IV

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON

28. As in Lesson II, consult the English dictionary for derivatives of words in the last Vocabulary, already recorded in the Notebooks. Try to frame the definitions from the meaning of the Latin roots.

EXERCISES

29. I. a. 1. Fēmina aquilae cōpiam aquae dat. 2. Herba in viā nōn est alta. 3. Mārcus, dominus bonus, servōs multōs et fidōs habet. 4. Servi Octāviae dominae corōnam dant. 5. Ubi est amicus puellae parvae? 6. Amicus puellae parvae in hortō magnō est.

¹ The equivalent of **aequ-** in English derivatives is **equ-**.

² The dative and ablative plural of this noun, and of *dea*, *goddess*, are *filiābus* and *deābus*.

b. 1. Domini multī aequōs animōs habent et servōs amant. 2. Nautae glōriam patriae laudant. 3. Īnsula nōn hortōs, sed silvās habet. 4. Fīlia Mārci est domina aequa.



STREET AT POMPEII

II. a. 1. The slaves bring (carry) water for (their) master. 2. The women give wreaths to the faithful servants. 3. Marcus, the friend of the sailors, has a large garden. 4. Where are the eagles? 5. The eagles are in the deep forest. 6. Marcus is not a just master, but Octavia is a kind (good) mistress. 7. (There) is an abundance of grass on the little island.

b. 1. The roads in the forest are long. 2. The

friends of the little girl display (have) a kindly (good) spirit. 3. Marcus and the daughter of Octavia praise the glory of (their) native land.

III. *Answer orally in Latin the following questions:*

1. Estne hortus in insulā? 2. Datne Mārcus corōnam fidae filiae? 3. Amīcusne glōriam amat? 4. Aequumne animum habet dominus?

LESSON V

AMŌ, AMOR, SUM

Some Present Indicative Forms.

30. Learn the conjugation of **amō, amor, and sum**, (*present indicative*), Paradigms, pp. 291, 308.

31. Study the rules for *Ablative of Separation*, *Ablative of Means or Instrument*, and *Ablative of Agent*, Rules of Syntax, 8, 9, 10, p. 319.

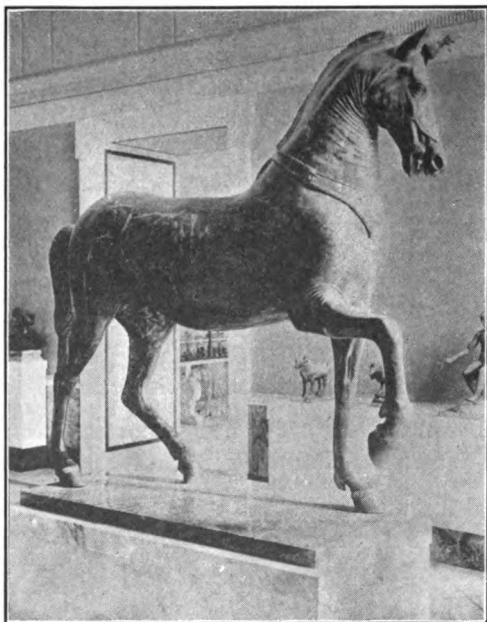
Examples:

Ablative of Separation: You are freed from cares.
Cūrīs liberāris.

Ablative of Means: We are adorned with garlands.
Corōnīs ōrnāmur.

Ablative of Agent: Marcus is loved by (his) son.
Mārcus ā filiō amātur.

32. Learn the words in the Vocabulary. From the English dictionary determine the words which yield derivatives, and record them in the Index Book under the proper letters. Make the assignments to the Derivative Notebook exactly as in Lessons I and III.



ROMAN BRONZE HORSE

VOCABULARY

albus, -a, *white*.

barbarus, -a, *barbarous*.

barbarus, -ī, m., *a barbarian*.

cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety*.

equus, -ī, m., *horse*.

filius, -ī, m., *son*.¹

liberō, *free*.

oculus, -ī, m., *eye*.

ōrnō, *adorn*.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, *Roman*.

Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman*.

socius, -ī, m., *companion, ally*.

superō, *get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer*.

ā, **ab**, *prep. with the abl., away from, from, by; usually ā before consonants, always ab before vowels and h.*

¹ Nouns in -ius and -ium, until after the beginning of the reign of Augustus (31 B.C.), regularly formed the genitive singular in -ī, in-

LESSON VI

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON

33. As in Lessons II and IV, consult the English dictionary for derivatives of the words in the last Vocabulary, as set down in the Notebooks. Record the definitions, as before.

EXERCISES

34. I. a. 1. Es, sumus, sum, estis. 2. Amāmus, amās, amātis, amō. 3. Amor, amāminī, amāmur, amāris. 4. Amīcus aequus ā filiō amātur. 5. Socii Rōmānōrum ā barbaris nōn superantur. 6. Oculi aquilae nōn sunt magni. 7. Equi albī corōnis ā parvis filiabus Mārci ōrantur.

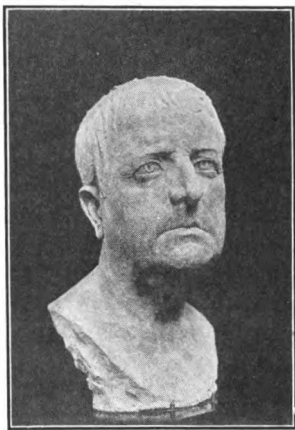
b. 1. Mārcus, amīcus nautārum, cūris liberātur. 2. Rōma ā sociis, nōn ā barbaris amātur. 3. Boni servi equō dominī aquam et herbam dant.

II. a. 1. You (*plural*) are, you (*singular*) are, we are. 2. We love, we are loved, you (*singular*) love, you (*singular*) are loved. 3. They adorn, they are adorned, you (*plural*) overcome, you (*plural*) are overcome. 4. We are freed from care by the trusty slaves. 5. The barbarian gives a small horse to the son of (his) companion. 6. We are the allies of Rome.

b. 1. Octavia, the mistress of many servants (*feminine*), is adorned with white garlands. 2. Are the eyes of the barbarians small? 3. The Roman women have fair minds.

stead of -ii. Filius and proper nouns in -ius form the vocative singular in -i, instead of -ie.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Has the son of the barbarian a horse?



VIR RŌMĀNUS
Portrait Bust

2. Are the Romans loved by (their) allies? 3. Are you in the garden, friends? 4. Do you love (love you) (your) native land? 5. Are you (*singular*) a slave?

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

Nouns in **-er** and **-ir**. Neuters. Ablative of Place. Ablative of Accompaniment. Vocative.

35. Learn the declension of **bellum**, **puer**, **ager**, and **vir**, Paradigms, p. 274.

36. Gender. Nouns of the second declension in **-us**, **-er**, and **-ir** are masculine, those in **-um** are neuter.¹

37. Adjectives in **-us**, like **bonus**, are declined in the masculine like **servus**, in the feminine like **insula**, and in the neuter like **bellum**.

38. Study the rules for *Ablative of Place* (Where

¹ The nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of all neuters are alike. In the plural, also, these cases are alike, and end in **-a**.

and *Whence*), *Ablative of Accompaniment*, and the *Vocative*, Rules of Syntax, 11, 12, 13, p. 319.

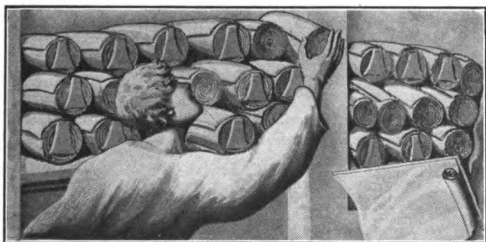
Examples :

Ablative of Place: *There are many roads in (our) native land.* **Multae viae in patriā sunt.**

The men are called from the town. **Viri ex oppidō vocantur.**

Ablative of Accompaniment: *The Romans with (their) allies lay waste the fields of the barbarians.* **Rōmāni cum sociis agrōs barbarōrum vāstant.**

Vocative: *Pupils, you are not blamed by (your) teacher.* **Ā magistrō, discipulī, nōn culpāmini.**



ROMAN PLACING BOOKS ON LIBRARY SHELVES

39. Learn the words of the Vocabulary. In the Index Book write down the Latin words yielding English derivatives, and assign them to pages in the Derivative Notebook, where they are to be recorded, as usual, with definitions.

VOCABULARY

ad, prep. with acc., <i>to</i> .	magister, -trī, m., <i>master</i> , <i>teacher</i> .
ager, agrī, m., <i>field</i> .	malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> , <i>evil</i> .
agricola, -ae, m., <i>farmer</i> .	mūrus, -ī, m., <i>wall</i> .
bellum, -ī, n., <i>war</i> .	novus, -a, -um, <i>new</i> .
causa, -ae, f., <i>cause</i> .	numerus, -ī, m., <i>number</i> .
culpō, <i>blame</i> .	oppidum, -ī, n., <i>town</i> .
cum, prep. with abl., <i>with</i> ; prefix, con-, <i>together (with)</i> .	puer, puerī, m., <i>boy</i> .
cūr, adv., <i>why</i> .	quod, conj., <i>because</i> .
discipulus, -ī, m., <i>pupil</i> .	rosa, -ae, f., <i>rose</i> .
ē, ex, prep. with abl., <i>out of</i> , <i>from</i> .	Titus, -ī, m., <i>Titus</i> .
frūmentum, -ī, n., <i>grain</i> .	vāstō, <i>lay waste</i> , <i>devastate</i> .
lātus, -a, -um, <i>wide</i> , <i>broad</i> .	vir, virī, m., <i>man</i> .
liber, -brī, m., <i>book</i> .	vocō, <i>call</i> .

LESSON VIII

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON

40. Consult the English dictionary for derivatives of the Latin words in the Vocabulary of Lesson VII. From the meaning of the Latin roots, try to frame the definitions. Record as usual.

EXERCISES

41. I. a. 1. Barbarī cum sociīs agrōs agricolārum vāstant. **2.** Ubi, puerī, est novus liber magistrī? **3.** In hortō sunt librī magistrī. **4.** Frūmentum ex lātis agrīs ā servīs malīs portātur. **5.** Causae belli sunt multae. **6.** Virī ex silvīs ad mūrōs oppidi

vocantur. 7. Octāvia discipulis Titī magistri magnum numerum librōrum dat.

b. 1. Cūr, amīce, ab agricolis culpāris? 2. Malus puer est filius bonī Mārci. 3. Domina cum filiābus parvam puellam rosīs ōrnat.

II. a. 1. (There) is much grain in the broad fields of Marcus, the farmer. 2. The bad pupils with (their) master are blamed by the Roman women. 3. Why, farmers, are you called from the fields? 4. (There) are many new¹ causes of war. 5. A large number of barbarians lay waste the small islands. 6. The walls of Rome are high.

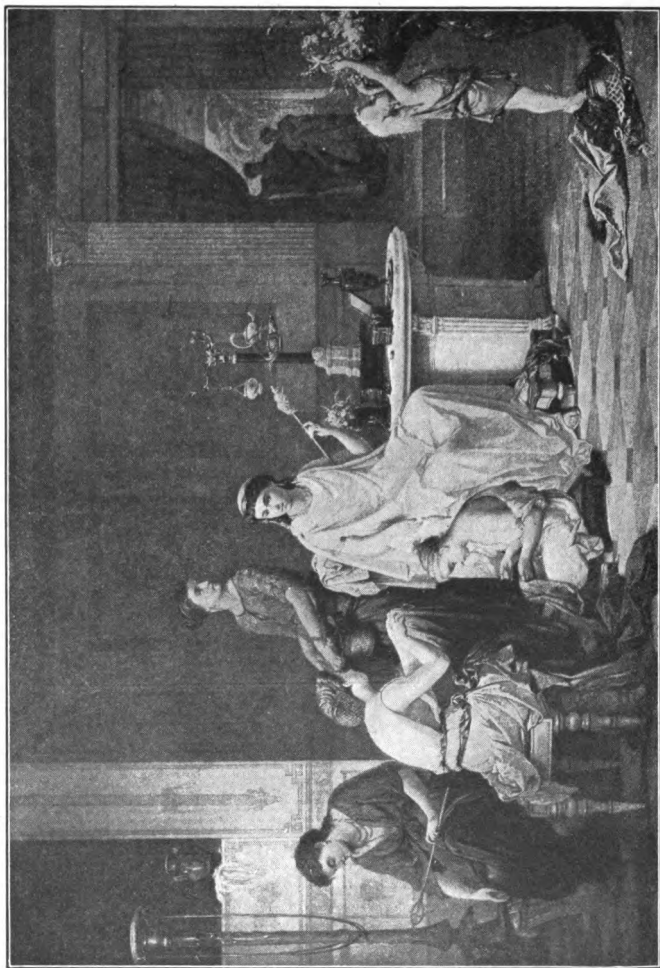


PUER RŌMĀNUS
A Portrait Bust

b. 1. Books and roses are brought to the boys by the slaves. 2. The son of Titus gives a book to (his) teacher. 3. The Romans are not freed from the cares (*ablative*) of war.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Pupils, why do you not love the story?

¹ Translate as *many and new*.



A ROMAN LADY AND HER MAIDS

2. Boys, are the men calling the farmers from the fields? 3. (My) son, are you blamed by (your) companions? 4. Am I the teacher? 5. Are you good pupils?

LESSON IX

ADJECTIVE AGREEMENT. PAST INDICATIVE. ADVERBS

Adjectives in **-us**. Past Indicative, Active and Passive, of **Amō**. Past Indicative of **Sum**. Adverbs. Agreement of Adjectives. Dative of Possession.

42. Learn the declension of **bonus**, Paradigms, p. 278, and the conjugation of **amābam**, **amābar**, and **eram**, (past indicative), pp. 291, 309.

43. Adverbs. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base.

44. Study the rules for *Agreement of Adjectives* and *Dative of Possession*, Rules of Syntax, 14, 15, p. 320.

Examples :



SILVER PLATE OF ROMAN WORKMANSHIP
Infant Hercules Strangling Serpents

Hortus erat magnus. Horti erant magni. Īnsula est magna. Īnsulae sunt magnae. Dōnum est magnum. Dōna sunt magna.

The boy had a book, i.e. there was to the boy a book.
Liber erat puerō.

45. Learn the Vocabulary. In the Index Book write down the Latin words which yield English derivatives, and record them in the Derivative Notebook with the meanings.

VOCABULARY

aestimō , <i>value.</i>	grātia , -ae, f. (grātus), <i>favor, good will, influence, thanks.</i>
argentum , -ī, n., <i>silver.</i>	grātus , -a, -um, <i>pleasing, grateful.</i>
aurum , -ī, n., <i>gold.</i>	iuvō , <i>aid, assist.</i>
campus , -ī, m., <i>field, plain.</i>	lātē , adv., <i>widely, far and wide.</i>
cārus , -a, -um, <i>dear.</i>	mātūrus , -a, -um, <i>ripe, mature, early.</i>
cārē , adv., <i>dearly (at a high price).</i>	mātūrē , adv., <i>early.</i>
dēlectō , <i>please, delight.</i>	occupō , <i>seize, occupy.</i>
dōnum , -ī, n., <i>gift.</i>	parō , <i>get ready, prepare.</i>
epistula , -ae, f., <i>letter.</i>	
faber , -brī, m., <i>artisan, smith.</i>	
gladius , -ī, m., <i>sword.</i>	



A ROMAN SWORD

LESSON X

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON

46. Record the derivatives of the words in the last Vocabulary, together with definitions. Test the Latin

roots with the prefixes which have been given in the Vocabularies as prepositions, namely, **a**, **ab**, **ad**, **ē**, **ex**, and **in**. Consult the English dictionary, and record any additional derivatives. From this point all Latin words in the Vocabularies which yield English derivatives should be tested with these prefixes, and with any others which may be met later. Occasionally derivatives may be found by testing the Latin roots with the prefix **nōn**.

EXERCISES

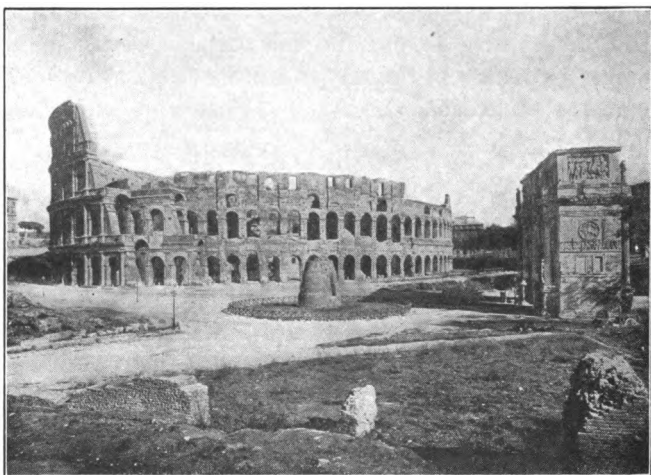
47. I. a. 1. Erās, erāmus, eram, erant, erātis, erat. 2. Iuvābāmus, iuvābāmur, iuvābās, iuvābāris, iuvābāre. 3. Parābat, parābātur, parābātis, parābāmini, parābam, parābar. 4. Faber multō argentō et aurō gladium ōrnābat. 5. Lāti campī ā Rōmānis cum sociis mātūrē occupābantur. 6. Dōna grāta et multae epistulae erant discipulis.

b. 1. Agrī ab agricolis cārē aestimābantur. 2. Multum et mātūrum frūmentum agricolae erat. 3. Magnī agrī sociōrum ā barbaris lātē vāstābantur. 4. Serva fida grātiā Octāviae, dominae cārae, dēlectābātur.

II. a. 1. You (*plural*) were, I was, they were, you (*singular*) were, we were, he was. 2. I delighted, I was delighted, you (*plural*) delighted, you (*plural*) were delighted. 3. We prepared, we were prepared, you (*singular*) prepared, you (*singular*) were prepared. 4. The dear son of the artisan had a pleasing gift. 5. The new swords (together) with much gold and silver were early carried to the island.

b. 1. The master's friend has a large number of

letters. (*Express in two ways.*) 2. The farmer's white horses carried the ripe grain from the fields to the town. 3. The fields and forests were seized far and wide (widely) by the Romans. 4. The favor of the just men, Marcus and Titus, assisted the boys.



THE COLOSSEUM AT ROME

III. *Answer orally in Latin the following questions:*

1. Eratne dōnum magistrī grātum? 2. Vāstābanturne agrī ā barbarīs? 3. Eratne multum aurum in oppidō?

LESSON XI

ADJECTIVES. FUTURE INDICATIVE. ADVERBS

Adjectives in **-er**. Future Indicative, Active and Passive, of **Amō**. Future Indicative of **Sum**. Adverbs. Ablative of Respect.

48. Learn the declension of *miser*, *wretched*, and *pulcher*, *beautiful*, Paradigms, pp. 278, 279. Form adverbs from each.

NOTE. Most adjectives in *-er* are declined like *pulcher*. The following, however, are declined like *miser*: *asper*, *rough*, *lacer*, *torn*, *liber*, *free*, *prōsper*, *prosperous*, *tener*, *tender*; compounds in *-fer* and *-ger*; sometimes *dexter*, *right*.

Satur, *full*, is declined: *satur*, *satura*, *saturum*.

49. Learn the conjugation of *amābō*, *amābor*, and *erō* (future indicative), Paradigms, pp. 291, 309.

50. Study the rule for *Ablative of Respect*, Rules of Syntax, 16, p. 320.

Example:

The eagles were many in number. Aquilae multae numerō erant.

51. Learn the Vocabulary. In the Index Book and Derivative Notebook record, as usual, the Latin words which yield English derivatives.

VOCABULARY

asper, *-era*, *-erum*, *rough*.
concilium, *-ī*, *n.*, *council*.
et . . . et, *both . . . and*.
fōrma, *-ae*, *f.*, *shape*, *form*,
appearance.
in, prep. with acc., *to (into)*.
ira, *-ae*, *f.*, *anger*, *wrath*.
liber, *-era*, *-erum*, *free*.
miser, *-era*, *-erum*, *wretched*,
unhappy.

nūntius, *-ī*, *m.*, *messenger*.
populus, *-ī*, *m.*, *people*.
properō, *hasten*.
pūblicus, *-a*, *-um*, *public*.
pulcher, *-chra*, *-chrum*, *beautiful*, *handsome*.
rēgina, *-ae*, *f.*, *queen*.
ruber, *-bra*, *-brum*, *red*, *ruddy*.
saepe, adv., *often*.
semper, adv., *always*.

LESSON XII

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. READING LESSON

52. Review the Vocabulary in Lesson XI. Consult the English dictionary for derivatives,¹ and test all Latin roots with the prefixes already met, including **nōn**. Record derivatives and definitions as usual. Always write the abbreviations for parts of speech after the derivatives, at the left of the red line.

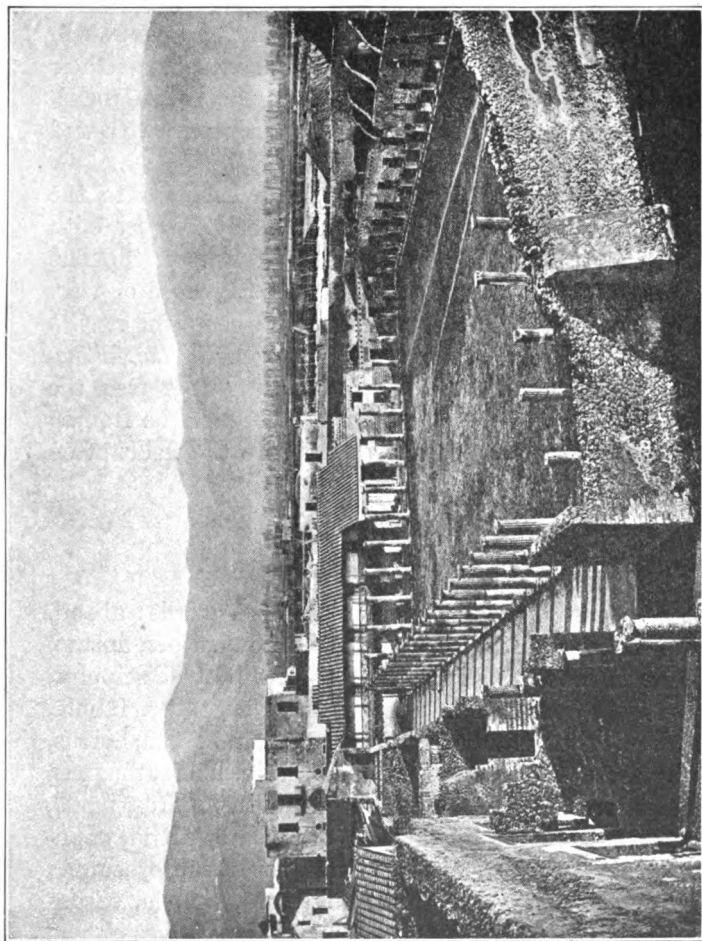
EXERCISES

53. I. a. 1. Eris, erimus, erō, eritis. 2. Amābimus, amābimur, amābis, amāberis, amābere. 3. Amābō, amābor, amābitis, amābiminī. 4. Equī agricolārum pulchrī fōrmā erunt. 5. Servi miserī ā rēgīnā bonā liberābuntur. 6. Nūntiī populī Rōmānī numerō multī in oppidum ad concilium pūblicum properābunt. 7. Viae asperae ā nautā nōn laudābuntur.

b. 1. Fabrī semper erunt virī liberī. 2. Amīcus magistrī in hortō albās et rubrās rosās habet. 3. Sociīs populī Rōmānī erat saepe causa et cūrae et irae.

II. a. 1. He will be, you (*plural*) will be, we shall be, I shall be, you (*singular*) will be, they will be. 2. You (*singular*) will love, you (*singular*) will be loved, we shall love, we shall be loved. 3. You (*plural*) will blame, you (*plural*) will be blamed, he will praise, he

¹ Note that English derivatives not infrequently enable us to remember the spelling of the Latin originals, as declined or inflected. Thus: *miserable*, from *miser*, contains an *e*; hence, **miser**, **miserā**, **miserum**. Again: *pulchritude*, from *pulcher*, does not contain an *e*; hence, **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**.



THE BARRACKS OF THE GLADIATORS, POMPEII

will be praised, they will set free, they will be set free. 4. The messengers of the Roman people will always be fair in mind. 5. The artisans with their friends will hasten over (*ablative*) the rough roads. 6. The beautiful queen was often adorned with red roses.

b. 1. The free men of the town hastened to the public council. 2. The barbarians had swords, both many in number and beautiful in shape. 3. The wrath of the unhappy queen will be a cause of war. 4. The son of Marcus had large and beautiful eyes.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Will the beautiful queen free the unhappy slaves? 2. Will the messenger of the Roman people hasten to the town? 3. Were the fields often laid waste by the barbarians?

REVIEW OF LESSONS I-XII

54. Give the English for the following words: ab, ad, aequus, ager, altus, amicus, animus, aqua, asper, aurum, bellum, bonus, cārus, culpō, cum, dat, discipulus, dominus, dōnum, epistula, equus, ē, ex, faber, fābula, fēmina, filius, frūmentum, gladius, grātia, herba, hortus, in, insula, ira, iuvō, lātus, laudō, liber, liberō, magnus, magister, malus, mātūrus, miser, multus, mūrus, nārrō, nauta, novus, nūntius, oculus, ōrnō, parō, patria, populus, portō, puer, rēgina, Rōmānus, ruber, saepe, semper, servus, silva, socius, superō, ubi, vāstō, vir, via, vocō.

55. Give orally as many English derivatives as you can from the words in § 54.

56. Name the Latin for each of the following words, mentioning the nominative, genitive singular, and gender of nouns, the three nominative forms of adjectives, and the first person singular present indicative active of verbs given without pronoun subject : girl, call, adorn, free, son, story, artisan, water, grass, sailor, prepare, with,



DISCIPULUS ET MAGISTER

Ancient Picture of a School-Boy Receiving a Whipping

master, blame, road, garden, where, not, dear, rough, messenger, queen, ruddy, far and wide, pupil, influence, into, (away) from, anger, gift, field, aid, wretchedly, wall, silver, eye, mature, little, praise, book, man, spirit, friend, white, garland, companion, woman, they have.

57. Write English sentences containing derivatives of the following Latin words : amicus, filius, fābula, oculus, cārus, faber, liber, animus, mūrus, ruber, portō, via.

58. Classify as parts of speech and define the following English words, giving the Latin words from which they are derived: equanimity, popularize, disciple, aquarium, effeminate, inoculate, dominate, affiliated, innovation, adjutant.

59. TO THE PUPIL. Bring to class for discussion two or three of the most difficult English words, apparently derived from Latin words in Lessons I-XI, which you have recently met in school work or outside reading. Whenever you see a difficult word of this sort, note it down, and save it for the Review Lesson.

60. Decline the Latin for *good farmer, broad field, beautiful queen, long war, boy, man, boy, wretched.*

61. Conjugate the present, past, and future indicative of *sum*. Conjugate the present, past, and future indicative, active and passive, of the Latin for *praise*.

62. How are Latin words divided into syllables? What is the penult? The antepenult? Give the rules for the quantity of vowels. When is a syllable long by nature? By position? What are the rules for Latin accent? What is inflection? Declension? Conjugation? Name the cases in Latin, and give their English equivalents. What is the rule for *Limiting Genitive? Agreement of Adjectives? Dative of Possession? Ablative of Respect? Ablative of Agent?* How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions?

LESSON XIII

THIRD DECLENSION. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.

PERFECT INDICATIVE

Third Declension. Nouns with Mute Stems. Principal Parts of Verbs of the First Conjugation. Perfect Indicative of *Sum*. Perfect Indicative Active of *Amō*. Ablative of Manner.

63. Learn the declension of *rēx*, *mīles*, *caput*, and *custōs*, Paradigms, pp. 274, 275.

64. Gender. Nouns of the third declension are masculine, feminine, or neuter.

65. Principal Parts. The *principal parts* of a verb are the *present indicative active, first person singular*; the *present infinitive active*; the *perfect indicative active, first person singular*, and the *supine* (or the *neuter singular nominative of the perfect passive participle*). The *principal parts* of *amō* are as follows:

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INF.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE
<i>amō, I love</i>	<i>amāre, to love</i>	<i>amāvī, I have loved, or I loved</i>	<i>amātum, to love</i>

The three *stems* are as follows: the *present stem*, found by dropping the *-re* of the *present infinitive*; the *perfect stem*, found by dropping the *-ī* of the *perfect indicative*; and the *supine stem*, found by dropping the *-um* of the *supine* (or *neuter of the perfect passive participle*). Thus, the present stem of *amō* is *amā-*, the perfect stem, *amāv-*, and the supine stem, *amāt-*.

Verbs are said to be of the *first conjugation*, when

the present stem ends in *-ā*, that is, when the present infinitive ends in *-āre*.

Give the principal parts of *laudō, nārrō, portō, culpō, vāstō, vocō, occupō, parō, properō, dēlectō, iuvō* (see general vocabulary).

Dō, dare, dedi, datum, give, is like a verb of the *first conjugation* in most respects, but the characteristic *a* is short.

66. Learn the conjugation of *amāvī* and *fuī*, Paradigms (perfect indicative), pp. 291, 309.

67. Study the rule for *Ablative of Manner*, Rules of Syntax, 17, p. 320.

Example :

The soldiers hastened from the camp with great speed.
Mīlitēs ē castrīs magnā cum celeritāte (or *magnā celeritāte*) **properāvērunt.**

68. Learn the Vocabulary. Record in the Index Book and Derivative Notebook the words which yield derivatives. Look for English derivatives from the *supine stem* of verbs in this Vocabulary, and also of verbs given in previous Vocabularies, and record them in the Derivative Notebook. To the list of prefixes add *dē* and *per*.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. There should be frequent written and oral drills and tests upon the derivative work. First of all, pupils should be required by frequent reviewing to fix the meaning of the Latin words and important English derivatives recorded in the Notebook. It is a common error on the part of pupils, after discovering English derivatives and recording them, to think that the work is ended. As a

matter of fact, it has just begun. Over and over again Latin words should be reviewed, English derivatives brought up in class, traced back to the Latin, and used in sentences composed by the student. Furthermore, students should be required to bring to class daily, or at frequent intervals, for discussion, the most difficult English words of Latin origin met in school work or outside reading. They should be encouraged to be on the watch for words having a special bearing upon their respective departments; for example, commercial students for commercial words, scientific students for scientific words, etc.

VOCABULARY

caput, -itis, n., *head*.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp*.

celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness, speed*.

custōs, -ōdis, m., *guard*.

dē, prep. with the abl., *down from, concerning*.

dō, *dare*, **dedi**, **datum**, *give*.

errō, 1, *go astray, wander, err*.

Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*.

Graecus, -ī, m., *a Greek*.

grex, **gregis**, m., *flock*.

lēgātus, -ī, m., *one who represents another, envoy, lieutenant*.

mīles, -itis, m., *a soldier*.

mittit, *he sends*.

mittunt, *they send*.

pāx, **pācis**, f., *peace*.

per, prep. with acc., *prefix, through*.

rēx, **rēgis**, m., *king*.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*.



RELIEF FROM THE ALTAR OF PEACE OF AUGUSTUS

LESSON XIV

EXERCISES

69. I. a. 1. Fuistī, fuērunt, fuimus, fuī, fuēre, fuistis, fuit. 2. Errāvēre, errāvistī, errāvimus, errāvī, errāvērunt, errāvit, errāvistis.



MILES

3. Dedī, dabāmus, dedistī, dedistis, dedēre, dabit, dabit, dēerunt. 4. Graeci magnā cum celeritāte ad rēgem dē pāce lēgātōs mittunt. 5. Albō equō caput parvum, sed pulchrum fōrmā erat.

b. 1. Militēs cum fidīs custōdibus castrōrum tūtī fuērunt. 2. Gregēs agricolārum miserōrum per campōs et silvās lātē errāvērunt. 3. Graecus servus cum celeritāte ad dominum novōs librōs mittit.

II. a. 1. They have been, you (*singular*) were, we have been, he has been, you (*plural*) have been, I was. 2. He has praised, they have praised, you (*singular*) called, you (*plural*) called, I wandered, we wandered. 3. I shall give, you (*singular*) were giving, we have given, they have given, you (*singular*) have given, you (*plural*) have given. 4. The king sends envoys through the broad fields of the bar-

barians to the Greek camp, on a mission of (concerning) peace and war.

b. 1. The soldiers with great speed hastened to a safe town of the allies. 2. The fair-minded (just) queen will give many flocks and much gold and silver to the son of the faithful farmer. 3. The barbarians send the head of the unfortunate Titus to the Roman camp.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Has the horse a large head? 2. Have the flocks of the king been safe? 3. Did the envoy give a book to the soldier?

LESSON XV

THIRD DECLENSION. PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT

Third Declension of Nouns. Liquid Stems. Past Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative of *Amō*. Past Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active of *Sum*. Ablative of Cause. Predicate Accusative. *Nōne*, *Num*, and *-ne* in Questions.

70. Learn the declension of *cōnsul*, *mercātor*, *virgō*, and *corpus*, Paradigms, p. 275.

71. Learn the conjugation of *amāveram*, *amāverō*, *fueram*, and *fuerō* (past perfect and future perfect indicative), Paradigms, pp. 292, 309.

72. Study the rules for *Predicate Accusative* and *Ablative of Cause*, Rules of Syntax, 18, 19, p. 320.

Examples:

The Romans had elected Cicero consul. Rōmāni Cicerōnem cōnsulem creāverant.

The soldiers will be praised on account of their victories. Militēs victōriis laudābuntur.

73. Questions. The particles **nōnne**, **num**, and **-ne** are used in Latin in asking questions. **Nōnne** expects the answer *yes*, **num** expects the answer *no*, and **-ne** asks for information, without implying either *yes* or *no*; **-ne** is an enclitic, and is usually joined to the first word in the sentence which usually is the emphatic word.

Examples :

Appellābāturne cōsul Mārcus? *Was the consul called Marcus?*

Nōnne cōsul Mārcus appellābātur? *Was not the consul called Marcus?*

Num cōsul Mārcus appellābātur? *The consul was not called Marcus, was he?*

74.

VOCABULARY

appellō , 1, call, call upon, name.	māter , -tris, f., mother.
Caesar , -aris, m., Caesar.	mercātor , -ōris, m., trader, merchant.
Cicerō , -ōnis, m., Cicero.	-ne , nōnne , num , signs of questions.
clārus , -a, -um, clear, bright, famous.	pater , -tris, m., father.
cōsul , -ulis, m., consul.	soror , -ōris, f., sister.
corpus , -oris, n., body.	victōria , -ae, f., victory.
creō , 1, create, elect.	victor , -ōris, m., conqueror, victor.
frāter , -tris, m., brother.	virgō , -inis, f., girl, maiden.
Gallia , -ae, f., Gaul.	
Gallus , -ī, m., a Gaul.	
homō , -inis, m. (f.), a human being, man.	



A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

75. English Derivatives. Latin words, derivatives, drills, tests, as in the preceding lessons.

LESSON XVI

EXERCISES

76. I. a. 1. *Fuerās, fueris, fuerāmus, fuerimus, fuerat, fuerint, fueritis.* 2. *Creāverātis, creāveritis, appellāverāmus, appellāveritis, dederās, dederis.* 3. *Populus Rōmānus Cicerōnem, hominem clārum, cōnsulem creāverat.* 4. *Nōnne Caesar victor Galliae fuit?* 5. *Portāverantne mercātōrēs multa (many things) in Galliam victōriis Caesaris?*

b. 1. *Pater et māter cum frātre et sorōre pulchra dōna ad Titum militem mittunt.* 2. *Num miserae virginēs victōriis Gallōrum dēlectābantur?* 3. *Nōnne barbaris magna corpora, sed parva capita erant?*

II. a. 1. We (*plural*) had been, you (*singular*) will have been, I shall have been, you (*plural*) had been. 2. We had given, you (*singular*) will have given, you (*plural*) had called, they had loved. 3. The Roman maiden (together) with her mother had adorned the heads of her little brother and sister with garlands of beautiful roses. 4. Was not the father of the renowned (famous) merchant called Marcus?

b. 1. The Roman people did not make (elect) Caesar consul on account of his victories in Gaul, did they? 2. Did the Gauls have large bodies?

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Were the bodies of the Gauls small? 2. Why did the Romans elect Cicero consul? 3. The merchants had not brought grain from the fields, had they?

LESSON XVII

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)

Third Declension. *i*-Stems. Mixed Stems. Partitive Genitive. Dative of Purpose or Tendency.

77. Learn the declension of **ignis**, **caedēs**, **mare**, **urbs**, and **mēns**, Paradigms, p. 276.

78. *I*-Stems. Nouns of the third declension with *i*-stems have the following peculiarities of declension: All have **-ium** in the genitive plural; masculines and feminines have **-is** (or **-ēs**) in the accusative plural; neuters have **-ia** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural; all neuters and a few masculines and

feminines have **-ī** in the ablative singular; and a few masculines and feminines have **-im** in the accusative singular.

The following classes of nouns of the third declension have **i**-stems: nouns in **-is** and **-ēs** not increasing in the genitive (*i.e.* not having more syllables than in the nominative), neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**, most monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant, most nouns in **-ns** or **-rs**, and sometimes nouns in **-tās** (genitive, **-tātis**).

79. Study the rules for *Partitive Genitive* and *Dative of Purpose or Tendency*, Rules of Syntax, 20, 21, p. 320.

Examples:

Magna pars hominum. *A great part of mankind.*

Socii Caesarī auxiliō fuerant. *The allies had been (for) a support to Caesar.*

80.

VOCABULARY

animal, **-mālis**, n., *animal*.

auxilium, **-ī**, n., *aid, assistance, help*.

caedēs, **-is**, f., *murder, slaughter*.

certus, **-a**, **-um**, *fixed, sure, certain*.

civis, **-is**, m., *a citizen*.

civitās, **-tātis**, f. (**civis**), *citizenship, state*.

diligentia, **-ae**, f., *carefulness, diligence*.

dux, **ducis**, m., *leader, guide, general*.

facit, *he does, he makes*.

faciunt, *they do, they make*.

finis, **-is**, m., *end, limit; pl., territory*.

hostis, **-is**, m., *enemy*.

ignis, **-is**, m., *fire*.

labor, **-ōris**, m., *work, toil, labor*.

mare, **-is**, n., *sea*.

mēns, **mentis**, f., *mind*.

mōns, **montis**, m., *mountain*.

nihil (**nil**), n., *indeclinable, nothing*.

pars, **partis**, f., *part, portion*.

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money*.

perturbō, 1 (**per**, **turbō**, *whirl, disturb*), *throw into confusion, disturb greatly*.

post, prep. with acc., prefix, *after*.

pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle*.

pugnō, 1, *fight*.

stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **statum**, *stand, take a stand, halt*.

urbs, **urbis**, f., *city*.

vectigal, -gālis, n., *tribute, tax*.

81. English Derivatives. Record the Latin words and derivatives. To the prefixes add **post**. Word drills. Tests.

LESSON XVIII

EXERCISES

82. I. a. 1. Hostēs post pugnam finem caedis faciunt et ad urbem properant. **2.** Nihil auxili hostibus ā duce Graecōrum dabitur. **3.** Pecūnia civium magnō auxiliō civitatī Rōmānae fuit. **4.** Pars animālium ignī perturbābātur. **5.** Multī milītēs in aquā steterant et gladiis pugnābant. **6.** Num nūntius irā rēgīnae mente perturbābitur? **7.** Faber, frāter mercātōris, finem labōris facit et ad sorōrem epistulam mittit.

b. 1. Nōnne bellum magnae cūrae cōsulī Rōmānō fuerat? **2.** Barbarī ā marī ad montēs et ignī et gladiō agrōs sociōrum vāstāvērunt. **3.** Diligentīā cōsulis vectigālia erunt certa.

II. a. 1. The fires in the woods were (a source of) anxiety (care) to the minds of the citizens. **2.** The leader of the enemy with a part of his soldiers hastened from the territory of the allies to a safe city. **3.** The

labor of the slaves and the money of (their) masters were (for) a sure help to the state. 4. On account of the slaughter of many battles and the heavy (great) taxes, the allies of the Romans were wretched. 5. (There) were many animals in the broad fields from the forest to the sea.

b. 1. After (their) great victory nothing disturbed the minds of the Roman lieutenants. 2. The consul early makes an end of the battle, and with great care (diligence) hastens down (from) the mountain. 3. The soldiers of the renowned king took their stand (stood) in the broad road, and fought with the enemy.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. There were not many cities in the territory of the Greeks, were there? 2. Will not the general give a part of the money to (his) soldiers? 3. Are there large animals in the sea?

LESSON XIX

IRREGULAR NOUNS. AMŌ (*Continued*)

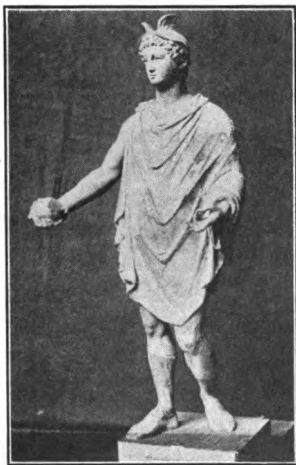
Irregular Nouns. Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of *Amō*. Locative.

83. Learn the declension of *deus*, *vis*, *senex*, *carō*, *os*, Paradigms, pp. 277, 278.

84. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative passive of *amō*, Paradigms,

pp. 291, 292. Note that **amātus** is a participle, declined like **bonus**, and agrees with the subject as an adjective.

85. Synopsis of the Indicative. From this point the pupil should give the synopsis in the indicative,



SILVER STATUETTE OF THE GOD
MERCURY

active and passive, of the verbs in the Reading Exercises and Vocabularies. It is recommended that the active and passive of the present, past, and future be given together, then the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect active, and finally, the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect passive; thus: **amō, amor; amābam, amābar; amābō, amābor; amāvī, amāveram, amāverō; amātus sum, eram, erō.**

86. Study the rules for the *Locative case*, Rules of Syntax, 22, p. 320.

Examples:

Rōmae, at Rome. **Domī**, at home. **Rūri**, in the country.

87.

VOCABULARY

amor, -ōris, m. (amō), love.

carō, carnis, f., flesh.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens.

Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth.

deus, -i, m., <i>a god.</i>	rūs, rūris, n., <i>country (as opposed to the city).</i>
dea, -ae, f., <i>a goddess; dat. and abl. pl., deābus. Cf. filiābus.</i>	senex, senis, m., <i>an old man.</i>
domus, -ūs or -i, f., <i>house, home; irreg. Cf. dominus.</i>	timidus, -a, -um, <i>fearful, timid, cowardly.</i>
leō, leōnis, m., f., <i>lion, lioness.</i>	timor, -ōris, m., <i>fear.</i>
os, ossis, n., <i>bone.</i>	vis, vim, vi, f., <i>force, strength, energy; pl., virēs, virium, strength.</i>
-que, enclitic joined to the second of two words, <i>and.</i>	vorō, 1, <i>swallow greedily, devour.</i>

88. **English Derivatives.** Latin words, derivatives, drills, tests, as in the preceding lessons.

LESSON XX

EXERCISES

89. I. a. 1. Amātus sum, amātus eram, amātus erō, amātī sumus, amātī erāmus, amātī erimus. 2. Amāta es, amāta erās, amāta eris, amātae estis, amātae eritis. 3. Amātum est, amātum erat, amātum erit, amāta sunt, amāta erant, amāta erunt. 4. Carō animalium cum ossibus ā leōnibus vorāta erat. 5. Timidus senex cum filiis filiabusque per timōrem puerōrum malōrum semper erat domi.

b. 1. Multi di deaque fuērunt et Rōmae et Athēnis. 2. Domus clārī ducis rūri fuerat. 3. Amor senis erit certō auxiliō filiis. 4. Nōne agricola viribus novōrum equōrum dēlectātus erit? 5. Num mercātōrēs Corinthi labōre servōrum saepe iuvantur?

II. a. 1. We were conquered (overcome), you (*singular*) had been conquered, you (*plural*) will have been conquered. 2. I have been blamed, you (*plural*) had been blamed, we shall have been blamed. 3. The city



THE GODDESS MINERVA

had been seized by force, the cities have been seized by force, will have been seized by force. 4. The flesh and bones, both of men and of flocks, have been devoured by the lion.

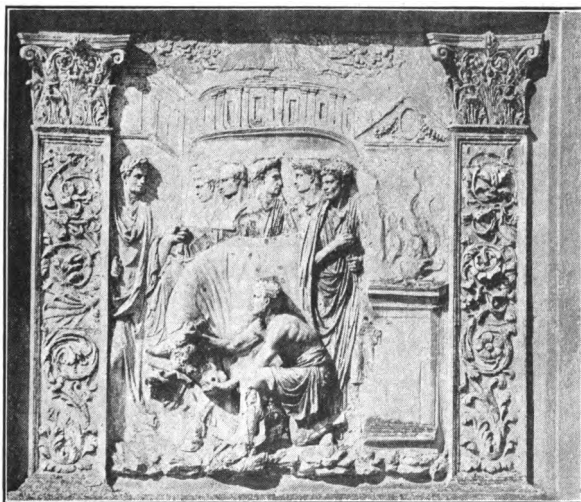
b. 1. Many stories concerning the great love of gods and goddesses for mankind (men) had been told (to) the little boys and girls at Athens. 2. Because of fear of the barbarians, the minds of the traders in the country were greatly disturbed. 3. The timid Greeks had been conquered at Corinth by the consul, (now) an old man.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following*

questions: 1. Will not the old man be pleased with the new horse? 2. Were the bones of the unhappy animals devoured by the lion? 3. (Your) friend was not at home, was he? 4. On account of the war, the taxes will be greater, will they not?

REVIEW OF LESSONS XIII-XX

90. Give the English of the following words: amor, animal, appellō, auxilium, caedēs, carō, castra, celeritās, certus, cīvis, clārus, cōsul, corpus, creō, custōs, dē, deus,



A ROMAN SACRIFICE

dō, domus, dux, errō, faciunt, fīnis, frāter, grex, homō, hostis, ignis, labor, lēgātus, leō, mare, māter, mēns, mercātor, mīles, mittit, mōns, -ne, nōnne, num, nihil, os, pars, pater, pāx, pecūnia, per, perturbō, post, pugna, -que, rēx, rūs, senex, soror, stō, timor, tūtus, urbs, virgō, vīs.

91. Give orally as many English derivatives as you can from the words in § 90.

92. Review orally the Latin for the following words, giving the nominative, genitive singular, and gender of nouns, the three nominative forms of adjectives, and the principal parts of verbs: devour, maiden, tax, safe, stand, old man, king, fight, disturb, money, father, bone, aid, flesh, speed, state, consul, create, down (from), concerning, give, nothing, soldier, mind, sea, lieutenant, fire, man, brother, he makes, leader, go astray, territory, enemy, toil, lion, mother, trader, home, guard, body, renowned, camp, murder, love, call, part, peace, through, after, and, country, sister, timid, city, conqueror, force, flock.

93. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of the following words: *auxilium*, *caedēs*, *carō*, *castra*, *corpus*, *errō*, *finis*, *homō*, *ignis*, *lēgātus*, *mercātor*, *mīles*, *nihil*, *os*, *pecūnia*, *rūs*, *senex*, *stō*, *urbs*, *virgō*, *vīs*, *vorō*.

94. Classify as parts of speech, and define the following English words, giving the Latin words, with meanings, from which they are derived: carnivorous, Virginia, urbane, stationary, rustic, pacifist, annihilation, militant, commerce, dementia, mariner, delegate, laboratory, homicide, erratic, incorporate, civilize, Chester, finance, Czar.

95. Discussion in class of difficult English words, apparently derived from Latin words in Lessons XIII–XX, met by the pupils in their school work or outside reading, and noted down, as directed in § 59.

96. Decline the Latin for *soldier*, *large body*, *small city*, *force*, *old man*, *sea*, *flesh*, *bone*.

97. Give the synopsis, active and passive, in the third person singular, of the indicative of **amō**.

Conjugate the perfect indicative active of **stō**, the future perfect indicative active of **errō**, and the past perfect indicative passive of **laudō**.

98. Explain the *Partitive Genitive*. What nouns of the third declension have *i-stems*? What are the characteristics of *i-stems*? What happens when the verb of the *Predicate Accusative* construction is changed to the passive voice? Give the rule for the *Locative*. Explain the use of the three particles employed in asking questions. Explain the constructions, *Dative of Purpose or Tendency*, *Ablative of Cause*, and *Ablative of Manner*.

LESSON XXI

PREPOSITIONS. PREFIXES. DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

99. Study the rules for prepositions, Rules of Syntax, 25, 26, 27, p. 321.

100. Prefixes. Learn the list of Latin prefixes with their meanings, Rules of Syntax, 28, pp. 321, 322.

As the student has doubtless observed, many English words are composed of Latin roots combined with these prefixes. From this point the pupil in the search for English derivatives should test with the prefixes, taken in alphabetical order, every Latin word met, whether in the Vocabularies, Paradigms, grammatical

references, or later in the Latin readings. The results of this search should be confirmed by consulting the English dictionary. For easy reference, a list of prefixes, struck off on the typewriter or multigraph, should be pasted on the inside of the cover of every Derivative Notebook.

Examples :

aberration (**errō**), affiliate (**fīlius**), ambition (**eō**, **itum**, *go*; lit., *a going around*, especially, *to solicit votes*), antebellum, anti-suffrage (**suffrāgium**, **-ī**, n., *vote*), bicycle (**cyclus**, **-ī**, m., *circle*), circumnavigate (**nāvigō**, *sail*, **nāvis**, *ship*, **agō**, *do, drive, make go*), cis-atlantic, convoke (**vocō**), contrast (**stō**), counterfeit (**facit**, **faciunt**), devastate (**vāstō**), disgrace (**grātia**), exculpate (**culpō**), extraordinary (**ōrdō**, **-dinis**, m., *rank, row, class*), immature (**mātūrus**), immure (**mūrus**), enamor (**amō**), infra-violet (in connection with the solar spectrum), intra-territorial (**terra**, **-ae**, f., *land*), introduce (**dūcō**, *lead*; cf. **dux**), juxtaposition (**pōnō**, **positum**, *place*), non-partisan (**pars**), obvious (**via**), permit (**mittō**, *send, let go*), portent (**tendō**, **tentum**, *stretch*), postscript (**scribō**, **scriptum**, *write*), predominate (**dominus**), preternatural (**nātūra**, **-ae**, f., *nature*), procure (**cūra**), retrospect (**speciō**, *look*), separate (**parō**), semiannual (**annus**, **-ī**, m., *year*), sinecure (**cūra**), submarine (**mare**), subterfuge (**fugiō**, *flee*), superfine (**finis**), surmount (**mōns**), supramundane (**mundus**, **-ī**, m., *world*), transport (**portō**), ultramarine (**mare**).

101. For additional English derivatives test with prefixes the following Latin words, taken from the

Vocabularies, confirm your results by consulting the English dictionary, and record in the Derivative Notebook, under the Latin words, any derivatives found: *aequus, creō, culpō, cūra, errō, novus, numerus, parō, pecūnia, portō, socius, urbs, vocō.*

102. Study the rule for *Dative with Compound Verbs*, Rules of Syntax, 29, p. 322.

Examples:

Amīcis **aderat.** *He aided (was present for) his friends.*

Mārcus militibus amicum praeficit. *Marcus places his friend in command of the soldiers.*

LESSON XXII

ADJECTIVES. SECOND CONJUGATION. DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE

Adjectives of the Third Declension with Three Terminations. Adverbs. Principal Parts and Indicative, Active and Passive, of Verbs of the Second Conjugation. Descriptive Genitive and Ablative.

103. Learn the declension of **ācer**, Paradigms, p. 279. Like **ācer** are declined **alacer**, *lively*, **celer**, *swift* (genitive plural wanting), **equester**, *equestrian*, **silvester**, *woody*, and others.

104. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by dropping the **-is** of the genitive singular, and adding **-iter**. But adjectives in **-ns**, and a few others, add **-er** or **-ter** (instead of **-iter**) to form the adverb; thus: **ācer**, **ācriter**; **celer**, **celeriter**; **sapiēns**, **sapienter**.

105. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of *moneō*, Paradigms, pp. 294–295. Note that the forms of *moneō* differ from the corresponding forms of *amō* largely in having *-ē* for the characteristic vowel instead of *-ā*. Give the synopsis of *moneō* in the first, second, or third person, singular or plural, active and passive together, as directed in § 85.

106. Study the rules for the *Descriptive Genitive* and *Ablative*, Rules of Syntax, 30, 31, p. 322. These constructions are also called the *Genitive* and *Ablative of Quality*, and of *Characteristic*.

Examples :

Vir magnae virtūtis, or *vir magnā virtūte*, a man of great valor.

Animō bonō sunt. They are of good courage.

107.

VOCABULARY

<i>acer</i> , <i>ācris</i> , <i>ācre</i> , sharp, keen.	<i>loca</i> (places), <i>locī</i> , <i>-ōrum</i>
<i>ācritēr</i> , adv., sharply.	(usually topics or passages in books).
<i>alacer</i> , <i>-cris</i> , <i>-cre</i> , eager, active.	<i>moneō</i> , <i>-ēre</i> , <i>-uī</i> , <i>-itum</i> , advise, warn.
<i>celer</i> , <i>-eris</i> , <i>-ere</i> , swift.	<i>moveō</i> , <i>-ēre</i> , <i>mōvī</i> , <i>mōtum</i> , move.
<i>celeriter</i> , adv., swiftly.	<i>nāvis</i> , <i>-is</i> , f., ship; <i>nāvis longa</i> , battleship, galley.
<i>equester</i> , <i>-tris</i> , <i>-tre</i> (equus), equestrian.	<i>pedes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , m. (<i>pēs</i>), foot-soldier; pl., infantry.
<i>habeō</i> , <i>-ēre</i> , <i>-uī</i> , <i>-itum</i> , have, hold, consider.	<i>pēs</i> , <i>pedis</i> , m., foot.
<i>prohibeō</i> , <i>-ēre</i> , <i>-uī</i> , <i>-itum</i> (<i>prō</i> , <i>habeō</i>), hold off, hinder, check.	<i>prudentia</i> , <i>-ae</i> , f. (<i>prō</i> , <i>videō</i>), foresight, wisdom.
<i>locus</i> , <i>-ī</i> , m., place; pl.,	

silvester, -tris, -tre (silva), wooded.	sustineō, -ēre, -uī, susten- tum (sub, teneō), hold up, sustain.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold.	terra, -ae, f., land.
contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, (con, teneō), contain, limit, restrain.	videō, -ēre, vīdī, visum, see. virtūs, -tūtis, f. (vir), manli- ness, valor; pl., virtues.

108. English Derivatives.¹ Record in the Index Book and Derivative Notebook the Latin words in this Vocabulary, as in previous lessons. Among the English derivatives place any words found by testing with the prefixes of Lesson XXI. Word drills. Tests.

LESSON XXIII

EXERCISES

109. I. a. 1. Monēs, monēris, movēbās, movēbis, monēberis, monēbere. 2. Tenēmus, tenēmur, tenēbāmus, tenēbāmur, tenēbimus, tenēbimur. 3. Monuimus, monuistī, monuistis, tenuerāmus, tenueritis, monita es, monitae erātis, monitī erimus. 4. Nōne ab altīs et silvestribus locīs nāvis albās celerisque in marī saepe vidēbātis? 5. Equestrēs cōpiae Gallōrum ā peditibus Rōmānīs, hominibus magnae virtūtis, frūmentō celeriter prohibitae erunt. 6. Cōsul, vir magnā prūdentiā, pugnās multās et ācrīs terrā marique sustinuerat.

¹ As in § 52, 1 (note), the spelling of English Derivatives enables us to remember the declension of ācer and celer. Thus: *acrid*, or *acrimony* suggests ācer, ācris, ācre; and *celerity* suggests celer, celeris, celere. In the same way derivatives from the present and supine stem of verbs often suggest the principal parts of the Latin originals. Thus: *evident* and *vision* suggest videō, visum; and *movement* and *motor* suggest moveō, mōtum.

b. 1. Mercātor nūntiō alacrī equum celerem albīs pedibus dabit. 2. Senex ācer lēgātum nōn prō¹ amicō, sed prō hoste habuit. 3. Caesar in castris militēs continet; dux hostium magnā celeritāte sub montem cōpiās movet. 4. Terrā marique ācriter pugnātum est.

II. a. 1. You (*singular*) have advised, have been advised, we have advised, have been advised, shall have been advised. 2. You (*plural*) were holding, were held, will be held, you (*singular*) hold, are held, held, were held, will hold, will be held. 3. Caesar, a man of great foresight and valor, will quickly cut off (hinder) the forces of the enemy from (their) ships. 4. The women will have beautiful garlands of red roses. (*Express in two ways.*)

b. 1. The leader of the infantry moved (his) camp to the wooded places, where he sustained a fierce (sharp) battle with the equestrian forces of the enemy. 2. The consul sends the swift-footed (of swift feet) messenger through the fields to the sea.

III. *Answer orally in Latin the following questions:*
 1. Nōne Rōmānī Cicerōnem, virum magnā prūdentiā, laudāvērunt? 2. Num vidēbātis, discipulī, nāvis celeris in mari? 3. Nōne Caesar barbarōs finibus Gallōrum prohibēbit?

LESSON XXIV

ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND INFINITIVES

Adjectives of the Third Declension with One and Two Terminations. Adverbs. Infinitives of *Sum*, *Amō*, and *Moneō*, Active and Passive. Genitive with Adjectives.

¹ for, i.e. *in the light of, as.*

110. Learn the declension of **fortis**, **potēns**, **fēlix**, and **vetus**, Paradigms, p. 280. Form adverbs from **fortis** and **fēlix**. (See § 104.)

111. Learn the infinitives of **amō**, **moneō**, and **sum**, active and passive, with their meanings, Paradigms, pp. 293, 296, 310.

112. Study the rule for *Genitive with Adjectives*, Rules of Syntax, 32, p. 322.

Examples :

Studiōsus labōris, *eager for work*.

Plēna periculōrum est vīta. *Life is full of dangers*.



ROMAN SILVER VASE

113.

VOCABULARY

ac (before consonants), **atque** (before vowels and consonants), *and*.

brevis, -e, *short, brief*.

brevitās, -tātis, f. (**brevis**), *shortness* (of time or stature).

breviter, adv., *briefly*.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, **dēlētum**, *blot out, destroy utterly*.

fēlix, -īcis, *lucky, happy, fortunate*.

fēlicitās, -tātis, f. (**fēlix**), *good luck*.

fēliciter, adv., *luckily*.

flamma, -ae, f., *flame, fire*.

fortis, -e, *brave, strong*.

fortiter, adv., *bravely*.

fortitūdō, -dinis, f. (**fortis**), *bravery*.

gravis, -e, *heavy, weighty*.

gravitās, -tātis, f. (**gravis**), *heaviness, weight* (especially of character), *dignity*.

graviter, adv., *heavily, severely*.

omnis, -e, *all*.

periculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril*.

plēnus, -a, -um, *full*.

potēns, **potentis**, *powerful*.

potentia, -ae, f. (**potēns**), *power*.

studium, -ī, n., *eagerness, zeal*.

studiōsus, -a, -um (**studium**), *full of zeal, eager, zealous*.

vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift, fleet*.

vetus, -eris, *old, of long standing*.

vīta, -ae, f., *life*.

NOTE. *Et* simply connects; *-que* combines more closely into one connected whole; *atque* (*ac*) joins with emphasis.

114. English Derivatives. Record the Latin words in the Index Book and Derivative Notebook, as usual. Test the words with prefixes. Word drills. Tests. Discussion of difficult English words of Latin origin met in school work or outside reading.

115. Latin Word Formation. From the above Vocabulary it will be noticed that feminine abstract nouns are formed from adjectives (and occasionally from nouns; as, *virtūs*, from *vir*) by adding to the stem or base of the adjective or noun the suffixes *-ia*, *-tia*, *-tās*, *-tūs*, *-tūdō*. Notice, also, that the adjective suffix *-ōsus*, added to noun stems, means *full of*.

LESSON XXV

EXERCISES

116. I. a. 1. *Esse, fuisse, futūrus esse, superāre, superārī, vocāre, vocārī, monēre, monērī.* 2. *Liberāvisse, culpāvisse, laudāvisse, mōtūrus esse, mōtum irī.* 3. *Vīsūrus esse, vīsum irī, habuisse, habitus esse, vīsus esse, mōtus esse, dedisse, datūrus esse, datus esse, datum irī.* 4. *Brevis est vīta hominum atque plēna cūrārum periculōrumque.* 5. *Vetus oppidum Gallōrum flammis vėlōcibus dēlētum erat.*

b. 1. *Omnēs mīlitēs studiōsī glōriae contrā hostēs stetērunt atque fortiter pugnābant.* 2. *Fortēs peditēs hostium ā nāvibus prūdentiā fortitūdineque ducis fēlicis et potentis prohibiti sunt.* 3. *Studium potentiae pecūniaeque est omnibus.*¹

¹ i.e. *omnibus hominibus.*

II. a. 1. To be about to be (*fem.*), to have been, to be, to sustain, to be sustained, to have checked, to have been checked. 2. To be about to disturb, to be about to be disturbed, to have been disturbed, to have stood, to be about to stand (*fem.*), to have been delighted, to be about to delight. 3. The women at home will be seriously (severely) disturbed by the danger of the fierce (sharp) flames in the forest.

b. 1. The shortness of life is not a cause for solicitude (care) to brave (men). 2. The keen mind of the powerful consul was full of weighty cares. 3. All the books of the zealous pupils had been destroyed by fire.

III. *Answer orally in Latin the following questions:*
 1. Num pueri Rōmāni temporibus Caesaris studiōsi periculī erant? 2. Cūr hostēs pulchram urbem dēlēvērunt? 3. Continēbitne Caesar militēs in castris?

LESSON XXVI

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. PARTICIPLES

Irregular Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Participles of *Amō* and *Moneō*, Active and Passive. The Future Participle of *Sum*. Dative with Adjectives.

117. Ten adjectives with genitive in *-ius* and dative in *-ī* are otherwise like regular adjectives of the first and second declensions, except that *alius* has *aliud* in the neuter nominative and accusative. There is no vocative. *Alter* has *alterius* in the genitive singular, and this form also serves as the genitive of *alius*. These adjectives are as follows: *alius*, *alter*, *neuter*, *nūllus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūllus*, *ūnus*, *uter*, and *uterque*.

118. Learn the declension of **nūllus**, **alter**, and **neuter**, Paradigms, pp. 281–282. The plural is regular.

119. Learn the future participle of **sum**, and the participles of **amō** and **moneō**, active and passive, Paradigms, pp. 293, 296, 310. The present participles are declined like **potēns**, and the future active and perfect passive like **bonus**. Note that participles, as adjectives, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Examples :

Servī aquam portantēs per silvam properābant. *The slaves bearing water hastened through the woods.*

Pugnātūrī erant cum hostibus. *They were about to fight with the enemy.*

Mīles graviter vulnerātus pugnābat. *The soldier, (though) severely wounded, kept on fighting.*

120. Study the rule for *Dative with Adjectives*, Rules of Syntax, 33, p. 322.

Examples :

Inimicus Rōmānīs, *unfriendly to the Romans.*

Castrīs idōneus locus, *a place fit for a camp.*

121.

VOCABULARY

alius, -a, -ud, *another*; **alius**
 . . . **alius**, *one . . . another*;
alii . . . **alii**, *some . . . others*.
alter, -era, -erum, *the other*
 (of two); **alter** . . . **alter**,
the one . . . the other.

neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither*.
nūllus, -a, -um, *no, none*.
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*.
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire*.
ūllus, -a, -um, *any*.
ūnus, -a, -um, *one*.

uter, -tra, -trum , <i>which (of two).</i>	idōneus, -a, -um , <i>suitable, fit.</i>
uterque, utraque, utrumque , <i>each (of two), both; utrāque ex parte, on both sides.</i>	inimicus, -a, -um (<i>in, not, amicus</i>), <i>unfriendly.</i>
aptus, -a, -um (<i>fitted to, joined to</i>), <i>fit, suitable.</i>	inimicus, -ī, m. , <i>a (personal) enemy.</i>
arbor, -oris, f. , <i>tree.</i>	inter , <i>prep., among.</i>
convocō, 1 (con, vocō) , <i>call together.</i>	nōmen, -inis, n. , <i>name.</i>
	periculōsus, -a, -um (<i>periculum</i>), <i>dangerous.</i>
	vulnerō, 1 (vulnus) , <i>wound.</i>
	vulnus, -eris, n. , <i>a wound.</i>

122. English Derivatives. Record in the Notebooks the words in this Vocabulary. Test all Latin words with prefixes. In your search for derivatives try to make use of the Latin suffixes of § 115. Word drills. Tests.

LESSON XXVII

EXERCISES

123. I. a. 1. *Aliae arborēs in silvā flammīs dēlētāe sunt, aliae tūtāe erant.* 2. *Tōtum concilium ā cōnsule convocātum nōminī rēgis inimicum fuit.* 3. *Militēs superātī ad loca alta et idōnea castris properābant.* 4. *Ūllane animālia ā leōne vorāta sunt?* 5. *Nūllum animal vorātum est, sed ūnum graviter vulnerābātur.* 6. *Utrāque ex parte peditēs fortiter pugnantēs vulnera multa sustinuērunt.*

b. 1. *Utrī malōrum discipulōrum dōnum ā magistrō dabitur?* 2. *Bonīs discipulīs sōlis dōna dabit.* 3. *Alter, labōribus aptus, nauta futūrus erat.* 4. *Neuter cōnsulum inter arborēs hostēs vīdit.* 5. *Via erat hominibus aspera et equīs periculōsa.*

II. a. 1. In which town is the swift messenger? He is in neither town. 2. One house among the trees was red, the other white. 3. Some animals are in the sea, others are on the land. 4. The gods alone have given the whole (of) life to men.

b. 1. The leader who had been warned (having been warned) sends suitable messengers to the walls of each city. 2. No men among the equestrian forces were unfriendly to Caesar. 3. The lieutenant, having been wounded, was leader in name only. 4. The wounds on the body of the brave citizen were many, and endangered (were dangerous to) his life.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. You are not unfriendly to Caesar, are you, (fellow) citizens? 2. Were there many merchants in Gaul? 3. Will you not hasten, soldiers, to a place suitable for a camp?

LESSON XXVIII

COMPOUNDS OF SUM

Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles of **Possum**, **Prōsum**, and Other Compounds of **Sum**. Complementary Infinitive.

124. Learn the indicative, infinitives, and participles of **possum** and **prōsum**, Paradigms, pp. 310, 311.

Note that **possum** is made up of **potis**, **-e**, **able**, and **sum**. The endings of the adjective are dropped, forming **pot-**. When the letter **t** of this root comes before **s** in the verb, it is changed to **s**. In the perfect system, after **t** of the adjective, **f** of the verb is dropped.

125. Study the rule for *Complementary Infinitive*, Rules of Syntax, 34, p. 322.

Examples :

Nihil cēlāre possumus. *We can conceal nothing.*

Stāre nōn potuērunt. *They were not able to stand.*

126. Review the rule for *Dative with Compound Verbs*, Rules of Syntax, 29, p. 322.

127.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, -ae, f. (**amicus**, amō), *friendship*.

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, assistance*; pl., *auxiliary forces*.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus*.

eques, **equitis**, m. (**equus**), *horseman*; pl., *cavalry*.

iter, **itineris**, n., *journey, route*; **iter facit**, *he makes a march, marches*.

flūmen, -inis, n. (**fluō**, *flow*), *river*.

pōns, **pontis**, m., *bridge*.

ripa, -ae, f., *bank*.

sedeō, -ēre, **sēdī**, **sessum**, *take a position, sit, be fixed*.

sēdēs, -is, f. (**sedeō**), *seat, abode, habitation*.

praesideō, -ēre, -**sēdī**, -**sesum** (**prae**, **sedeō**), *preside over, watch over*.

praesidium, -ī, n. (**praesideō**), *garrison, protection, guard*.

sum, **esse**, **fui**, *be*.

absum, **abesse**, **āfui** (**ab**, **sum**), *be absent*.

adsum, **adesse**, **adfui** (**ad**, **sum**), *be present, assist*.

dēsum, **deesse**, **dēfui** (**dē**, **sum**), *be lacking, wanting*.

possum, **posse**, **potui** (**potis**, **able**, **sum**), *be able, can*.

praesum, -**esse**, -**fui** (**prae**, **sum**), *be over, at the head of, in command of*.

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui** (**prō**, **sum**), *be profitable, help*.

servō, *1, keep, preserve, save*.

supersum, -**esse**, -**fui** (**super**, **sum**), *be over, survive*.

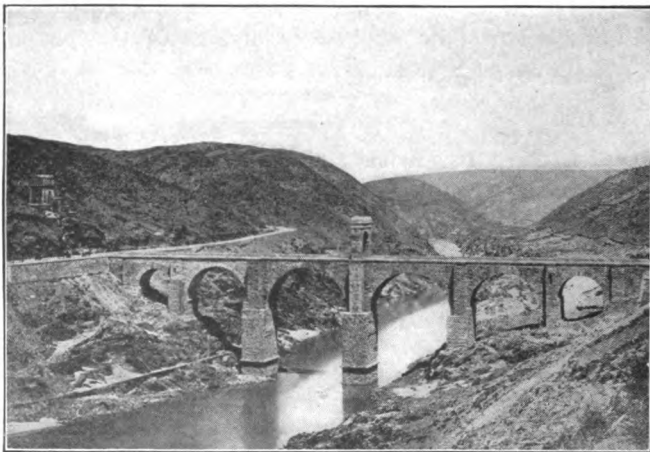
vērus, -a, -um, *true*.

128. English Derivatives. Record in the Note-books the words in the Vocabulary. Word drills. Tests. Oral sentences containing English derivatives.

LESSON XXIX

EXERCISES

129. I. a. 1. In utrā ripā flūminis praesidium post pugnam sedēbat? 2. Lēgātus ad pontem contrā cō-



A ROMAN BRIDGE. Alcantara, Spain

piās hostium stāre poterit. 3. Vēra amīcitia in periculis semper hominibus prōdest. 4. Propter auxilium sociōrum vectīgālia civitātī nōn dēfuērunt. 5. Brūtus lēgātus nāvibus longīs praefuerat. 6. Ūnā ex pugnā nūllī peditēs hostium superfuērunt.

b. 1. Magnīs (*forced*) itineribus auxilia Caesaris frūmentō praesidium prohibēre poterunt. 2. Altera filia domī mātīri aderat, altera aberat. 3. In finibus Gallōrum trāns flūmen nōn multae sēdēs ab equitibus fortibus servārī potuērunt.

II. a. 1. On account of the true friendship of allies in Gaul, auxiliary forces assisted (were present for) Caesar in all (his) battles. 2. The lieutenant builds (makes) a long bridge across the river from one bank to the other. 3. Through the bravery of the soldiers of the garrison, the homes (abodes) of many farmers will be saved. 4. We alone had not been able to help the brave lieutenant.

b. 1. Money was often lacking to Caesar. 2. Without the help of the cavalry, we shall not be able to take a position beyond the mountain in the territory of the enemy. 3. In the fight on the sea, Brutus, a man of unusual (great) foresight, commanded (was in command of) the ships. 4. Many of the cavalry, though severely wounded (having been wounded), survive (from) the battle, and march to camp.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Will Caesar be able to keep the bridge? 2. Brutus was not in command of the galleys (long ships), was he? 3. Are not the cavalry making a march on both banks of the river?

REVIEW OF LESSONS XXI-XXIX

130. Name, with their meanings, the prepositions which govern the accusative; the prepositions which govern the ablative; those which govern both accusative and ablative. Give the meaning of the following prefixes: *ultrā*, *amb*, *suprā*, *trāns*, *ā*, *ab*, *abs*, *bī*, *bis*, *cis*, *dī*, *dis*, *extrā*, *in* (*un*), *post*, *prae*, *super*, *retrō*, *re*, *contrā*, *ad*, *circum*, *dē*, *sē* (*sēd*), *inter*, *prō*, *ob*, *con*, *per*, *praeter*.

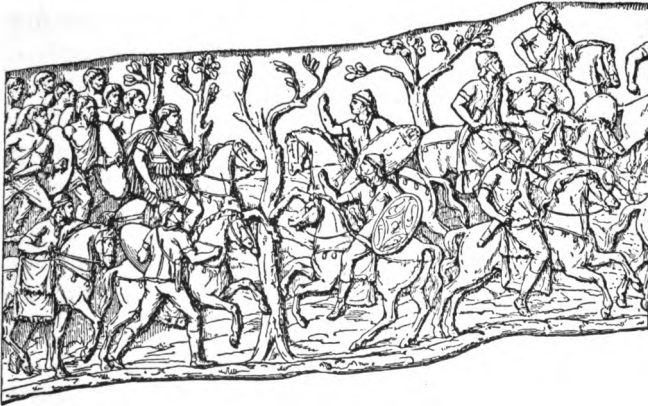
131. Explain the following English words, tracing them back, and giving the meaning of the Latin words from which they are derived, with the force of prefixes, if there are prefixes: affluence, riparian, subsidize, interest, impotence, conservation, alibi, subaltern, neutrality, nullification, unanimity, arboretum, revoke, accelerate, prohibition, dislocate, premonition, locomotive, biped, abstinence, interment, supervise, virtuosso, felicitate, omnivorous, velocipede, inveterate, collaborate, transportation, interurban, incorporate, coadjutor, preparedness, transform, inoculate, innovation, adequate, tradition.

132. Give the English, together with as many derivatives as you can, for the following Latin words: ācer, alacer, alius, alter, arbor, brevis, celer, dēlēō, fēliciter, flūmen, fortis, gravitās, habēō, inimīcus, locus, moneō, moveō, nāvis, neuter, nōmen, nūllus, omnis, periculum, pēs, pōns, potēns, studiōsus, possum, sustineō, vėlōx, vērū, vetus, videō, vīta, vulnus.

133. Review orally the Latin for each of the following words, giving the nominative, genitive singular, and gender of nouns, all nominative forms of adjectives, and the principal parts of verbs: virtue, see, contain, wooded, foresight, foot, ship, sharp, move, eager, advise, swift, place, horse, have, and (*three words, with the difference in use*), heavy, shortness, bravery, blot out, flame, good-luck, all, life, old, dangerous, zealous, full, powerful, wound, another, which (of two), the other (of two), one, name, any, neither, unfriendly, whole, alone, none, suitable, call together, tree,

each, horseman, true, care, garrison, route, river, help, be able, seat, bridge, be lacking, bank, be present, be absent.

134. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of the following words: *videō*, *teneō*,



ROMAN CAVALRY
(From the column of Trajan)

prudentia, *pēs*, *moveō*, *vetus*, *studium*, *omnis*, *gravis*, *fēlix*, *vulnerō*, *nōmen*, *aptus*, *ūnus*, *sōlus*, *alius*, *sedeō*, *rīpa*, *flūmen* (*fluō*), *iter*.

135. Classify as parts of speech and define the following English words, giving the Latin words from which they are derived: *vitalize*, *omnipresent*, *gravitation*, *invisible*, *sustenance*, *impede*, *commotion*, *nominate*, *inimical*, *alternative*, *soloist*, *verify*, *essential*, *itinerary*.

136. Discussion of difficult English words, apparently derived from Latin words, in Lessons XXI-XXIX,

met by pupils in their school work or outside reading, and noted down at the time.

137. Decline the Latin for *sharp, short, powerful, all, lucky*.

138. Name the ten irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions which have **-ius** in the genitive, and **-i** in the dative, and give their meanings. Decline **nūllus**, **alter**, and **neuter**. What is the genitive singular of **alius**? The neuter nominative and accusative? How do these ten irregular adjectives form the plural?

139. Give the indicative, infinitives, and participles, active and passive, of **amō** and **moneō**, with their meanings. Give the indicative, infinitives, and participles of **sum**, **possum**, and **prōsum**, with their meanings. Of what is **possum** made up? What changes take place for the sake of good sound before **s** in this verb? What change in the perfect system? Give five other compounds of **sum**, with principal parts and meanings.

140. How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? From adjectives of the third declension? Give examples. What is the rule for *Dative with Compound Verbs*? *Descriptive Genitive*? *Descriptive Ablative*? *Genitive with Adjectives*? *Dative with Adjectives*?

Show how feminine abstract nouns in Latin are formed from adjectives and nouns. Give examples. Name a few English suffixes which are derived from these Latin endings. What is the force of the Latin

adjective ending **-ōsus**? Give the English equivalent.

Decline the present active participle of **amō**; the perfect passive participle of **videō**; the future active participle of **habeō**. What are the two plurals of **locus**? What difference in meaning?

LESSON XXX

FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS

The Declension of **Domus**. Relations of Time. Extent of Space.

141. Learn the declension of **exercitus**, **cornū**, **diēs**, **rēs**, Paradigms, p. 277.

142. **Domus**, *house*, is declined according to the fourth declension, but it also has the following forms of the second :

domī, *at home*

domum, *to (one's) home*

domō, *from home*

domōs, *to (their) homes*

143. Gender. Nouns of the fourth declension in **-us** are masculine, with a few exceptions like **domus** and **manus**, *hand*, which are feminine. Those in **-ū** are neuter. Nouns of the fifth declension are regularly feminine, except **diēs**, *day*, and **meridiēs**, *midday*. But **diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular, particularly when it means *appointed day*, *time*.

144. In the fifth declension the ending of the genitive and dative singular is **-eī**, instead of **-ei**, when a consonant precedes, as in **rēs**, **spēs**, and **fidēs**. In **rēs pūblica**, *state*, *republic*, **pūblica** is the feminine of the

adjective **pūblicus**, -a, -um, *public*, and is therefore declined like *bona*, to agree with the feminine **rēs**.

145. Study the rules for *Relations of Time*, and *Extent of Space*, Rules of Syntax, 35, 36, pp. 322, 323.

Examples :

Caesar nocte urbem occupāvit. *Caesar occupied the city in the night.*

Ūnā hōrā legiō in oppidō aderit. *Within one hour the legion will be in the town.*

Lēgātus multōs diēs in urbe exercitum continēbat. *The lieutenant kept his army in the city many days.*

Flūmen est pedēs decem altum. *The river is ten feet deep.*

146.

VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, m., *year*.

centum, indecl., *hundred*.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).

decem, indecl., *ten*.

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right*.

diēs, -ēī, m., *day*.

domus, -ūs, -ī, f., *house, home*.

exercitus, -ūs, m. (*exerceō*, *train, exercise*), *army*.

expectō, 1 (*ex, spectō*, 1, *look at*), *wait for, expect*.

fidēs, -eī, f., *good faith, pledge, protection*.

frūmentārius, -a, -um (*frūmentum*), *of or pertaining to grain*.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain*.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.

hōra, -ae, f., *hour*.

legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band*.

nox, *noctis*, f., *night*.

paucī, -ae, -a, *a few, only a few*.

proelium, -ī, n., *battle*.

rēs, *rei*, f., *thing*; **rēs frūmentāria**, *grain supply*;

rēs pūblica, *state, republic*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*.

spēs, *speī*, f., *hope*.

tempus, -oris, n., *time*.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *frighten*.

147. English Derivatives. Record in the Notebooks the words which yield derivatives. As always, test these roots with all the prefixes, taken in alphabetical order, and confirm your results by consulting the English dictionary. Oral and written drills and tests. Discussion of difficult words of Latin origin.

LESSON XXXI

EXERCISES

148. I. a. 1. Centum annōs multī exercitūs barbarōrum populū reī pūblicae terruerant. **2.** Nocte militēs ex sinistrō cornū decimae legiōnis pontem occupāre potuerunt. **3.** Post proelium hostēs decem diēs rem frūmentāriam frūstrā expectābant. **4.** Brevī tempore manus Gallōrum ex dextrō cornū equitum fugā perturbābitur.

b. 1. Paucī peditēs ex proeliō superfuērunt atque ūnā hōrā in oppidō aderunt. **2.** Caesar decimae legiōnī magnam fidem habēbat. **3.** Spē victōriae altera manus in ripā, altera in flūmine stetit ac fortiter pugnābat.

II. a. 1. Throughout the whole war, the good faith of the tenth legion was the cause of great hope to Caesar. **2.** On account of the time of year, provisions (grain supply) were lacking to the army for ten days. **3.** Within a few hours a band of the enemy had been seen on the left bank of the river. **4.** At home we waited for our friends one day, in vain.

b. 1. The right wing, terrified (having been terrified) by the flight of the cavalry, hurried by night over

(*ablative*) rough roads to the camp. 2. The Romans, (when) about to break (move) camp, see a few bands of the enemy on the other bank of the river, (which is) a hundred feet wide.

III. *Answer orally in Latin the following questions:*

1. Frūstrāne Caesar decem diēs lēgātum exspectāvit?
2. Num exercitus ūnā hōrā ad urbem aderit?
3. Nōne Cicerō rem pūblicam servāvit?

LESSON XXXII

THE THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts, Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles, Active and Passive, of the Third Conjugation. Possessive Genitive. Predicate Genitive.

149. Learn the principal parts, indicative, infinitives, and participles, active and passive, of **regō**, Paradigms, pp. 297-298, 299.

150. Study the rules for *Possessive Genitive* and *Predicate Genitive*, Rules of Syntax, 37, 38, p. 323.

Example :

Possessive Genitive: Domus Cicerōnis, Cicero's house.

NOTE. Here belongs the genitive with the ablatives **causā** and **grātiā**, *for the sake of*. The genitive always precedes; as, **hominum causā**, *for the sake of men*; **amicōrum grātiā**, *for the sake of (one's) friends*.

Example :

Predicate Genitive: Ager est domini, the field is the master's, or the field belongs to the master.

151.

VOCABULARY

colō, colere, coluī, cultum,
till, dwell in, cherish.

colōnia, -ae, f. (colō), *colony.*

colōnus, -i, m. (colō), *tiller,*
husbandman, settler, colonist.

cultus, -ūs, m. (colō), *civilization, culture, appearance.*

incolō, -ere, -uī (in, colō),
 dwell in, inhabit (with acc.).

incola, -ae, m., f. (in, colō),
inhabitant.

currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum,
run.

dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum, *say,*
speak.

dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum
(di, root vid-, *separate, as*
in vidua, -ae, f., widow),
divide, separate.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum,
draw, lead.

liberī, -ōrum, m. pl. (liber),
children.

mittō, -ere, misi, missum, *send.*

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*

petō, -ere, petivi, petitum,
fall upon, try to get, seek,
ask for.

postulō, l, *demand.*

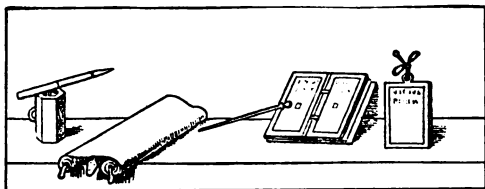
regiō, -ōnis, f. (regō), *dis-*
trict, region.

regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum, *make*
straight, guide, rule.

rēctus, -a, -um, as an adj.,
direct, straight.

salūs, salūtis, f., *health, safety.*

scribō, -ere, scripsi, scrip-
tum, *write.*



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

152. English Derivatives.¹ Record Latin words and derivatives, as usual. Oral and written drills and tests.

¹ Note that in the case of verbs, as with nouns and adjectives (cf. § 52, 1, note, and § 108, 1, note), the English derivatives often give us the Latin original. Thus: *current* or *currency* and *cursory* suggest *currō, cursum*; *dividend* and *divisor* suggest *dividō, divisum*; *scribe* and *scripture* suggest *scribō, scriptum*; and *regent* and *rector* suggest *regō, rēctum*.

Discuss difficult words of Latin origin met by pupils. Oral and written sentences containing derivatives of Latin words.

LESSON XXXIII

EXERCISES

153. I. a. 1. Dūceris, dūcimīnī, colis, colitis, mittēbāmus, mittēbāminī, regam, regar, mittētis, mittēminī,



HEAD OF A ROMAN WOMAN
Portrait Statue

mittēre. 2. Ducta est, ductae erātis, dīvisistī, dīvisistis, scrīpsērunt, scrīpsērās, incoluisse. 3. Dīxisse, dictūrus esse, petītus esse, petītum irī, incolī, dūcī, mittī. 4. Currēns, currēns, cucurrisse, petīvisse, dīvisum, dīvisūra, rēctum. 5. Multae colōniae Rōmānōrum fuisse dicuntur. 6. Amīcī populī Rōmānī aliōs incolās Galliae cultū superābant.

b. 1. Salūtis causā liberī mulierēsque ex mūrō pācem ā Rōmānīs petīvērunt. 2. Cūr ab tōtā regiōne rem frūmentāriam postulāverās? 3. Manūs mātis liberōrumque erant parvae et albae. 4. Colōnī Rōmānī rēctā viā salūtem fugā petent.

II. a. 1. To have inhabited, to be about to inhabit, to be written, to be ruled, to be about to be ruled.

2. Seeking, (having been) sought, (being) about to send, to be sent, to have sent, (having been) led.
 3. You (*singular*) will write, will be led, we shall divide, you (*plural*) will divide, you (*singular*) will say, you were saying. 4. The inhabitants of the region, (thoroughly) frightened, ran with their women and children to the garrison, seeking safety.

b. 1. Will not the fields be tilled far and wide by the many slaves of the colonists? 2. Why were the Gauls said to surpass other barbarians in valor and culture? 3. Many straight and broad roads belonged to (were of) the Romans. 4. Before night one legion of infantry will take a position on the right bank of the broad river near the bridge.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Was all (of) Gaul divided into many parts? 2. Will not the women and children run into the camp for the sake of safety? 3. Envoys have not been sent by the barbarians, have they?

LESSON XXXIV

THIRD CONJUGATION (*Continued*). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles, Active and Passive, of -iō Verbs of the Third Conjugation. The Ablative Absolute.

154. Learn the principal parts, indicative, infinitives, and participles, active and passive, of *capiō*, Paradigms, pp. 300, 301-302.

155. Study the rule for *Ablative Absolute*, Rules of Syntax, 39, p. 323.

Examples :

Urbe captā, regīna fūgit. *On the capture of the city (the city having been captured), the queen fled.*

Caesar, bellō cōfectō, ad urbem properāvit. *Caesar, having finished the war (the war having been finished), hastened to the city.*

Equitibus fugientibus peditēs occīsī sunt. *Since the horsemen fled (the horsemen fleeing), the foot soldiers were cut down.*

Caesare imperātōre hostēs vīcistis. *Under the generalship of Caesar (Caesar being general), you have conquered the enemy.*

Vivō Caesare rēs pūblica salva erat. *While Caesar was alive (Caesar being alive), the state was safe.*

156.

VOCABULARY

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, <i>drive, do, act, treat; grātiās agere,</i> <i>render thanks.</i>	facio, -ere, fēcī, factum, <i>do, make.</i>
ars, artis, f., <i>skill, art.</i>	cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, cōfectum (<i>con, faciō</i>), <i>accomplish, exhaust ("do up").</i>
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, <i>fall.</i>	interficiō, -ere, interfēcī, interfectum (<i>inter, faciō</i>), <i>kill, put to death.</i>
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum (<i>cadō</i>), <i>cause to fall, cut, kill.</i>	perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (<i>per, faciō</i>), <i>bring to conclusion, finish.</i>
occidō, -ere, occidī, occisum (<i>ob, caedō</i>), <i>cut down, kill.</i>	fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum, <i>flee (of. fuga).</i>
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, <i>take.</i>	imperātor, -tōris, m. (<i>imperō, command</i>), <i>commander, general.</i>
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum (<i>in, capiō</i>), <i>begin.</i>	

pār, paris, *equal*.

salvus, -a, -um, *safe* (cf. salūs).

vincō, -ere, vicī, victum, *conquer*.

vīvus, -a, -um (cf. vita), *alive, living*.

157. English Derivatives.¹ Record Latin words and derivatives. In the case of verbs in Latin, note that both the present and supine stems must be considered for derivatives, and tested with prefixes. Drills. Tests. Discussion of difficult words met in school work or outside reading. Composition of oral and written sentences containing derivatives.

LESSON XXXV

EXERCISES

158. I. a. 1. Capis, caperis, perficiēbās, capiēbāris, capiēre, capimur. 2. Incēpistis, fēcerāmus, cōnfēceris, captī estis, capta erās. 3. Interficiī, cōnficiī, perficiī, captus esse, captum irī, fūgissee, fugitūrus esse, cōnfectus, incipiēns, interficiēns. 4. Duce caesō, militēs fūgērunt. 5. Galliā victā, populus Rōmānus Caesarī grātiās ēgit. 6. Frātrēs viribus fortitūdineque fuērunt parēs. 7. Vīta brevis, ars longa.

b. 1. Lēgātus militibus videntibus, dē equō cecidit atque occīsus est. 2. Imperātōre vīvō atque urbe

¹ Note that English derivatives from the present participle of -iō verbs of the third conjugation often help us in remembering how to classify the Latin originals. Thus: *incipient* suggests *incipiō*; *efficient* suggests *efficiō* (*ex, faciō*), etc.

salvā, cīvēs deīs deābusque omnibus grātiās ēgērunt.
 3. Exercitū dīvīsō, cōnsul cum parte mīlitum decem hōrās sub montem iter faciēbat.

II. a. 1. We were taking, we were taken, you (*singular*) will take, will be taken, you (*plural*) have begun, will have begun, it had been begun. 2. To make, to have made, to be about to accomplish, to be killed, to be finished, to have been killed.



A ROMAN URN

3. Fleeing, beginning, (being) about to flee, (having been) taken, to be about to be taken, it will have been begun, we shall be taken. 4. The enemy being (having been) conquered, the army (being) safe, and the general alive, many

(and) important (great) matters (things) were attended to (*use form of agō*) by the citizens.

b. 1. The Roman colonists were not equal in culture and skill, were they? 2. The bad boy fell from the lofty tree in the sight of his terrified mother (his terrified mother seeing). 3. If the guards are cut down (the guards having been cut down), the city will be captured within an (one) hour.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Will you not render thanks to the

gods, citizens, because the army is safe? 2. Will Caesar be able to capture the city, after conquering the enemy? 3. When the fields were laid waste, why did not the slaves flee?

LESSON XXXVI

DEPONENT VERBS

Deponent Verbs. Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles of the First Three Conjugations. Subject Accusative.

159. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meaning. But there are the following exceptions: The future infinitive takes the active form (*e.g.* **mīrātūrus esse**, not **mīrātum iri**), and the gerund, supine, and participles of both voices occur, the perfect participle usually being active in meaning.

160. Deponent verbs are of the four regular conjugations, including the -ior verbs (like the passive of **capiō**) of the third conjugation.

Learn the principal parts, indicative, infinitives, and participles of **mīror**, **vereor**, **sequor**, and **patior**, Paradigms, pp. 305, 306.

161. Study the rule for *Subject Accusative*, Rules of Syntax, 40, p. 323.

Examples:

Videō puerum adesse. *I see that the boy is present (the boy to be present).*

Putō hominem parātūrum esse. *I think that the man will prepare (the man to be about to prepare).*

Dico locum parātum esse. *I say that the place has been prepared (the place to have been prepared).*

Patior hominem manēre. *I allow the man to remain.*

Note that the construction of the infinitive with subject accusative occurs with verbs of *saying, thinking, seeing, permitting.*

162.

VOCABULARY

angustiae, -ārum, f. pl. (angustus, -a, -um, narrow),
narrow pass, troubles.

caelum, -ī, n., sky, heavens.

cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum, try,
endeavor, attempt.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language.

lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight.

magnitūdō, -dinis, f. (magnus),
greatness, size.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum,
remain, abide.

miror, -ārī, mirātus sum,
wonder at, admire.

morior, morī, mortuus sum,
die.

mors, mortis, f., death.

patior, patī, passus sum,
suffer, permit, allow.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum,
put, place; castra pōnere,
to pitch camp.

putō, 1, reckon, think.

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum,
set out, depart.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,
follow.

stella, stellae, f., star.

tempestās, -tātis, f. (tempus),
a period of time, weather, storm, tempest.

vēlum, -ī, n., covering, veil,
sail.

verbum, -ī, n., word.

vereor, -ērī, veritus sum,
stand in awe of, fear.

163. English Derivatives. Record Latin words and derivatives. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences containing derivatives.

LESSON XXXVII

EXERCISES

164. I. a. 1. Propter tempestātēs nūllae stellae in caelō vidēri poterant. 2. Vēla alba magnārum nāvium in marī vīsa erant. 3. Nōn hostīs, sed angustīās itineris et magnitudinem silvārum veritī sumus. 4. Putāmus exercitū victō imperātōrem fortiter pugnāntem mortuum esse. 5. Caesar, ex castrīs profectus, hostēs fugientēs sequēbātur atque rē frūmentāriā prohibēre cōnābātur. 6. Linguae Rōmānae multa verba fuērunt brevīa.

b. 1. Caesar hostium timōre lēgātum ab exercitū abesse nōn patiēbātur. 2. Dux Rōmānus, itinere ante lūcem factō, iūxtā angustīās castra posuit. 3. Corporum magnitudinem barbarōrum mirābāmur. 4. Homīnēs magnā fortitudīne mortem nōn saepe verentur.

II. a. 1. Caesar, having set out with a few legions, endeavored to follow the retreating (fleeing) enemy through the narrow pass. 2. We wonder at the many words in the languages of men. 3. The consul will not suffer his (personal) enemy to remain in the city a single day. 4. At night sailors often steer (*use form of regō*) their ships by the stars in the sky.

b. 1. Many ships with their white sails were destroyed by the violence of the storm. 2. Do you not think that the swords of the barbarians were of great size? 3. They placed the dying soldier under a tree near the water. 4. The light of day is pleasing to all men.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Do you think that the enemy will pitch camp in the narrow pass? 2. Shall we not follow, soldiers, in a few hours? 3. On account of the storm the envoys did not set out, did they?

REVIEW OF LESSONS XXX-XXXVII

165. Decline *spēs, diēs, cultus, cornū, and domus*. Also decline the Latin for *right hand, republic, and large army*.

166. Give the synopsis in the indicative, *third person singular*, active and passive, of the Latin for *rule*; in the *second person plural* of the Latin for *say*; in the *first person plural* of the Latin for *lead*. Give infinitives and participles, with meanings, of the Latin for *seek, send, and write*. Give the synopsis in the *first person singular* indicative, active and passive, of the Latin for *take*. Give the infinitives and participles of verbs meaning *conquer* and *begin*.

167. What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis in the indicative, *third person singular*, of the Latin for *admire*; in the *first person plural* of the Latin for *suffer*; in the *third person plural* of the Latin for *follow*, and in the *second person plural* of the Latin for *fear*. Give infinitives and participles, with meaning, of the Latin words for *try, die, and set out*.

168. Conjugate the present indicative, active and passive, of *regō* and *capiō*; the future indicative, active

and passive, of *incipiō* and *dūcō* ; the perfect indicative of *mīror*, and the past perfect indicative of *sequor*.

169. Explain the following English words, tracing them back, and giving the meaning of the Latin words from which they are derived, with the force of the prefix, if there is a prefix: deponent, biennial, centennial, cornucopia, dexterity, reënaet, artificial, deciduous, incision, incipient, participle, currency, indict, verdict, decadent, diary, subdivision, introductory, celestial, efficiency, affect, artifice, confectionery, defective, refuge, imperious, imperialism, frustrate, manual, manufacture, emancipate, elucidate, translucent, miracle, mortgage, immortality, remittance, submit, intermittent, nocturne, equinoctial, disparity, compassion, competitive, decompose, transpose, salvage, realistic, consecutive, circumscribe, conscription, manuscript, sinister, tempestuous, revelation, contemporary, constellation, verbose (suffix?), deter, despair, reverence, evict, invincible, revive.

170. Review orally the Latin for each of the following words, giving the nominative, genitive, and gender of nouns, all nominative forms of adjectives, and the principal parts of verbs: alive, stand in awe of, word, conquer, sail, safe, storm, equal, star, general, follow, flee, set out, finish, think, put to death, put, accomplish, death, do, die, begin, wonder at, take, remain, cut down, greatness, fall, tongue, try, art, sky, act, pitch camp, render thanks, narrow pass, year, cultivate, hundred, colony, horn, culture, ten, inhabit, right, why, day, run, house, say, army, divide, expect,

lead, good faith, in vain, children, hour, send, legion, woman, hand, seek, night, demand, few, region, battle, rule, thing, straight, state, safety, left, write, hope, frighten, time.

171. 1. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of each of the following words: *scribō*, *petō*, *dividō*, *dīcō*, *currō*, *tempus*, *manus*, *frustrā*, *annus*, *verbum*, *vēlum*, *sequor*, *putō*, *pōnō*, *patior*, *mors*, *lūx*, *vincō*, *imperātor*, *fugiō*, *faciō*, *capiō*, *cadō*, *agō*.

2. Give the English for the following Latin words, and name at least one derivative from each, if there are derivatives: *tempus*, *spēs*, *sinister*, *paucī*, *manus*, *frustrā*, *fidēs*, *diēs*, *centum*, *annus*, *scribō*, *regō*, *petō*, *mittō*, *dūcō*, *dīcō*, *currō*, *colō*, *vīvus*, *vincō*, *pār*, *fugiō*, *perficiō*, *incipiō*, *caedō*, *cadō*, *agō*, *vereor*, *verbum*, *vēlum*, *sequor*, *proficīscor*, *putō*, *pōnō*, *patior*, *morior*, *mīror*, *lūx*, *lingua*, *caelum*.

172. Classify as parts of speech, and define the following English words, giving the Latin words from which they are derived: *revere*, *prosper*, *verbally*, *reveal*, *subscribe*, *concise*, *salvation*, *amputate*, *repose*, *promissory*, *admire*, *fugitive*, *fact*, *ductile*, *contradict*, *captive*, *decimal*, *per cent*, *annuity*, *expose*.

173. Discussion of difficult English words, apparently derived from Latin words in Lessons XXX–XXXVII, met by pupils in their school work or outside reading, and noted down at the time.

174. What forms are exceptions to the general rule that deponent verbs are passive in form and active in

meaning? What is the rule for *Relations of Time? Extent of Space? Possessive Genitive? Predicate Genitive? Subject Accusative?* Give three examples of the *Ablative Absolute*, using: (1) perfect passive participle; (2) present active participle; and (3) two nouns or a noun and an adjective. What classes of verbs are commonly used with infinitive and subject accusative?

LESSON XXXVIII

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.
ABLATIVE OF PRICE

175. Learn the declension of *ego, I, tū, you, and suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves*, Paradigms, p. 287. Note that *suī* is a reflexive, that is, that it refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands (direct reflexive), or, standing in a subordinate clause, refers to the subject of the leading verb (indirect reflexive).

The nominative of the personal pronouns need not be used, except for emphasis, contrast, or clearness.

With personal and relative pronouns, *cum, with*, is an enclitic; thus, *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbiscum, vōbiscum, quōcum, quācum, quibuscum*.

176. The pronominal adjectives are *meus, -a, -um, my; tuus, -a, -um, your* (of one person); *noster, -tra, -trum, our; vester, -tra, -trum, your* (of more than one person); and *suus, -a, -um, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)*. These words are strictly adjectives of the first and second declensions, and are declined as such. The vocative singular, masculine, of

meus is **mī**. **Suus** is almost exclusively reflexive; as, **Māter liberōs suōs amat**. *The mother loves her (own) children.*

177. Study the rule for *Ablative of Price*, Rules of Syntax, 41, p. 323.

Examples :

Servum mille dēnāriis ēmit. *He bought a slave for a thousand denarii.*

Aedēs magnō pretiō vēndidit. *He sold the house at a high price.*

178.

VOCABULARY

aedēs, -is, f., *temple* (in the sing.), *house* (in the pl.).

aedificium, -ī, n. (**aedēs**, **faciō**), *building*.

āēr, **āeris**, m., *air*.

avis, -is, f., *bird*.

dēnārius, -ī, m. (**dēnī**, **decem**), *denarius* (about 17 cents).

emō, -ere, **ēmī**, **ēptum**, *take* (with compounds), *take* (when paid for), hence, *buy*.

iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactum**, *throw*.

lūna, -ae, f. (**lūx**), *moon*.

migrō, **ī**, *move from one place to another*, *migrate*.

mille, indecl., *thousand*; **mīlia**,

-ium (noun), n. pl., *thousands*.

occāsus, -ūs, m. (**ob**, **cadō**), *setting*.

orior, **oriri**, **ortus sum**, *arise*; hence, *spring from*, *begin*.

ortus, -ūs, m. (**orior**), *rising*.

pretium, -ī, n., *price*.

rārus, -a, -um, *thin*, *scattered*, *rare*.

sāl, **salis**, m., *salt*.

sōl, **sōlis**, m., *sun*.

ūrō, **ūrere**, **ussī**, **ustum**, *burn*.

vēndō, -ere, **vēndidī**, **vēnditum**, *sell*.

volō, **ī**, *fly*.

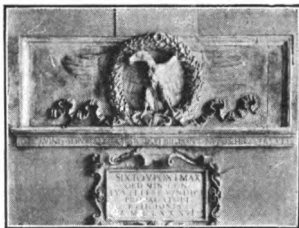
vōx, **vōcis**, f., *voice*; *theme*, *utterance*, *word*.

179. English Derivatives. Record the Latin words, as usual. Among the words to be recorded include **ego** and **suī**. What is meant by the English word *nostrum*?

LESSON XXXIX

EXERCISES

180. I. a. 1. Tua vōx et clāra et grāta mihi est. 2. Paucīs diēbus vōs ortum occāsumque sōlis nō bīscum vidēbitis. 3. Nōs aedificia magnō cum numerō equōrum decem mīlibus dēnariōrum ēmimus. 4. Nōne tū putās in nostrā patriā aquilam esse rāram avem? 5. Patre mortuō, colōnus aedēs agrōsque omnēs suōs parvō pretiō vēdidit atque ex locō migrāvit. 6. Nōs lūnam ex mari oriī vidēbāmus.



AQUILA

b. 1. Sāl frūmentumque vōbīs dēfuisse dīcuntur. 2. Malī puerī librōs suōs in flammās iactōs ussērunt. 3. Cūr, mī fili, discipulī suum magistrum nōn amant? 4. Nostrīs temporibus et avēs et hominēs per āera¹ volant.

II. a. 1. Within a few days many thousand (thousands of) birds will migrate to other lands. 2. Has it been told you that the voice of the people is the voice of the gods? 3. I will sell the old house to you at a low (small) price. 4. My friend bought me (some) rare books for ten denarii.

b. 1. In times of war and of peace men fly in the air. 2. After a day of toil we admired a beautiful sunset (setting of the sun), and the rising of the moon.

¹ **Āera** is the normal form for the accusative, as used by Cicero.

3. Many buildings in the city being burned (having been burned) by the enemy, the citizens in fear threw themselves from the wall. 4. There is much salt in the water of the sea.

III. *Answer orally in Latin the following questions:*

1. Nōne tū, mī fili, per āera volāre cōnābāre?
2. Num vōs, cīvēs, nostrīs militibus victīs, domī manēbitis?
3. Lūnamne vōs, puerī, ex marī vidistis?

LESSON XL

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Particles for Asking Questions : Nōne, Num, -ne.

181. The demonstrative pronouns point out an object as *here* or *there*, or as *previously mentioned*. They are :

hic, *this* (where I am ; or this of mine).

iste, *that* (where you are ; or that of yours).

ille, *that* (something distinct from the speaker ; sometimes in the sense of the well-known, or famous).

is, *that* (weaker than **ille**).

idem, *the same*.

Hic is called the demonstrative of the *first person*, **iste**, of the *second person*, and **ille** of the *third person*. **Ille . . . hic**, *the former . . . the latter*.

Is has three uses: (1) a demonstrative of the third person, a weak **ille**; (2) a personal pronoun of the third person, *he, she, it*; and (3) the *antecedent* of the *relative*.

182. The intensive pronoun in Latin is *ipse*. It corresponds to the English *myself, yourself, himself*, etc., in I *myself*, you *yourself*, he *himself*, etc.

183. Learn the declension of *hic, ille, is, iste, idem* (is and suffix **-dem**), and *ipse*, Paradigms, pp. 288, 289.

184. Review the rule for **-ne, nōne, and num**, Rules of Syntax, 42, p. 289.

185.

VOCABULARY

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsūm (dē, fēndō, *strike*),
strike down; hence, defend.

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum,
bear, carry on, wage (war),
manage; rēs gestae, ex-
ploits.

iniūria, -ae, f. (in, not, iūs),
injustice, wrong, injury.

iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussum,
order, bid (with infin. and
sub. acc.).

impetus, -ūs, m. (in, petō),
charge, attack, rush.

iūdex, iūdicis, m. (iūs, dicō),
judge.

iūrō, 1 (iūs), take oath, swear.

iūs, iūris, n., right, justice,
(human) law.

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,
n. (iūrandum the neuter
of iūrandus, -a -um),
oath.

iūstus, -a, -um (iūs), right,
fair, just.

iūstitia, -ae, f. (iūstus), jus-
tice, fairness.

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum,
cover; hence, conceal.

tēctum, -ī, n. (tegō), roof,
house.

tumultus, -ūs, m. (tumeō,
swell), confusion, uprising,
tumult.

valeō, -ēre, valui, be strong,
have power.

validus, -a, -um (valeō),
strong, robust.

186. English Derivatives. Record the Latin words of the Vocabulary, including *idem*, with derivatives. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences.

LESSON XLI

EXERCISES

187. I. a. 1. Hic iūdex, homō validus et bonus, ab iniuriā civīs iustōs dēfendet. 2. Galli, iūre iūrandō inter sē datō, sociōs suōs contrā Rōmānōs bellum gerere iussērunt. 3. Num tū putās in istā urbe tumultum ortūrum esse? 4. Nōne ille rēx et iūstitiā et prūdentiā semper valuit? 5. Hostēs arboribus silvæ tēcti ipsi in nostrōs (*our men*) impetum ācritē fēcērunt. 6. Eōdem tempore Caesar, milite fortī ad sē vocātō, virtūtem eius laudāvit.

b. 1. Nōne vōs, civēs, iūrābitis ac ista tēcta dēfendētis? 2. Migrābuntne in aliās terrās hōc annō illae avēs? 3. Galli iūs iūrandum inter sē dant atque socii eōrum idem faciunt.

II. a. 1. My father, will you not tell us stories about the exploits of Caesar himself and the wrongs of the Gauls? 2. Your general (that general of yours) bids you (*plural*) be strong and of good courage, and defend your homes (roofs). 3. This upright (just) judge (of ours) is loved by all his (fellow) citizens on account of his fairness and wisdom.

b. 1. Will the foot soldiers, screened (covered) by the same cavalry, make an attack upon our (men)? 2. All the allies did not take (*use form of dō*) that (well-known) oath, did they? 3. A great tumult having arisen in the town, the powerful (strong) citizens take an oath (swear) among themselves against the Roman people.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Will you, citizens, not defend this city (of ours)? 2. Shall we not wage a just war, friends? 3. You did not do the same thing, did you, boys?

LESSON XLII

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

188. Learn the declension of the relative pronoun *quī*, Paradigms, p. 289. Note that with personal and relative pronouns *cum*, *with*, is an enclitic (§ 175, end).

189. Study the rule for *Relative Pronouns*, Rules of Syntax, 43, p. 323.

Examples :

Ego, quī haec scripsī, adsum. I, who wrote these things, am present.

Vōs, quī eōs vidēbātis, domī erātis. You, who saw those (men), were at home.

Puerī, quōs misistī, meī discipulī sunt. The boys whom you sent are my pupils.

190.

VOCABULARY

carmen, -inis, n. (*canō*, *canere*, *cecini*, *sing*), *song*, *poem*.

cēdō, -ere, *cessī*, *cessum*, *go*, *go away*, *yield*, *retreat*.

cēlō, 1, *hide*, *conceal*.

colligo, -ere, -legī, -lēctum (*con*, *lego*), *collect*.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *withdraw*, *go away*.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic*, *of* or *pertaining to Gaul*.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum , <i>gather, choose, read.</i>	praeda, -ae, f. , <i>plunder, booty, prey.</i>
memor, memoris , <i>mindful.</i>	rapīō, rapere, rapuī, raptum , <i>snatch, seize, carry off.</i>
memoria, -ae, f. (memor), <i>memory, remembrance.</i>	rapāx, -ācis (rapīō) , <i>greedy of plunder, rapacious.</i>
nōbilis, -e (root nō- , as in nōscō , <i>know</i>), <i>of high birth, famous, noble.</i>	revertōr, -vertī (re, vertō , <i>turn</i>), <i>turn back, return (deponent, except in the perf., which is revertī).</i>
nūntiō, 1 (nūntius) , <i>announce, report.</i>	signum, -i, n. , <i>mark, sign, (military) standard.</i>
poēta, -ae, m., poet.	

191. English Derivatives. Record the words in this lesson. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. Whenever a word from a previous Vocabulary occurs in the Latin or English sentences, or later in any author read, the pupils should be held strictly responsible for derivatives from that word. This serves as an effective means of reviewing English derivatives.

LESSON XLIII

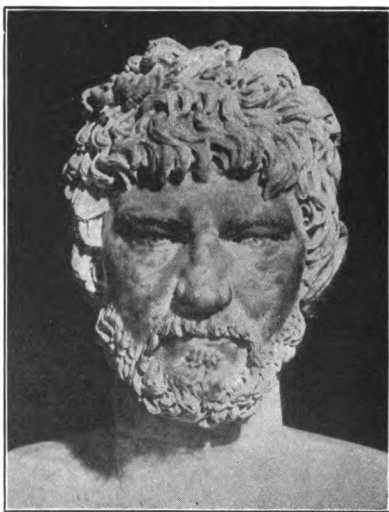
EXERCISES

192. I. a. 1. *Memoriā semper eōs tenēbimus, quī prō patriā mortuī sunt.* 2. *Ille poēta nōbilis, cuius carmina saepe lēgistī, paucīs diēbus in urbem revertētur.* 3. *Hostēs, quōrum signa nostrī cēperant, praedā raptā, ex oppidō discessērunt.* 4. *Haec, quae mercātor periculi memor dixit, Caesarī nūntiābantur.* 5. *Barbarī rapācēs, quī sēcum magnam praedam portābant, equitibus nostrī exercitūs vīsīs, celeriter cessērunt.*

b. 1. Caesar librōs scripsit quibus ipse nōmen Bellum Gallicum dedit. 2. Militēs quibuscum lēgātus iter faciēbat ante noctem ad ea loca revertērunt quae per multōs diēs occupāverant. 3. Equitēs quī auxiliō exercitui fuerant ab eā parte hostium occīsī sunt quae in angustīs sēsē cēlāverat.

II. a. 1. The memory of that poet who has written songs of love and war will always be dear to the people (men) of our native land.

2. Have you, boys, who have read with me Caesar's Gallic War, recounted (*use form of nārrō*)¹ the great battle to your fathers? 3. The barbarians, who had concealed much booty in the woods, collecting their forces (their forces having been collected) quickly withdrew to their homes (*sēdēs*) in the mountains.



BARBARUS
A Portrait Bust

b. 1. The general, a man of high birth, mindful of the safety of his army, will pitch his camp on the high

¹ *dē* + ablative.

ground (place), which is close by the river. 2. Those greedy merchants, who always bought at a low (small) price and sold at a high price, were not popular with (pleasing to) the colonists. 3. The traders often used to report to the Gauls that which was not true.

III. *Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:* 1. Shall we, who have conquered the enemy, withdraw? 2. Have you not read these poems, pupils? 3. The enemy, who did not carry off much spoil, will not return, will they?

LESSON XLIV

INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

193. Interrogative Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives. The most important are **quis**, *who?* (substantive), and **quī**, *what? what kind of?* (adjective). Learn the declension of **quis**, *who?* Paradigms, p. 290. Note that the plural, which is rarely used, follows the declension of the relative pronoun.

Quī, *what? what kind of?* (adjective) is declined precisely like the relative pronoun, *i.e.* **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, genitive, **cuius**, etc.

Quis, when limiting words denoting persons, is sometimes an adjective. In such cases, however, **quis homo** = *what man?* while **quī homo** = *what sort of man?*

Quis and **quī** may be strengthened by **-nam**; thus, **quisnam**, *who, pray?* **quidnam**, *what, pray?*

194. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives. These have the general force of *some one, something, any one, anything, some, any*. The most common are :

Pronouns	Adjectives
quis, quid (often used with <i>sī, if, and nē, lest, nisi, unless, and num, whether</i>), <i>one, anything</i> .	quī, quae or qua, quod, any.
aliquis, aliquid.	aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, some (one), some (thing).
quisquam, quidquam (<i>quicquam</i>), <i>any one, anything</i> .	
quisque, quidque.	quisque, quaeque, quodque, each.
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam.	quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain.

Note that in the indefinite pronouns only the pronominal part is declined. Thus the genitive singular is *alicuius, cuiusque, cuiusdam*, etc.

Quīdam has in the accusative singular *quendam, quandam*, and in the genitive plural *quōrundam, quārundam*, the *m* being changed to *n* before *d*.

195.

VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, n., arms, implements.	genitum, bring forth, bear), race, sort, kind.
cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, coāctum (con, agō), collect, compel.	ibi, adv., there, in that place.
colloquium, -ī, n. (con, loquor), conference.	loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk.
frūctus, -ūs, m. (root frū-, as in frūmentum), fruit.	mōs, mōris, m., custom, habit.
genus, generis, n. (root gen-, as in gignō, -ere, genuī,	neque (nec), and not, neither, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.
	pīlum, -ī, n., javelin, spear.

quantus , -a, -um, interr. and rel. adj., <i>how great?</i> <i>as great</i> (correlative with tantus).	tam , adv., <i>so</i> . tantus , -a, -um, <i>so great, so</i> <i>much</i> (correlative with quantus).
relinquō , -ere, reliquī, relic- tum (re, linquō, <i>leave</i>), <i>leave behind</i> .	temere , adv., <i>rashly</i> . temeritās , -tātis, f. (temere), <i>rashness</i> .
reliquus , -a, -um (relinquō), <i>remaining, rest of</i> .	videor , -ēri, visus sum (<i>be</i> <i>seen</i>), hence, <i>seem, appear</i> .
senātus , -ūs, m. (senex), <i>senate</i> .	

196. English Derivatives. Record the words of the Vocabulary with their English derivatives. Drills, tests, discussions, etc.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. When a Latin word occurs in the Vocabularies or in the authors read, the root of which has been given in a previous Vocabulary, though in a different word, as, for example, *rēgina*, *rēgnum*, *rēx*, *regō*, *regiō*, *rēgula*, care should be taken that the pupils record the new word in the Index Book in the proper place, but refer to the page in the Derivative Notebook on which the first word with the same root was recorded.

LESSON XLV

EXERCISES

197. I. a. 1. Quis senātum convocāvit atque cīvēs arma temere capere coēgit? **2.** Quod genus hominum est hoc, quod tantā temeritāte esse vidētur? **3.** Quanta est ista urbs quam reliqua manus peditum tam fortiter dēfendit? **4.** Multō fructū ā quōque

nostrum ibi in agris relictō, omnēs ad urbem properāvimus. 5. Colloquiō ā duce hostium dē pāce petītō, Caesar ad eum cum paucis militibus decimae legiōnis lēgātum quendam mīsit.

b. 1. Neque pīla neque quicquam armōrum praesidiō in oppidō relictum erat. 2. Ille magister nōbis-



HOUSE OF THE TRAGIC POET

At Pompeii

cum dē vitā carminibusque poētae cuiusdam clārī loquēbātur. 3. Num quisquam vestrum, hominēs, quī mātrum vestrārum tantī amōris memorēs estis, dē mōribus aliārum mulierum ācriter loquētur?

II. a. 1. Certain customs of men have always seemed strange (new) to us. 2. The soldiers, who had withdrawn from the town, left behind for the enemy neither

any javelins nor any other kind of (anything of other) arms. 3. What classes (sorts) of men have been sent to the conference by the senate and the Roman people? 4. Who will speak with the envoys of the enemy concerning peace and war?

b. 1. Citizens, will you not render thanks to each of the gods for the fruits of so great a victory? 2. With how great labor were those slaves of yours compelled to build (make) the bridge in that place! 3. Why (on account of what thing) did the consul so rashly order a Roman citizen to leave the city?

III. *Answer orally in Latin the following questions:*

1. Quis sēcum loquitur? 2. Aderitne quisque vestrum?
3. Quod genus hominum est hoc?

REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVIII-XLV

198. Name the personal pronouns, with their meanings. Decline the Latin for *I, of himself, you*. What do you mean by a *reflexive pronoun*? What are the *pronominal adjectives*? Give their meanings. Decline the Latin for *your* (of one person), *our*, and *his* (own). What is the vocative singular of *meus*?

What are *demonstrative* pronouns? Name them, and distinguish their uses and meanings. Decline the Latin for *this* (of mine), *that* (of yours), and *same*. What are the three uses of *is*? What is the *intensive* pronoun? What is its meaning? Decline it.

199. Decline the *relative* pronoun. How do you say in Latin *with whom* (singular and plural)? Give the Latin for *with me*, *with you* (singular), *with himself*,

with us, with you (plural). What Latin particles are used in asking questions? Distinguish their use.

Name the principal *interrogative* pronouns and pronominal adjectives. Give their meanings and decline them. Name the most common *indefinite* pronouns and adjectives, and give their meanings. Decline the Latin for *any one, a certain, and each*.

What is the rule for *Ablative of Price*? for the use of *Relative Pronouns*? Explain the derivation of the words *antecedent, participle, indefinite, egotism*.

200. Review orally the Latin for each of the following words, giving the nominative, genitive, and gender of nouns, all nominative forms of adjectives, and the principal parts of verbs: strong, voice, tumult, fly, sell, buy, cover, burn, law, judge, justice, attack, sun, salt, rare, order, injury, price, rise, wage, thousand, migrate, defend, building, moon, air, throw, sing, song, return, snatch, booty, go away (yield), gather (read), memory, poet, noble, announce, how great, leave, senate, speak, javelin, conceal, neither . . . nor, custom, seem, rashly, arms, there, kind, fruit, conference, compel.

201. Give the English of the following words: carmen, videor, aedēs, valeō, cēdō, temeritās, āēr, tēctum, legō, tantus, quantus, avis, iūs iūrāndum, memor, relinquō, tam, senātus, emō, iaciō, praeda, lūna, gerō, dēfendō, capiō, revertor, signum, mōs, loquor, genus, fructus, cōgō, arma, orior, pretium, rārus, ūrō, sōl, vēndō, volō, tumultus, rapāx. Name at least one English derivative from each, if there are derivatives.

202. Explain the following English words, tracing them back, and giving the meaning of the Latin words from which they are derived, with the force of the prefix, if there is a prefix: suicidal, egotistical, temerity, quantitative, cantata, derelict, delinquency, versatility, divert, circumlocution, fructify, cogent, eligibility, exceed, intercede, precedent, procession, secession, predatory, invalid, volatile, tumultuous, venal, detective, protection, combustion, judiciary, solstice, salad, salary, impetuosity, congestion, digest, appreciate, orient, millennium, migratory, immigration, lunar, abject, dejected, eject, inject, interjection, objective, project, reject, subject, exempt, redeem, aviation, aviary, aëroplane, fender, offensive, resign.

203. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of each of the following words: relinquo (linquo), revertor (verto), rapio, mors, praeda, lego, loquor, genus, fructus, cedo, carmen (cano), valeo, volo, tumultus (tumeo), tego, vendo, ego, uror, sol, sal, pretium, ius, geror, defendo (fendo), iacio, emo, avis, aedēs.

204. Classify as parts of speech, and define the following English words, giving the Latin words from which they are derived: prevail, timid, saline, depreciate, emigration, conjecture, integument, belligerent, relic, rapacious, illegible, recessional.

205. Discussion of difficult English words, apparently derived from Latin words in Lessons XXXVIII-XLV, met by pupils in their school work or outside reading. READING LESSON, THE BAD BOY, page 215.

LESSON XLVI

COMPARISON

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs. Declension of the Comparative. Ablative of Comparison, when *Quam*, *Than*, is Omitted.

206. There are three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative. The comparative is regularly formed by adding *-ior* (neuter *-ius*), and the superlative by adding *-issimus* (*-a*, *-um*), to the stem of the positive (deprived of its final vowel, if it ends in a vowel); as,

cārus	cārīor	cārīssimus
fortis	fortior	fortīssimus
fēlix	fēlicior	fēlicīssimus
potēns	potentior	potentīssimus

Compare *altus*, *brevis*, *certus*, *grātus*, *gravis*, *lātus*, *nōbilis*, *novus*, *iūstus*, *rārus*.

207. Learn the declension of *cārīor*, Paradigms, p. 281. All comparatives are declined like *cārīor*, and all superlatives like *bonus*. The comparative is often translated by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by *very*; as,

Bellum est longius. *The war is rather long.*

Bellum est longissimum. *The war is very long.*

208. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. Adverbs are as a rule derived from adjectives, and depend upon them for their comparison.

The positive of adverbs is regularly formed from the positive of adjectives of the first and second declensions by changing the ending *-ī* of the genitive singular (masculine or neuter) to *-ē*, and from the positive of adjectives of the third declension by dropping the ending *-is* of the genitive singular, and adding *-iter* (or *-er* for adjectives in *-ns*, and *-ter* in a few cases. See § 43 and § 104).

The comparative of all adverbs regularly consists of the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed by changing the *-ī* of the genitive singular of the superlative of the adjective to *-ē*; thus,

(cārus)	cārē	cārius	cārissimē
(fortis)	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
(vēlōx)	vēlōciter	vēlōcius	vēlōcissimē

Form adverbs from the adjectives mentioned in § 206, and compare them.

209. Study the rule for the *Ablative of Comparison* when *quam*, *than*, is omitted, Rules of Syntax, 44, p. 323.

Examples:

Discipulus altior magistrō est. *The pupil is taller than his teacher.*

Hic fructus est dulcior melle. *This fruit is sweeter than honey.*

Patria mihi vitā cārior est. *My country is dearer to me than life.*

210.

VOCABULARY

altitudō , -dinis, f. (<i>altus</i>), <i>height, depth.</i>	<i>for by calling out, hence, examine, explore.</i>
antiquus , -a, -um (<i>ante</i>), <i>ancient.</i>	finitimus , -a, -um (<i>finis</i>), <i>neighboring.</i>
audāx , -ācis (<i>audeō, dare</i>), <i>bold, daring.</i>	finitimus , -ī, m., <i>neighbor.</i>
aut , or; aut . . . aut , <i>either</i> . . . or.	Germānus , -a, -um, <i>German.</i>
Belgae , -ārum, m. pl., <i>the</i> <i>Belgians.</i>	Germānus , -ī, m., <i>a German.</i>
circumdō , -are, -dedī, -da- tum (<i>circum, dō</i>), <i>put</i> <i>around, surround.</i>	mel , <i>mellis</i> , n., <i>honey, sweet-</i> <i>ness.</i>
dulcis , -e, <i>sweet.</i>	multitudō , -dinis, f. (<i>multus</i>), <i>great number, multitude.</i>
explōrātor , -tōris, m. (<i>ex-</i> <i>plōrō</i>), <i>scout.</i>	pellō , -ere, <i>pepulī, pulsum</i> , <i>strike, beat, drive.</i>
explōrō , 1 (<i>ex, plōrō, 1, cry</i> <i>out, cry aloud</i>), <i>lit., search</i>	quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, <i>quaesitum, search, seek,</i> <i>ask, inquire.</i>
	quam , <i>than; with the superl.,</i> <i>as . . . as possible.</i>
	ventus , -ī, m., <i>wind.</i>

211. English Derivatives. Record the words of the Vocabulary, as in previous lessons. Oral and written tests, word drills, discussions, oral and written sentences containing derivatives. Dictation exercises.¹

¹ Ten or fifteen English words are read to the pupils, each word pronounced twice. The pupils should write down all the words, with the parts of speech, as dictated, and then spend about ten minutes in writing the definitions together with the Latin words, with meanings, from which the English words are derived. It is well to give a formal dictation exercise of this sort once each week, and to supplement the formal exercise with informal ones, given frequently, when the pupils simply write down the words as dictated, — always with the parts of speech, — and give definitions and the Latin words orally.

LESSON XLVII

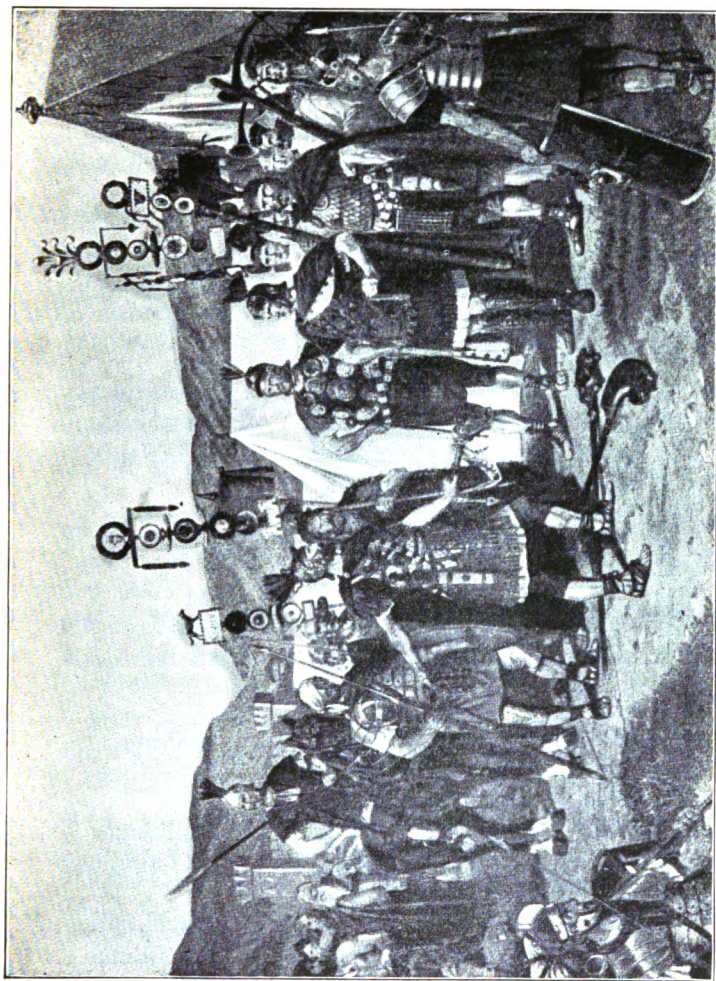
EXERCISES

212. I. a. 1. Quid est dulcius melle? 2. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 3. Quid explōrātōrēs sibi quaerēbant? Explōrātōrēs breviōra itinera quaerēbant. 4. Antiquis temporibus apud barbarōs Germānī erant audācissimī atque finitimōs omnēs multitudine hominum superāvērunt. 5. Flūmien neque magnā altitudine neque ad gravissimās nāvis idōneum erat.

b. 1. Castris mūrō altissimō circumdatīs, lēgātus loca finitima quam lātissimē explōrāre cōnābatur. 2. Nāvēs vėlōcissimae ad terram vī ventōrum pellēbantur. 3. Equī vėlōcius quam hominēs currunt. 4. Tantā praedā in urbe relictā, nihil aut imperātōrī aut militibus dēfuit.

II. a. 1. What is more pleasing to us than sweet honey? 2. Caesar will send very bold scouts into the territory of the Belgians, who are braver than the (other) Gauls. 3. We will either surround the town with safer walls, or withdraw to the mountains. 4. Rome is more ancient than many other cities.

b. 1. The Germans with a great number of infantry drove the Roman cavalry from the higher places into a river of great depth. 2. The scouts, having explored the neighboring places as widely as possible, asked (from) the messengers about the number of Germans who were on this side of the river. 3. In our country there are often very high winds.



SCENE IN A ROMAN CAMP

LESSON XLVIII

COMPARISON (*Continued*)

Comparison of Adjectives in **-er**, and of Six Adjectives in **-lis**. Comparison of the Corresponding Adverbs. Ablative of Measure of Difference.

213. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative masculine singular of the positive (making two *r*'s). The comparative is regular. Thus:

asper , <i>rough</i>	asperior	asperimus
pulcher , <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrior	pulcherrimus
acer , <i>sharp</i>	acrior	acerrimus

Compare **liber**, **miser**, **celer**.

Notice **mātūrus**, **mātūrior**, **mātūrrimus** or **mātūris-simus**.

214. The following six adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the stem minus the stem vowel (making two *l*'s):

facilis (faciō), <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
difficilis (dis , facilis), <i>difficult</i>	difficilior	difficillimus
similis , <i>like</i>	similior	simillimus
dissimilis (dis , similis), <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis , <i>graceful</i>	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis (humus), <i>low</i> , <i>humble</i> , <i>obscure</i>	humilior	humillimus

215. The rule for the formation and comparison of adverbs, as given in § 208, applies in the case of the adjectives in §§ 213, 214, except **facilis** and **difficilis**, which form the positive of the adverb from the neuter accusative singular of the adjective; thus,

facile , <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
difficile , ¹ <i>with difficulty</i>	difficilius	difficillimē

Form adverbs from **pulcher**, **ācer**, **liber**, **miser**, and **celer**, and compare them.

216. Study the rule for *Ablative of Measure of Difference*, Rules of Syntax, 45, p. 323.

Examples:

Arbor decem pedibus altior est quam mūrus. *The tree is ten feet higher (higher by ten feet) than the wall.*

Mārcus pede altior est frātre parvō. *Marcus is a foot taller (taller by a foot) than his little brother.*

Paulō post. *Afterwards by a little, i.e. a little afterwards.*



BELLEROPHON WITH THE WINGED HORSE

¹ But **difficulter** is the more usual form.

217.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēi, f. (*ācer*), *lit., edge, then, line of battle.*

cadāver, -veris, n. (*cadō*), *dead body, corpse.*

collis, -is, m., *hill.*

cōspiciō, -ere, cōspexi, cōspectum (*con, speciō, see*), *catch sight of, behold, see.*

humus, -i, f., *the ground, soil; humi, loc., on the ground.*

instruō, -ere, instrūxi, instrūctum (*in, struō, arrange*), *arrange in order, draw up.*

iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, lie, be situated.

lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*

lūdus, -i, m., *play, game.*

medius, -a, -um, *middle, middle of.*

Nervii, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Nervii.*

paulum, paulō, adv., *a little.*

pendeō, -ēre, pependi, hang, be suspended.

rāmus, -i, m., *branch.*

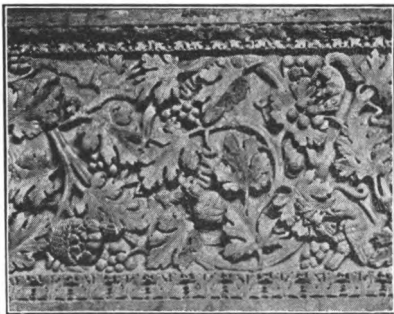
trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractum, *draw, drag.*

vēstīgium, -i, n., *footprint, track, trace.*

vīnum, -i, n., *wine.*

volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtum, roll, roll up, roll along.

Vergilius, -i, m., *Vergil (also spelled Virgil).*



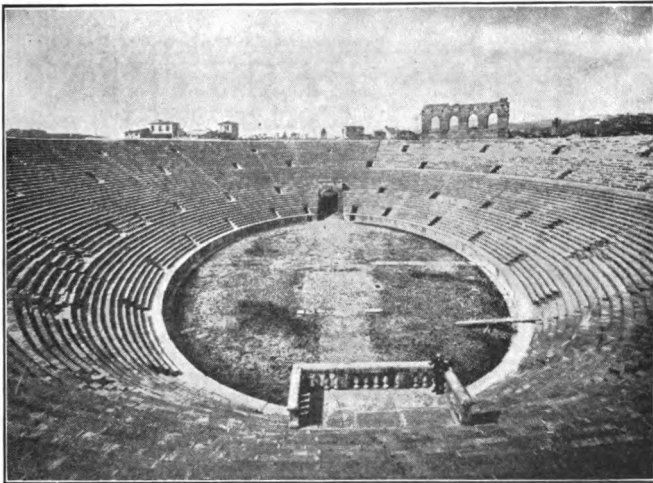
GRAPE-VINE FRIEZE
Roman Architectural Detail

218. English Derivatives. Record the Latin words, including the six adjectives in **-lis** given in § 214, with their derivatives. Tests, word drills, discussions, oral and written sentences, dictation exercises.

LESSON XLIX

EXERCISES

219. I. a. 1. Lūdi puerōrum et puellārum sunt dissimillimī. 2. Hostēs, aciē in mediō colle instrūctā, paulō post multōs et asperrimōs lapidēs volvērunt.



ROMAN AMPHITHEATER AT VERONA

3. Fructus quī ā rāmīs parvārum arborum pendēbat mātūrrimus fuit. 4. Multa cadāvera eōrum quī in proeliō miserrimē occīsi erant iacēre humī cōspiciēbāmus. 5. Puer et soror, quōs amīcus noster in urbe domī reliquit, mōribus simillimī sunt. 6. Vēstīgia et

hominum et animālium in viā asperrimā ā nōbīs vidēbantur, quī in finīs Gallōrum iter faciēbāmus.

b. 1. Librōrum quōs lēgimus hic facillimus est, ille difficillimus. 2. Equī quōs militēs in castrīs hostium paucīs ante diēbus cēperant ā servīs difficillimē trahēbantur. 3. Nervī, quī magnō animō sunt, in suōs finēs nihil vīnī importārī (in, portō) patiuntur. 4. Omnium carminum quae in linguā Rōmānā scripta sunt pulcherrima sunt Vergilī.

II. a. 1. A few days later (afterwards) we saw much fruit on the ground in the fields which were situated close by a very rough road. 2. The enemy drew up their line of battle half way up (in the middle of) a hill, from which they easily rolled (down) large stones. 3. These boys and girls, who are much alike (very similar) in disposition and customs, love very different games.

b. 1. A little later the enemy, who had been defeated in battle, withdrew to the overhanging mountains (which overhung: *use form of impendeō*), leaving many dead bodies on the plain (bodies having been left). 2. We saw the tracks of many animals, which the slaves had dragged (along) with much difficulty (*superlative of difficile*). 3. All the Romans admired the poems of Vergil, which they considered (thought to be) the most beautiful in their language. 4. The Nervii, who were of great stature (bodies) and very brave, threw the wine which they had taken in the town into the river.

LESSON L

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of Plus.

220. Irregular Comparison. Four adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives :

exterus , ¹ <i>outward</i>	exterior , <i>outer or more outward</i>	extrêmus and extimus , <i>outermost, last</i>
inferus , <i>low</i>	inferior , <i>lower</i>	infimus and imus , <i>lowest, bottom of</i>
posterus , ² <i>following</i>	posterior , <i>later</i>	postrêmus , <i>latest, last</i> ; and postumus , <i>posthumous, latest</i>
superus , <i>above</i>	superior , <i>higher</i>	suprêmus , <i>highest</i> ; and summus , <i>top of, highest, greatest</i>

The following are irregular throughout :

bonus , <i>good</i>	melior , <i>better</i>	optimus , <i>best</i>
magnus , <i>great</i>	maior , <i>greater</i>	maximus , <i>greatest</i>
malus , <i>bad</i>	peior , <i>worse</i>	pessimus , <i>worst</i>

¹ **Exteri** means *strangers*, and **natiônês exterae**, *foreign nations*.

² **Posterî** means *descendants*.

multus, much	plūs, more	plūrimus, most
parvus, small	minor, smaller	minimus, smallest
senex, old	senior, maior	maximus nātū,¹
	nātū,¹ older	oldest
iuvenis, young	iūnior, minor	minimus nātū,¹
	nātū,¹ younger	youngest

¹ **Nātū** is the ablative of **nātus, birth**, and is used like an ablative of respect, meaning *by birth* or *in birth*.



JUVENIS

A Portrait Statue

221. Learn the declension of **plūs**, Paradigms, p. 281. Note that in the singular it is a neuter substantive, and has no masculine or feminine form.

222.

VOCABULARY

complūrēs , -a, pl. (con, plūs), <i>numerous, very many.</i>	rādix , rādicis , f., <i>root, foot-hill, spur (of mountains).</i>
iuvenis , -is, m., <i>a young man.</i>	rumpō , -ere, rūpī , ruptum , <i>break, burst, break asunder.</i>
Labiēnus , -ī, m., <i>Labienus.</i>	sānus , -a, -um, <i>sound, healthy.</i>
nāscor , nāscī , nātus sum , <i>be born.</i>	sānitās , -tātis, f. (sānus), <i>soundness of body, health.</i>
nātiō , -ōnis, f. (nāscor), <i>race, tribe, nation.</i>	solvō , -ere, solvi , solūtum , <i>loosen; nāvēs solvere, put to sea.</i>
nōnnūllī , -ae, -a (nōn , nūllus), <i>not a few, some.</i>	spīrō , 1, <i>breathe, blow.</i>
ōrdō , -dinis, m., <i>row, rank, order.</i>	testis , -is, m., <i>witness.</i>

223. English Derivatives. Record in the Notebooks the words in the Vocabulary and the irregular adjectives in § 220 which yield English derivatives. Tests, word drills, discussions, oral and written sentences, dictation.

LESSON LI

EXERCISES

224. I. a. 1. Testis paucis annis maior nātū quam iūdex erat. **2.** Rādicibus montis superiōribusque locis ā Labiēnō occupātis, complūrēs militum in ordinēs hostium pīla mīsērunt. **3.** Nōnnūllī quī nostris tem-

poribus nātī sunt pācem esse meliōrem quam bellum putant. 4. Minor hōrum puerōrum, cui est sāna mēns in sānō corpore, iūnior filiōrum Labiēnī est.



TESTUDO

Roman Battle Formation

5. Peditēs mūrō ruptō extrēmum oppidum Belgārum cēpērunt. 6. Plūrimīs exterīs nātiōnibus sānitās iuvenum maximō auxiliō tempore bellī fuit.

b. 1. Propter ventōs quī dē summīs montibus spirābant Caesar mediā nocte nāvēs solvit. 2. Hic puer

malus est, ille peior. 3. Nōnnūllī liberī optimōrum patrum mātrumque sunt pessimī. 4. Nihil est melius omnibus quam bonī mōrēs.

II. a. 1. Marcus was ten years younger than Caesar. 2. Labienus with the tenth legion, having occupied the top of the hill, burst through the ranks of the Gauls. 3. The children of very many who were born in ancient times were sound of body (of sound bodies). 4. The roots of not a few trees which we saw in our friend's garden were very large.



A ROMAN BATTERING RAM

b. 1. On account of the breezes (winds) which blew from the land the larger ships put to sea (were loosened) on the following day. 2. The health of children is always (the object of) the greatest care to all nations.

LESSON LII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON (*Concluded*)

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives *concluded*. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs.

225. Some comparatives and superlatives have no positive, but apparently are formed from adverbs or prepositions; as,

cis or citrā , <i>this side of</i>	citerior , <i>on this side, nearer, hither</i>	citimus , <i>hithermost</i>
dē , <i>down</i>	dēterior , <i>further down, worse, meaner</i>	dēterrimus , <i>worst</i>
intrā , <i>within</i>	interior , <i>inner, interior of</i>	intimus , <i>innermost</i>
prae or prō , <i>in front of</i>	prior , <i>former</i>	primus , <i>first</i>
prope , <i>near</i>	propior , <i>nearer</i>	proximus , <i>nearest, next</i>
(potis , ¹ <i>able</i>)	potior , <i>preferable</i>	potissimus , <i>most important</i>
ultrā , <i>beyond</i>	ulterior , <i>farther</i>	ultimus , <i>farthest</i>

Many adjectives do not admit of comparison by terminations, but form the comparative and superlative by prefixing **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*; as,

idōneus , <i>suitable</i>	magis idōneus , <i>more suitable</i>	maximē idōneus , <i>most suitable</i>
----------------------------------	---	--

226. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs.

bene , <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male , <i>badly, ill</i>	peius	pessimē
magnopere , <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
nōn multum , <i>parum, little</i>	minus	minimē

¹ **Potis** belongs to old Latin; later it occurs only in poetry.

diū , <i>long, for a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
mātūrē , <i>early, betimes</i>	mātūrius	mātūrrimē and mātūrissimē
nūper , <i>recently</i>		nūperrimē
	potius , <i>rather</i>	potissimum , <i>especially</i>
	prius , <i>previously, before</i>	primum , <i>first</i> ; primō , <i>at first</i>
saepe , <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē
secus , <i>otherwise</i>	sētius , <i>less</i>	

A number of adjectives of the first and second declensions form adverbs in **-ō** instead of **-ē**; as, **subitō**, *suddenly*; **continuō**, *immediately*; **falsō**, *falsely*; **rārō**, *rarely*, and a few others.

A few adjectives use the neuter accusative singular as the positive of the adverb; as, **multum**, *much*; **paulum**, *little*; **facile**, *easily*.

A few adjectives of the first and second declensions form the positive in **-iter**; as, **firmus**, **firmiter**, *firmly*; **largus**, **largiter**, *copiously*; **alius**, **aliter**, *otherwise*.

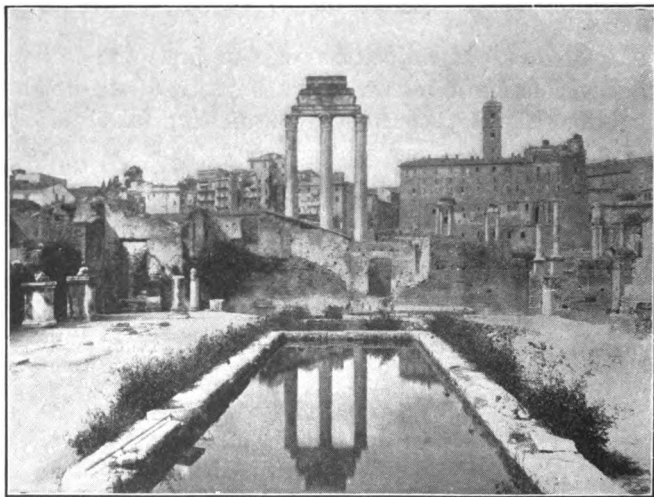
227.

VOCABULARY

aeternus , -a, -um (aevum), <i>everlasting, eternal</i> .	mūtō , 1 (moveō), <i>change</i> .
aevum , -ī, n., <i>long period of time, age, lifetime</i> .	nūbēs , -is, f., <i>cloud</i> .
doleō , -ēre, dolui , dolitūrus , <i>feel pain or grief, grieve</i> .	nūbō , -ere, nūpsi , nūptum (nūbēs), (<i>veil herself for the bridegroom</i>), <i>marry</i> (with the dat.).
lēx , lēgis , f., <i>law</i> .	obscurō , 1 (obscurus , -a, -um, <i>dark, shady, obscure</i>), <i>darken, hide, conceal</i> .
magnopere , adv. (magnus , opus), <i>greatly</i> .	

onus, oneris, n., <i>load, burden.</i>	<i>'lation of faith, perfidy,</i>
opus, operis, n., <i>work.</i>	<i>treachery.</i>
perfidia, -ae, f. (<i>per, fidēs,</i>	prōvincia, -ae, f., <i>province.</i>
perfidus, treacherous), <i>vio-</i>	uxor, -ōris, f., <i>wife.</i>

228. English Derivatives. Record any words of the Vocabulary, and of the irregular adjectives and adverbs in §§ 225 and 226, which yield English derivatives. Tests, word drills, discussions, oral and written sentences, dictation.



THE ROMAN FORUM
Temple of Castor in the Foreground

LESSON LIII

EXERCISES

229. I. a. 1. Lēgēs nostrae cīvitātis priōre annō nōn magnopere mūtābantur. 2. Caesar, quī perfidiā Gallōrum diū doluerat, opere nōn perfectō, ex oppidō mātūrrimē discessit. 3. Fīlia huius quae ex citeriōre Galliā virō nūpserat, Rōmae per reliquōs annōs aevi mānsit. 4. Pāx aeterna nōbis cum Gallīs erit, quam posterī nōn rumpent. 5. Prīmā lūce plūrimās nūbēs saepe vidēmus, quae sōlem in caelō obscūrant.

b. 1. Proximā nocte nōnnūllī nautae, quī uxōrēs liberōsque in ulteriōre prōvinciā reliquerant, nāvēs solvērunt. 2. Militēs quī graviōra onera portābant ex finitimā prōvinciā in interiōrem Galliam iter faciēbant. 3. Prīma pars istius librī multō grātor est quam extrēma.

II. a. 1. The next night the full moon was obscured by many clouds, which had appeared in the sky. 2. My friend's sister will marry a man from farther Gaul. 3. Caesar, who was deeply (greatly) pained by the treachery of the Gallic cavalry, very promptly (quickly) changed his (line of) march to the nearer province.

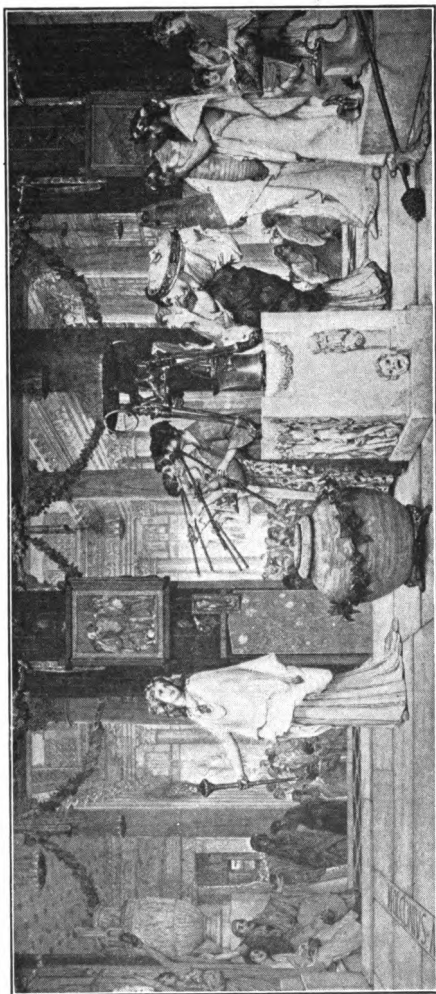
b. 1. Through many ages the Romans have given not a few excellent (best) laws to mankind (men). 2. Will our country enjoy (have) everlasting peace with foreign nations? 3. Marcus had taken a wife of rare foresight from the interior of Gaul.

REVIEW OF LESSONS XLVI-LIII

230. Review orally the Latin for each of the following words, giving the nominative, genitive singular, and gender of nouns, all nominative forms of adjectives, and the principal parts and synopsis in the first person singular of the tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of verbs: wind, roll, ask, wine, drive, footprint, honey, drag, neighbor, behold, branch, explore, sweet, middle (of), surround, play, or, stone, bold, be situated (lie), ancient, draw up, height, on the ground, witness, wife, breathe, province, loosen, treachery, healthy, work, break, burden, row, darken, nation, marry, cloud, young man, change, numerous, not a few, law, be pained, age, everlasting.

231. Give the English for the following words, and name at least one derivative from each, if there are derivatives: altitūdō, aciēs, medius, ventus, lūdus, quaerō, lapis, pellō, iaceō, multitūdō, instruō, mel, humus, finitimus, collis, explorātor, cadāver, dulcis, volvō, circumdō, vīnum, aut, vēstīgium, audāx, trahō, antiquus, speciō, pendeō, rāmus, paulō, testis, obscurō, spirō, nūbō, solvō, nūbēs, sānitās, mūtō, rumpō, lēx, rādix, doleō, aevum, aeternus, ōrdō, nōnnūllī, uxor, nātiō, prōvincia, perfidia, iuvenis, opus, onus, complūrēs.

232. Explain the following English words, tracing them back, and giving the meaning of the Latin words



A VINTAGE FESTIVAL

from which they are derived, with the force of the prefix, if there is a prefix: antiquity, antics, uxoricide, audacity, provincialism, dulcimer, coöperate, implore, exonerate, mellifuous, nebular, nuptial, dispel, immutable, inquest, legitimate, ventilate, condolence, indolent, medieval, cadaverous, exhume, expiration, indestructible, absolve, adjacent, dilapidated, interruption, prelude, extraordinary, pendant, innate, ramify, evolution, vintage, investigate, distracted, perspective, facility, assimilate, posterity, supremacy, ameliorate, optimist, pessimism, majority, minority, seniority, rejuvenate, deteriorate, intramural, priority, primogeniture, approximate, ultimatum, beneficial, malefactor, magistrate, plurality.

233. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of each of the following words: *volvō*, *věstīgium*, *trahō*, *pendeō*, *lūdus*, *lapis*, *struō*, *ventus*, *quaerō*, *mel*, *plōrō*, *dulcis*, *audāx*, *pellō*, *uxor*, *perfidia*, *opus*, *onus*, *obscūrō*, *nūbō*, *mūtō*, *doleō*, *testis*, *spīrō*, *sānus*, *rumpō*, *rādix*, *nāscor*, *inferior*, *summus*, *optimus*, *pessimus*, *maior*, *minor*, *senior*, *iuvenis*.

234. Classify as parts of speech and define the following English words, giving the Latin words from which they are derived, with the meaning: onerous, inoperative, opera, commute, illegal, dolorous, primeval, attest, inspiration, solvent, sanitation, eruption, eradicate, nascent, convolution, vestige, extract, spectacular, independent, delusion, circumjacent, vent, propeller, deplore, caress, exasperate, simile, humility,

inferiority, posthumous, summit, maximum, minimum, primitive, ulterior.

235. Discussion of difficult English words, apparently derived from Latin words in Vocabularies, or from adjectives and adverbs compared in Lessons XLVI-LII and noted down at the time. Dictation exercise.

236. Explain how simple adjectives are compared. Compare *cārus*, *fēlix*, *vēlōx*, and *potēns*. Decline their comparatives. Explain the formation and comparison of adverbs. Form adverbs from *cārus*, *fēlix*, and *vēlōx*, and compare them. How are adjectives ending in *-er* compared? Compare *pulcher*, *liber*, and *ācer*. Decline the comparative of each. Form adverbs from *liber*, *miser*, *celer*, and *ācer*, and compare them. Compare the Latin for *like*, *unlike*, *easy*, *difficult*, *graceful*, *humble*. How many *l*'s are there in the superlative? Compare the corresponding adverbs. What is the adverb for *easily*? *with difficulty*?

Compare the Latin for *outward*, *low*, *following*, *above*, *good*, *bad*, *great*, *much*, *small*, *old*, *young*. Decline the Latin for *higher*, *better*, *more*, and *smaller*. Give comparatives and superlatives apparently formed from the Latin for the following: *this side of*, *down*, *within*, *in front of*, *near*, *able*, *beyond*. Decline the Latin for *hither*, *farther*, and *nearer*.

237. Compare the Latin for *well*, *badly*, *greatly*, *much*, *little* (adv.), *long* (adv.), *early*, *recently*, *rather*, *before*, *often*, *otherwise*.

How are adjectives compared in Latin which do not admit of comparison by terminations? Give a few Latin adverbs which are formed from the base of adjectives by adding **-ō** instead of **-ē**; a few formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-iter** instead of **-ē**; a few which are the same as the neuter accusative singular of the adjective.

What is the construction in Latin when **quam**, *than*, is omitted? When may **quam** be omitted? What is the construction for the *Measure of Difference* with *comparatives* and words implying *comparison*? Give an example.

READING LESSON, THE BAD BOY, *continued*, p. 215.

LESSON LIV

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Indicative, Infinitives, and Participles, Active and Passive, of **Audiō**. Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation. Rule for Ablative of Means with **Ūtor**, **Fruor**, **Fungor**, etc.

238. Learn the principal parts, the indicative, infinitives, and participles, active and passive, of **audiō**, *hear*, Paradigms, pp. 302–305. Also, learn the principal parts, indicative, infinitives, and participles of **largior**, a deponent of the fourth conjugation, Paradigms, pp. 305, 306. Review the subject of deponent verbs, § 159. Be prepared to give the synopsis of **audiō**, in the first, second, and third persons, singular and plural, of the indicative; also, the synopsis of **largior**.

239. Study the rule for the ablative with *ûtor*, *fruo*r, etc., Rules of Syntax, 46, p. 324.

Examples :

Pecuniâ ûtitur. *He uses (his) money.*

Vitâ fruitur. *He enjoys life.*

Carne vescuntur. *They eat (lit., feed themselves by means of) flesh.*

Urbe potitus est. *He got possession of (lit., made himself powerful by means of) the city.*

240.

VOCABULARY

<i>abûtor</i> , -ûti, -ûsus sum (ab, <i>ûtor</i>), <i>abuse</i> .	<i>impedimenta</i> , -ôrum, n. pl. (<i>impediô</i>), <i>baggage, military train</i> .
<i>audiô</i> , -îre, -îvi, -îtum, <i>hear</i> .	<i>insidiae</i> , -ârum, f. pl. (in, <i>sedeô</i>), <i>ambush, ambushcade, treachery</i> .
<i>Catilina</i> , -ae, m., <i>Catiline</i> .	<i>nûper</i> , adv., <i>recently</i> .
<i>fruo</i> r, <i>frui</i> , <i>fructus sum</i> , <i>enjoy</i> .	<i>patientia</i> , -ae, f. (<i>patior</i>), <i>endurance, patience</i> .
<i>fungor</i> , <i>fungi</i> , <i>fûnctus sum</i> , <i>perform, fulfill</i> .	<i>perveniô</i> , -venire, -vênî, -ventum (<i>per</i> , <i>veniô</i>), <i>arrive</i> .
<i>honestus</i> , -a, -um (<i>honor</i>), <i>honorable</i> .	<i>potior</i> , -îri, <i>potitus sum</i> (<i>potis</i>), <i>gain possession of</i> .
<i>honor</i> , -ôris, m., <i>honor</i> .	<i>sciô</i> , <i>scire</i> , <i>scîvi</i> , <i>scîtum</i> , <i>know</i> .
<i>hospes</i> , -pitis, m., <i>host, guest, friend</i> .	<i>ûtor</i> , <i>ûti</i> , <i>ûsus sum</i> , <i>use</i> .
<i>hospitium</i> , -i, n. (<i>hospes</i>), <i>hospitality, friendship</i> .	<i>veniô</i> , <i>venire</i> , <i>vênî</i> , <i>ventum</i> , <i>come</i> .
<i>impediô</i> , -îre, -îvi or -îi, -îtum (in, <i>pês</i>), <i>hinder, impede, prevent</i> .	<i>vescor</i> , <i>vescî</i> , <i>feed upon, eat</i> .

241. English Derivatives. Record in the Index Book the Latin words of the Vocabulary which yield English derivatives, and assign them to pages in the Derivative Notebook. Record here, also, as many

derivatives as you can find, testing with the prefixes, taken in alphabetical order. It is assumed that the pupil is following this method, in accordance with directions previously given. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences, dictation.

LESSON LV

EXERCISES

242. I. a. 1. Audīs, audīris, audiēs, audiēris, audiēre, audīmus, audīmur, audīminī, audiuntur. 2. Impediēbāmus, impediēbāmur, impediētis, impediēminī, impeditum erit, audītae sumus, audītī eritis. 3. Impedīrī, audīvisse, audītus esse, impeditum īrī, audiēns, impeditus. 4. Omnēs scīmus bellum esse melius quam pācem sine honōre. 5. Catilīna, homō nōbilis, patientiā populi Rōmānī diū abūtēbātur. 6. Hostēs, insidiūs factīs, impedimentīs nostrīs potītī sunt atque ad mūrōs oppidī celeriter pervēnērunt.

b. 1. Nostrī hospitēs honestī, quī ex prōvinciā nūperrimē vēnerant, Rōmae multīs rēbus fruēbantur. 2. Mārcus, vir summō honōre, quī hospitīō complūrium nōbilissimōrum fruitur, labōre difficillimō optimē fungētur. 3. Equī frūmentō, hominēs carne vescuntur. 4. Ob eam rem peditēs, quī castrīs hostium potītī erant, gladiīs facilius ūtēbantur.

II. a. 1. You (*plural*) hear, are heard, were heard, will be heard, we hear, are heard, were heard, shall know, shall be known. 2. You (*singular*) have hindered, had hindered, will have hindered, we (*feminine*) have

been hindered, had been hindered, will have been hindered. 3. To be heard, to be hindered, to have come, to be about to come, knowing, (having been) known, about to come. 4. The enemy, who had made an ambuscade, having gained possession of the baggage of our army, very quickly arrived at the larger camp.

b. 1. You all know that peace without honor is worse than war. 2. Catiline, who has abused the patience of his (fellow) citizens for many years, will not enjoy the friendship of any (men) in the Roman provinces, will he? 3. Do you not know that not a few animals feed upon both grain and flesh?

LESSON LVI

CARDINAL NUMERALS

Cardinal Numerals. Declension of **Duo**, **Três**, **Mília**.
Genitive of Measure.

243. Numerals may be divided as follows :

I. Numeral adjectives, comprising :

(a) Cardinals ; **ūnus**, *one* ; **duo**, *two* ; etc.

(b) Ordinals ; **primus**, *first* ; **secundus**, *second* ; etc.

(c) Distributives ; **singulī**, *one by one* ; **binī**, *two by two* ; etc.

II. Numeral adverbs ; **semel**, *once* ; **bis**, *twice* ; etc.

244. Table of Cardinals. Learn the cardinal numerals from one to ten, inclusive, and the Latin for

twenty, one hundred, and a thousand. Note the other cardinals, so that they may be recognized when met. Paradigms, pp. 285, 286.

245. Declension of the Cardinals. Review the declension of *ūnus*, § 117. Learn the declension of *duo*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*, Paradigms, p. 285. Note that *trēs* is declined like the plural of *fortis*, § 110.

Ambō, *both*, is declined like *duo*, except that the final *ō* is long. The *hundreds*, except *centum*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*. *Mille* is regularly an adjective in the singular, and indeclinable. In the plural it is a neuter noun (followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated). It is declined as follows:

N. A. V. *mīlia* ; G. *mīlium* ; D. A. *mīlibus*.

Thus: *mille hominēs*, *a thousand men*; but, *tria mīlia hominum*, *three thousand* (i.e. *three thousands of men*). The cardinal hundreds from 200 to 900, inclusive, are declined like the plural of *bonus*. Other cardinals are indeclinable.

246. Study the rule for *Genitive of Measure*, Rules of Syntax, 47, p. 324.

Examples:

Fossa quīndecim pedum, *a ditch fifteen feet (wide or deep)*; lit., *a ditch of fifteen feet*.

Exsilium quīnque annōrum, *an exile of five years*.

247. Review the rules for *Relations of Time and Extent of Space*, Rules of Syntax, 35 and 36, pp. 322, 323.

248.

VOCABULARY

adolēscēns (adolēscēns), -entis, m. (ad, oleō, olēscō, grow up), young man.	mūniō , -ire, -īvi, -itum (mūnus), do a task; per- form, build, fortify.
adventus , -ūs, m. (ad, veniō), arrival.	mūnus , -eris, n., task, func- tion, gift, reward.
certior , certius , comparative of certus , -a, -um, more certain; certiorem or certi- ōrēs facere , to inform.	passus , -ūs, m. (pandō , -ere, pandī , pānsu m or passu m, spread out), pace (two steps, about five feet); mille pas- sūs , duo mīlia passuum , etc., a thousand paces, two thousand paces, etc., a Ro- man mile, etc.
fossa , -ae, f. (fodiō , -ere, fōdī , fossum , dig), ditch.	rogō , 1, ask, request, propose (of a bill or law).
Italia , -ae, f., Italy.	sententia , -ae, f. (sentiō), feeling, opinion.
longitūdō , -dinis, f. (longus), length.	sentiō , -ire, sēnsī , sēnsu m, perceive by the senses, feel, perceive, think.
moenia , -ium, n. (cf. mūniō), fortifications, walls.	
mūnicipium , -ī, n. (mūnus , capiō), municipality, free town.	

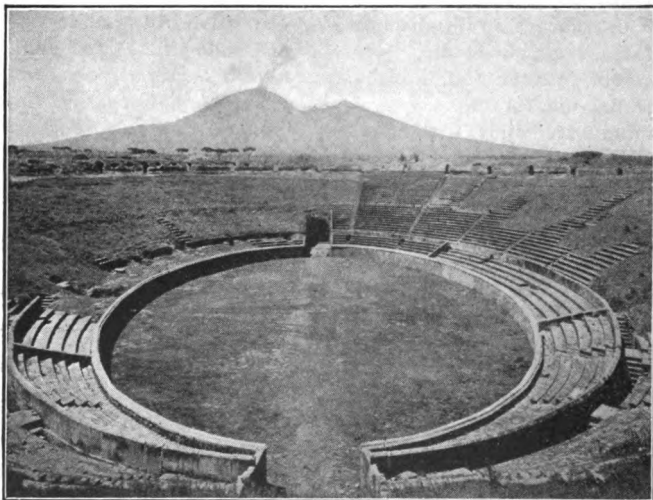
249. English Derivatives. Record in the Notebooks all words in the Vocabulary which yield English derivatives, and also the cardinal numerals from one to ten, inclusive, **centum**, and **mille**. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences.

LESSON LVII

EXERCISES

250. I. a. 1. Caesar ā flūmine ad collem fossam trecentōrum pedum longitūdine perdūxit. **2.** Cōn- sul, itinere trium mīlium passuum factō, occāsū sōlis ad

moenia oppidī magnī pervēnit, quod in finibus Belgārum erat. 3. Complūra mūnicipia in Italiā fuērunt quae nōn mūnita erant. 4. Nōs ipsī adulēscentēs certiorēs faciēmus dē mūneribus quae ex Galliā missa sunt. 5. Cicerō senātum sententiam dē rē publicā saepe rogābat. 6. Arbor, quam in hortō meī amīcī esse sēnsistis, quīnquāgintā pedum altitūdine est.



THEATER AT POMPEII
Vesuvius in the Background

b. 1. Nōs omnēs scīmus annum trecentōs et sexāgintā quīnque diēs habēre. 2. Adventū nostrī exercitūs hostēs quī castra minōra oppugnābant perterritī fūgērunt. 3. Peditēs Belgārum, quī cum Germānīs multōs annōs bellum gessērunt, duōbus diēbus aderunt.

II. a. 1. The fortifications of the town were twelve feet high (of twelve feet in height). 2. A young man from the neighboring municipality, having received (*use form of accipiō*) many gifts, informed Labienus of the arrival of a large number of hostile cavalry (horsemen of the enemy). 3. Have you not perceived that there were many municipalities in Italy?

b. 1. Cicero often used to call his (fellow) citizens together, and ask their opinion on a matter (thing) of public interest. 2. The lieutenant, a young man of great valor, made a march of seven days (a march of seven days having been made) and gained possession of the camp of the enemy. 3. Did you not know that we had enjoyed peace with the Germans for many years? 4. We shall use our swords and javelins.

LESSON LVIII

ORDINAL NUMERALS

Ordinal Numerals. Semi-deponents.

251. Ordinals. Learn the ordinal numerals from *first* to *tenth*, inclusive, Paradigms, p. 286. Study the other ordinals in the table, so that they may be recognized when met. Ordinal numerals are declined like *bonus*.

252. Semi-deponents. These verbs have the present system in the active voice, but the perfect system in the passive, with active meaning, as follows :

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.

fidō, fidere, fisis sum, trust.

The compounds also are semi-deponents.

253.

VOCABULARY

aetās, -tātis, f. (aevum),
age.

audācia, -ae, f. (audāx, au-
deō), boldness, effrontery.

classis, -is, f., class, division;
then, fleet.

cōfirmō, 1 (con, firmus),
strengthen, assure, confirm,
encourage.

dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrē-
tum (dē, cernō, cernere,
crēvī, crētum, separate, dis-
cern, see), decide, decree.

discrimen, -inis, n. (dis,
cernō), distance apart, divi-
sion; then, decisive mo-
ment, crisis, risk.

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus
sum (ex, gradior, gradi,
gressus sum, take a step,
go), depart, disembark.

experior, experiri, expertus
sum (ex, perior, try; cf.
periculum), try out, test, ex-
perience.

firmus, -a, -um, strong, firm.

fūmus, -ī, m., smoke.

gaudium, -ī, n. (gaudeō), de-
light, joy, pleasure.

gradus, -ūs, m., step, grade,
rank.

levis, -e, light.

minister, -trī, m. (minus),
an underofficial, assistant.

mollis, -e, soft, tender, pliant.
nunc, adv., now.

prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgres-
sus (prō, gradior, gradus),
step forward, proceed.

secundus, -a, -um (sequor),
following, second, favorable;
rēs secundae, prosperity.

254. English Derivatives. Record in the Notebooks the words in the Vocabulary, the semi-deponents, and the ordinals from *first* to *tenth*, if they yield derivatives. Record on the same page in the Notebook the derivatives of both cardinals and ordinals, when they have the same root; as, **quīque** and **quīntus**; **octō** and **octāvus**, etc. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences. Dictation.

LESSON LIX

EXERCISES

255. I. a. 1. Quīnque post diēbus lēgātus cum ministrō, animīs omnium cōfirmātis, ē classe tertiā hōrā ēgressus est. **2.** Catilīna, homō firmō animō summāque audāciā, rēs secundās populī Rōmānī ēvertē (ex, vertō, *overturn, destroy*) cōnābātur atque in senātum venīre audēbat. **3.** Cicero, novus homō, per omnīs gradūs honōrum prōgressus, quadrāgēsīmō tertiō annō aetātis cōsul creātus est. **4.** Omnia haec maximō cum gaudiō omnium cīvium senātus quārtō diē dēcrēvit populusque iussit.

b. 1. Fūmus, quī ex ignibus in montibus oriēbātur, ab duodecim milibus passuum vidēbātur. **2.** Ventī levēs mollēsque nunc grātissimī sunt nōbīs, quī summa discrīmina maris expertī sumus. **3.** Rēs secundae summō gaudiō omnibus et virīs et fēminīs esse solent.

II. a. 1. On the fourth day the fleet, which had proceeded from the island, anchored (stood) about seventy feet from the shore (land). **2.** Caesar, having encouraged (the minds of) his soldiers, a little after the fifth hour decided to disembark from the ships. **3.** A light smoke was seen rising (to rise) from the camp.

b. 1. The boldness of Catiline was by no means (least) a (source of) joy to Cicero, who had risen through all the grades of office (honors). **2.** We who now enjoy prosperity have experienced many dangers and risks on both land and sea. **3.** The attendants (*i.e.* assistants) of the king came to a town, which had

been fortified with great care by a ditch eighteen feet deep (of eighteen feet in depth).

LATIN DERIVATION

Derivation and Composition of Latin Words. Corresponding English Suffixes.

256. Roots, usually of one syllable, are the simplest parts of Latin words, and are not very numerous. In the majority of Latin words a *suffix*, denoting some variety of meaning, has been added to the *root*. The combination of *root* and *suffix* is called *stem*.

Notice **amō**, verb, *love*, **amicus**, adjective and noun, *friendly*, *friend*, and **amicitia**, noun, *friendship*. All evidently belong together in meaning, and have been formed from the root **am-** by the addition of the respective *suffixes*.

257. Nouns Derived from Verbs. (a) The suffix **-tor** (**-sor**), fem., **-trix** (Eng., **-tor**, **-sor**, **-trix**, **-trice**), denotes the agent; as,

victor, **victrix** (fem.), *conqueror* (Eng., *victor*), from **vincō** (root, **vic-**), *conquer*.

(b) *Abstract nouns* and *names of actions* are formed from roots and verb stems by means of the suffixes **-or**, **-us** (gen., **-eris**), **-iō**, **-tiō** (Eng., **-tion**), **-tūra** (Eng., **-ture**), **-sūra** (Eng., **-sure**), **-tus** and **-sus** (fourth declension); as,

amor, *love*, from **amō**.

pondus (gen. **ponderis**), *weight*, *pound* (Eng., *pound*, *ponderous*), from **pendo**, *weigh*.

vocātiō (gen., **vocātiōnis**), *calling* (Eng., *vocation*), from **vocō**.

scriptūra, *writing* (Eng., *Scripture*), from **scribō**, **scriptum**, *write*.

sēnsus, *feeling* (Eng., *sense*), from **sentiō**, **sēnsus**, *feel*.

(c) The following suffixes denote the *means* or *place of action*: **-men**, **-mentum**, **-mōnium**, **-mōnia**, **-bulum**, **-culum**; as,

testimōnium, *testimony*, from **testor**, dep., 1 (**testis**), *bear witness*.

stābulum, *stall* (Eng., *stable*), from **stō**, *stand*.

sepulcrum, *grave* (Eng., *sepulcher*), from **sepeliō**, **sepultum**, *bury*.

258. Derivation of Nouns from Adjectives or Other Nouns. (a) Feminine abstract nouns are formed from adjective and noun stems by means of the following suffixes: **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās**, **-tūs**, and **-tūdō**; as,

antīquitās, *antiquity*, from **antīquus**, *ancient*.

patria, *fatherland*, from **pater**.

magnitūdō, *size* (Eng., *magnitude*), from **magnus**.

(b) Neuter abstracts, passing into concretes, denoting *offices* and *groups*, are formed from noun stems (and sometimes from verb stems) by means of the suffixes **-ium** and **-tium**; as,

collēgium, *group of colleagues* (Eng., *college*), from **collēga**, *colleague* (**con**, and **legō**, *collect*).

adverbium, *adverb*, **ad verbum** (*added*) *to a verb*.

(c) The following Latin suffixes denote the *place where*: -**ārium**, -**ōrium**, -**ētum**, -**ile**; as,

aviārium, *place where birds are kept* (Eng., *aviary*), from **avis**, *bird*.

dormitōrium, *sleeping room* (Eng., *dormitory*), from **dormiō**, **dormitum**, *sleep*.

arborētum, *a place where trees are grown*, from **arbor**, *tree*.

(d) The suffix -**es**, gen., -**itis**, denotes one who *does a thing*, descriptive of character; as,

eques, **equitis**, *one who fights on horseback*, from **equus**.

(e) Diminutive nouns are usually of one gender, — that of the noun from which they are derived. The suffixes are:

-**ulus** (-**ula**, -**ulum**)

-**olus** (-**ola**, -**olum**)

-**culus** (-**cula**, -**culum**)

-**ellus** (-**ella**, -**ellum**)

-**illus** (-**illa**, -**illum**)

Examples:

globulus, *a little ball* (Eng., *globule*), from **globus**, *a ball*.

aureolus, *a (little) gold coin* (Eng., *aureole*, *a halo of light*), from **aurum**, *gold*.

libellus, *a little book* (Eng., *libel*), from **liber**, *book*.

259. Derivation of Adjectives. (a) Adjectives meaning *full of*, *prone to*, are formed from noun stems with the following suffixes: -**ōsus**, -**lēns** (gen., -**lentis**), -**lentus**; as,

verbōsus, *full of words* (Eng., *verbose*), from **verbum**, *word*.

pestilēns (gen., **pestilentis**), *pestilent, pestilential*, from **pestis**, *pest, pestilence*.

violentus, *forcible* (Eng., *violent*), from **vīs**, *force*.

(b) The following adjective suffixes have the force of *provided with*: **-tus**, **-ātus**, **-ītus**, **-ūtus**; as,

honestus, *provided with honor, honorable* (Eng., *honest*), from **honor**.

hirsūtus, *rough, shaggy* (Eng., *hirsute*), from **hirtus**, *hairy*.

(c) The suffixes **-āx** and **-ulus** denote an *inclination or tendency*, usually a faulty one; as,

loquāx (gen., **loquācis**), *talkative* (Eng., *loquacious*), from **loquor**, *speak*.

crēdulus, **-a**, **-um**, *believing too easily* (Eng., *credulous*), from **crēdō**, *believe*.

(d) The suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis** signify *capable of or worthy of*, usually in a passive sense; as,

fragilis, *easily broken* (Eng., *fragile*), from **frangō** (root **frag-**), *break*.

docilis, *easily taught* (Eng., *docile*), from **doceō**, *teach*.

(e) The suffixes **-eus** and **-inus** denote *material*, and have the force of *made of*; as,

aureus, **-a**, **-um**, *made of gold*, from **aurum**.

fāginus, **-a**, **-um**, *made of beech*, from **fāgus**, *beech tree*.

(f) The suffixes, **-ius**, **-icus**, **-ilis**, **-āris**, **-ārius**, **-nus**, **-ānus**, **-inus**, **-ivus**, **-ēnsis** signify *belonging to, pertaining to, connected with*.

Examples :

cīvilis, of or pertaining to citizens (Eng., *civil*), from **cīvis**.

urbānus, connected with the city (Eng., *urban*), from **urbs**.

marīnus, pertaining to the sea (Eng., *marine*), from **mare**.

rēgālis, pertaining to kings (Eng., *regal*), from **rēx**, **rēgis**.

260. Derivation of Verbs. (a) Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives*.

Examples :

stimulō, 1, *incite* (Eng., *stimulate*), from **stimulus**, *goad*.

liberō, 1, *set free* (Eng., *liberate*), from **liber**, **-era**, **-erum**.

finiō, 4, *make an end to*, from **finis**, *end*.

(b) Inceptives or inchoatives add **-scō** to roots of the present system of verbs. They denote the *beginning of an action*, and are of the third conjugation. Of some there is no simple verb in existence.

Examples :

coalēscō, *grow together* (Eng., *coalesce*), from **con**, and **alō**, *nourish, cause to grow*.

dēliquēscō, *melt away* (Eng., *deliquesce*), from **dē** and **liqueō**, *be fluid*.

(c) Frequentatives or intensives denote a *repeated* or *energetic action*. They are formed from the supine stem, end in *-tō* or *-sō*, and are of the first conjugation.

Examples:

cursō, *run hither and thither* (Eng., *course*), from **currō**, *run*.

iactō, *hurl*, from **iaciō**, **iactum**, *throw*.

Those from verbs of the first conjugation end in *-itō*, not *-āto*, as we should expect.

261. English Derivatives. The pupils should familiarize themselves as much as possible with all the suffixes mentioned in this lesson, and make use of them in their search for derivatives on all occasions in the future, both in the Vocabularies, and later in the authors read. Latin words from the same root, but with different suffixes, should be recorded separately in the Index Book, but their derivatives should be grouped together in one place in the Derivative Notebook. In the case of compounds of the same Latin root with different prefixes, it is not recommended that the separate Latin words be recorded in either the Index Book or the Derivative Notebook, provided, of course, the meaning is clear.

REVIEW OF LESSONS LIV-LIX

262. Review orally the Latin for each of the following words, giving the nominative, genitive singular, and gender of nouns, all nominative forms of adjectives, and the principal parts and synopsis in the

first person singular of the tenses of the indicative, active and passive, with all infinitives and participles, of verbs: hear, ask, abuse, eat, perceive, come, enjoy, feeling, use, perform, pace, mile, three miles, know, gift, honor, honorable, fortify, fortifications, light, friendship, length, hinder, ditch (dig), baggage, gain possession of, ambush, arrive, endurance, inform, age, favorable, prosperity, boldness, step, proceed, class, fleet, soft, strengthen, assistant, decree, crisis, depart, experience, firm, joy, smoke.

263. Give the English for the following words, and name at least one derivative from each, if there are derivatives: ūtor, fruor, fungor, vescor, potior, mūnicipium, mūniō, mūnus, impediō, insidiae, sciō, longitūdō, veniō, sententia, passus, duo milia passuum, certiōrem (certiōrēs) facere, perveniō, adventus, honor, honestus, hospes, hospitium, audiō, fossa (fodiō), abūtor, adulēscēns, patientia, aetās, classis, audācia, rēs secundae, gradus, ēgredior, prōgredior, dēcernō (cernō), cōfirmō, discrīmen, firmus, gaudium, levis, exsuperior, mollis, nunc, minister, sentiō.

264. Explain the following English words, tracing them back, and giving the meaning of the Latin words from which they are derived, with the force of prefixes, if there are prefixes: remunerate, fossilize, adolescence, abrogate, dissent, surpass, trespass, prevent, event, adventure, invent, revenue, utility, abusive, omniscience, conscious, insidious, hospital, defunct, perfunctory, auditorium, fruition, aggressive, degrade, egress, retrograde, transgress, mollusk, levity, gaudy,

fumigate, perfume, discrimination, experiment, dual, duel, tripartite, quartet, sextet, centenary, perfidy.

265. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of the following words: *mūnus*, *sentīō*, *mūnicipium*, *adulēscēns* (*olēscō*, *oleō*), *audiō*, *ūtor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *hospes*, *honor*, *insidiae*, *patientia*, *sciō*, *veniō*, *gaudium*, *fīdō*, *firmus*, *dēcernō* (*cernō*), *gradus*, *exerior*, *levis*, *minister*, *duo*, *quārtus*, *sextus*, *secundus*.

266. Classify as parts of speech and define the following English words; also, give the Latin words, with meaning, from which they are derived: *ammunition*, *adult*, *advent*, *arrogant*, *intervention*, *conscience*, *hospitality*, *function*, *inaudible*, *classic*, *digress*, *mollify*, *experience*, *quinquennial*, *octogenarian*.

267. Discussion of difficult English words, apparently derived from Latin words in Lessons LIV-LVIII, or from cardinal and ordinal numerals, and noted down by pupils. Dictation.

268. Give the principal parts of *audiō*, and the synopsis in the indicative in all persons and both numbers, active and passive. Give all infinitives and participles, with their meanings. Decline *audiēns* and *auditus*. Give the principal parts and synopsis of *potior*. Give, also, the infinitives and participles, with their meanings. What is the force of the perfect participle of deponent verbs? What is the form of the future infinitive?

269. Name the deponent verbs which take the ablative of means. Give the principal parts and

meanings. Count from *one* to *ten*. What is the Latin for *twelve, fifteen, twenty-one, sixty-seven, a hundred, two hundred and eighteen, a thousand, three thousand*? Decline the Latin for *one, two, three, and thousands*. What other words are declined like *ūnus*? Give their meanings. State the rule for *Genitive of Measure*. Give an example. Name the ordinal numerals from *first* to *tenth*. What is the derivation of *secundus*? Name the semi-deponents, with their meanings. Give the principal parts of each, and also the synopsis in the indicative. Give the infinitives and participles.

READING LESSON, THE SPORTING DOCTOR, p. 216.

LESSON LX

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Imperatives of *Sum*, *Prōsum*, and of the Four Conjugations, including Deponents.

270. Learn the imperatives of *sum*, *prōsum*, and of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *capiō*, and *audiō*, active and passive, with their meanings, Paradigms, pp. 310, 311, 293 ff. Notice that the imperative of deponent verbs is the same as that of the passive of regular verbs, except that the meaning is active.

271. Study the rule for the *Uses of the Imperative Mood*, Rules of Syntax, 61, p. 326.

Examples:

Ēgredere ex urbe. *Depart from the city.*

Mihi crēde. *Believe me.*

272.

VOCABULARY

alō, -ere, alui, altum or alitum, *feed, nourish, support*.
crēdō, -ere, crēdidi, crēditum (originally, *make a loan to*), *believe, trust* (with the dat. of persons).
doceō, -ēre, docui, doctum, *teach*.
dolor, -ōris, m. (doleō), *pain, grief, sorrow*.
dormiō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, dormitum, *sleep*.
frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctum (root *frag-*), *break, shatter*.

incrēdibilis, -e (in, not, crēdō), *unbelievable, incredible*.
pestilēns, -entis (pestis), *infected, unhealthy, pestilential*.
pestis, -is, f., *a deadly disease, pestilence*.
quoque, *also, too* (following the word it affects).
sepeliō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, sepultum, *bury*.
stimulō, 1 (stimulus, -i, m., *goad or spur, sting*), *goad or spur on, stimulate, arouse*.
vītō, 1, *avoid, shun*.



TOMB OF CECILIA METELLA, ON THE APPIAN WAY

273. English Derivatives. Record as usual the words in the Vocabulary which yield English deriv-

atives. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences containing derivatives. Dictation.

LESSON LXI

EXERCISES

274. I. a. 1. Es, estō, estōte, suntō, amā, amāre, amāminī, amātor, docē, docēte, monēminī, monentor. **2.** Prōdestō, prōdeste, frange, frangite, capiminī, capere, franguntor, regitōte. **3.** Prōdes, dormī, dormite, audīre, audiminī, dormītōte, mīrāre, sequiminī,



A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE
From a Sepulchral Monument

patiminī, patiuntor. **4.** Vōs, cīvēs, summā cum cūrā alite hōs quoque parvulōs. **5.** Vitāte, hominēs, istōs locōs pestilentēs atque pestēs ipsās. **6.** Extrā mūrōs urbis, Rōmānī, sepelīte omnēs quī mortuī sunt.

b. 1. Mihi crēde, mī fili. Haec omnia nōn sunt incredibilia. 2. Vōs, ducēs, mentēs militum vestrōrum spē victōriae stimulāte. 3. Ex animīs, fēminae, pellite dolōrem. Nostrae nāves tempestāte nōn frangentur.

II. a. 1. Be ye, be thou, be ye helpful (*use form of prōsum*), arouse thou, let them be loved, be ye aroused. 2. Advise, be ye advised, let him take, let them be ruled, teach ye, be ye taught. 3. Break, sleep ye, be ye heard, let them teach, bury ye. 4. Support the children of others also, citizens.

b. 1. Romans, trust me, who speak things by no means (*minimē*) unbelievable. 2. My pupil, avoid unhealthy houses and deadly diseases, which are the cause of much sorrow to men. 3. We know that you are (you to be) very brave, soldiers. Advance boldly (*audācter*) to all dangers.

LESSON LXII

GERUND, GERUNDIVE, AND SUPINE

Gerund, Gerundive, Supines, of the Four Conjugations.
Simple Indirect Discourse.

275. Learn the gerund, gerundive, and supines of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *capiō*, and *audiō*, with their meanings, Paradigms, pp. 293, ff.

276. Study the rules for the *Use of the Gerund, Gerundive, and Supines*, Rules of Syntax, 48, 49, 50, 51; also the rule for *Indirect Discourse*, Rules of Syntax, 52, 53, pp. 324, 325.

Examples :

Cupidus pugnandī, *eager for fighting.*

Cupidus urbis capiendae, *eager for capturing the city.*

Ad urbem capiendam, *for (the purpose of) capturing the city.*

Dicit sē ventūrum esse. *He says that he will come; lit., himself to be about to come.*

Quaesitum auxilium vēnērunt. *They came to seek aid.*

Facile factū, *easy to do; lit., easy in respect to doing.*

277.

VOCABULARY

arbitror, -ārī, **arbitrātus sum**
(**arbitr**, -trī, m., *referee, umpire*), lit., *serve as a referee; hence, consider, think.*

cupidus, -a, -um (**cupiō**),
eager for, desirous of.

cupiō, -ere, **cupivī**, **cupitum**,
long for, desire.

dēns, **dentis**, m., *tooth.*

fallō, -ere, **fefelli**, **falsum**,
deceive, cheat; falsus, -a,
-um (as an adj.), *feigned, deceitful, false.*

flōrēns, -entis (**flōs**, **flōreō**,
-ēre, **flōruī**, *bloom*), *bloom-
ing, flourishing.*

flōs, **flōris**, m., *blossom, flower.*

intelleḡō (**intelligō**), -ere, **intellēxi**, **intellēctum** (**inter**, **legō**), lit., *pick out from between; hence, understand, realize.*

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, quiet, sleep.*

quiēscō, -ere, **quiēvī**, **quiētum** (**quiēs**), *go to rest, keep quiet, sleep; quiētus*, -a, -um (part.), *at rest, peaceful.*

terror, -ōris, m. (**terreō**), *fear, fright.*

278. English Derivatives. Record words, as usual. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written exercises containing derivatives. Dictation.

LESSON LXIII

EXERCISES

279. I. a. 1. Nōs, quī ab urbe complūrēs diēs āfui-
mus, nōn intellegēbāmus multōs flōrentēs cīvēs cupidōs
fuisse novārum rērum. 2. Eī quī ab labōre praedandī
spē (cf. praeda, Lesson XLII) revocatī erant nōn
quiēvērunt. 3. Quidam ex lēgātis hostium quī bellum
cupivērunt pācem petītum vērunt. 4. Leōnēs ācri-
bus dentibus erant terrōrī servīs miserīs, quī per
longam noctem in silvā quiētem capere nōn potuerant.
5. Hoc optimum factū esse nōbīs omnibus vidēbātur.

b. 1. Nōn ūnum socium, mī amīce, fefellitī.
2. Nōnnūllī arbitrantur rādīcēs hārum arborum maxi-
mārum esse antiquissimās. 3. Victōrēs ad urbem nōn
sine flōribus revertērunt. 4. Nōne ad eōs dēfenden-
dōs ex omnibus partibus convenient?

II. a. 1. What is the best thing for men eager for
defending their native country to do? 2. Do you
think that other envoys will come to ask for (seek)
safety? 3. Can you not tell (understand) the length
of life (long life) of horses from their teeth? 4. The
old man, who on account of fright was unable to rest,
was easily deceived by the bad boys of the neighbor-
ing town.

b. 1. We were all eager to see the beautiful flowers
which were in the extensive (large) gardens of the
consul. 2. After the battle many prosperous (flourish-
ing) men of the state were unable to rest (take rest) on
account of their fear of revolution (new things).

LESSON LXIV

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FIRST TWO CONJUGATIONS

Subjunctive Mood, Active and Passive, of the First and Second Conjugations. Harmony of Tenses. Indirect Questions.

280. Learn the conjugation of the subjunctive mood, active and passive, of **amō** and **moneō**, Paradigms, pp. 292, 295. Learn the synopsis in the first, second, and third persons, singular and plural, of the subjunctive of these verbs, giving together the active and passive of the present and past, then the perfect and past perfect active, and finally the perfect and past perfect passive. Review the synopsis of the indicative.

281. Study the rules for *Harmony of Tenses*, and for *Indirect Questions*, Rules of Syntax, 54, 55, 56, p. 325.

Examples :

Dic¹ **mihi quōs convocāveris.** *Tell me whom you have called together.*

Iūdicāre nōn potuērunt quid respondērent. *They could not decide what they should reply.*

¹ The verbs **dicō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō** drop the **e** in the present imperative active, as follows : **dic**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**. But compounds of **faciō** form the imperative in **-fice**, as **effice**. Compounds of **dicō** and **dūcō** accent the last syllable, as **ēdic'**, **ēduc'**.

282.

VOCABULARY

dubius, -a, -um (**duo**), *doubtful*.

folium, -ī, n., *leaf*.

haereō, -ēre, **haesi**, **haesum**, *stick, cling to*.

iūdicō, 1 (**iūs**, **dicō**; cf. **iūdex**), *judge, decide*.

ligō, 1, *bind*.

num, conj., *whether*.

quam ob rem, lit., *on account of what thing, why*.

quot, indecl., *how many*.

respondeō -ēre, **respondi**, **respōnsum** (**re-**, **spondeō**,

-ēre, **spondeō**, **spōnsum**, *promise, pledge oneself*), *reply*.

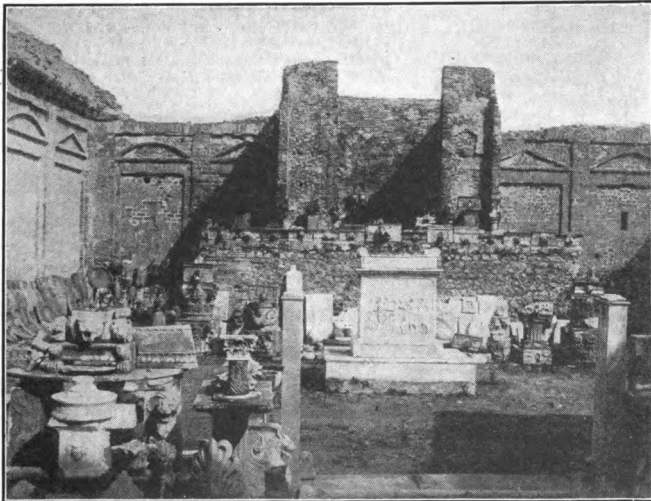
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum**, *consecrated, holy, sacred, accursed*.

sonō, -āre, **sonūi**, **sonitum** (**sonus**), *make a sound, sound, resound*.

taceō, -ēre, **tacui**, **tacitum**, *be silent*.

tergum, -ī, n., *back*.

tot, indecl., *so many*.



RUINS OF THE TEMPLE OF MERCURY
At Pompeii

283. English Derivatives. Record words, as in previous lessons. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences containing derivatives. Dictation.

LESSON LXV

EXERCISES

284. I. a. 1. Hī quaesivērunt quam ob rem dē sacris rēbus dubia semper ipsī respondissētis. **2.** Oculis iūdicārī facile nōn potest quot folia rāmis arborum magnārum haereant. **3.** Tantīs ventīs tempestātibusque ego intellegere potuī cūr mare per tot diēs nōn tacuisset. **4.** Scīsne tū num hae silvae vōcibus hominum longē sonuerint? **5.** Nōs mīrantēs ab eis quaerēbāmus quam ob rem manūs senis post tergum ligātae essent.

b. 1. Nōne vidēre potestis quanta onera istī equi miserī portent? **2.** Ipsī saepe mirābāmur cūr deī bonis hominibus tot dolōrēs darent. **3.** Caesar Labiēnum certiōrem fēcit quam ob rem castrīs mōtis insidiās verērētur.

II. a. 1. We cannot tell (judge) how many leaves cling to that tree with large roots. **2.** These men asked (from) him why he gave them doubtful replies (replied doubtful things). **3.** The young man wondered why the sea was silent, and did not (and . . . not = nor) roar (resound).

b. 1. We asked how many men there were whose hands were bound behind their backs. **2.** The children asked whether the gods gave sorrows to bad men alone.

LESSON LXVI

PURE PURPOSE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Subjunctive, Active and Passive, of the Third and Fourth Conjugations. Subjunctive of Deponents. *Cum Temporal*. Pure Clauses of Purpose.

285. Learn the conjugation of the tenses of the subjunctive, active and passive, of **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and of the deponents **patior** and **largior**, Paradigms, pp. 298, ff. Note that the subjunctive of deponents is the same as the subjunctive passive of the regular verbs. Learn the synopsis of the subjunctive, in all persons and both numbers, of **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, active and passive, and of the deponents. Review the synopsis of the indicative.

286. Study the rules for *Cum Temporal* and *Pure Clauses of Purpose*, Rules of Syntax, 57, 78, 79, pp. 326, 328.

Examples :

Cum vidēbis, tum sciēs. *When you see, then you will know.*

Caesar, cum in Italiam proficiscerētur, dē bellō certior factus est. *When Caesar was setting out into Italy, he was informed of the war.*

Rōmam iit, ut cōsulem vidēret. *He went to Rome to (in order that he might) see the consul.*

287.

VOCABULARY

ardeō , -ēre, ārsi , ārsūm , <i>blaze, burn.</i>	(cf. seriēs , -em, -ē, f., <i>series, row, and sermō</i> ,
attribuō , -ere, attribui , attribū- tūm (ad, tribuō , <i>assign</i> ,	sermōnis , <i>connected dis-</i> <i>course</i>).
tribus , -ūs, m., <i>tribe, trēs</i>), <i>assign to.</i>	nē , conj., <i>in order that not, lest.</i>
concutiō , -ere, concussi , con- cussum (con, quatiō , -ere,	rōdō , -ere, rōsi , rōsum , <i>gnaw</i> (cf. rōstrum , -ī, n., <i>beak</i>).
quassi , quassum , <i>shake</i>), <i>shatter.</i>	secō , -āre, secui , sectum , <i>cut</i> , <i>cut to pieces.</i>
contendō , -ere, contendī , contentum (con, tendō ,	spatium , -ī, n., <i>space.</i>
-ere, tetendī , tentum and tēnsūm , <i>stretch</i>), <i>struggle</i> <i>with, contend.</i>	tangō , -ere, tetigī , tāctum , <i>touch</i> (cf. integer , integra , integrum , from <i>in, not, and</i> tangō , <i>untouched, whole</i>).
dēserō , -ere, dēserui , dēser- tum (dē, serō , <i>join</i>),	ut , conj., <i>that, in order that.</i>
<i>disjoin, abandon, desert</i>	vestis , -is, f., <i>garment, robe</i> , <i>clothing.</i>

288. English Derivatives. Record the words in this lesson which yield English derivatives. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences containing derivatives. Dictation.

LESSON LXVII

EXERCISES

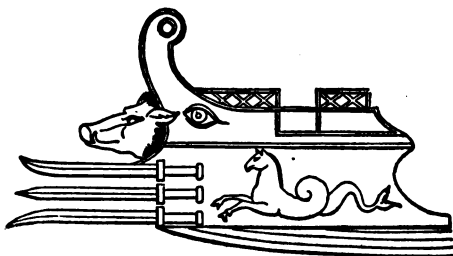
289. I. a. 1. Complūrēs militēs, cum ā quārtā hōrā ad occāsum sōlis cum cōpiis Gallōrum contendissent, ōrdinēs dēseruērunt. **2.** Fidē sociōrum concussā, cum multa aedificia ārsissent, Germānī, magnum spatium itineris prōgressī, ad moenia urbis pervēnērunt.

3. Barbarī, cum aurum vestemque rapuissent, ab urbe proficiscēbantur in agrōs quī nobīs paulō ante attribūtī erant, ut frūmenta secāre possent. 4. Nōne scīs quae vocentur ea animālia quae dentibus rādīcēs arborum rōdunt? 5. Tangere aut tangī, nisi¹ corpus, nūlla potest rēs.

b. 1. Cōsul nocte ē castrīs celerrimē ēgressus est, nē ab hostibus cōspiceretur. 2. Nōs pugnāvimus, ut patria libera esset. 3. Nōne crēditis spēs inimicōrum frāctās esse?

II. a. 1. Keen anxiety (care) gnawed at the heart of the unfortunate farmer, after his buildings, with all his horses, had (been) burned.

2. The soldier, after he had changed his clothing, about sunset deserted (from) the army. 3. The barbarians,



BEAK OF A ROMAN SHIP

when they were distributing (*use form of distribuō*) the booty which they had taken in the town, caught sight of the cavalry of the Romans, with whom they had fought (contended) a few days before.

b. 1. Those soldiers to whom the work had been assigned, stacked (placed down, *use form of dēpōnō*) their arms, in order that they might quickly fortify the camp. 2. Our friend asked what things we enjoyed most.

¹ Except.

LESSON LXVIII

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

Subjunctive of *Sum*, *Possum*, and *Prōsum*. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses: (a) Commands and Exhortations; (b) Wishes.

290. Learn the conjugation of the tenses of the subjunctive of *sum*, *possum*, and *prōsum*, Paradigms, p. 309 ff. Learn the synopsis of these verbs in all persons and both numbers of the subjunctive. Review all other forms.

291. Study the rules for the *Subjunctive of Command*, for *Exhortations*, and for *Wishes*, Rules of Syntax, 58, 59, 60, pp. 325, 326.

Examples:

Decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mittat. *Let him send the tenth legion to the assistance of our men (lit., for an aid for our men).*

Periculum nē vereāmur. *Let us not dread danger.*

Ille veniat. *May the man come.*

Utinam adesset. *Would that he were here.*

Utinam hās rēs nē vidiissem. *Would I had not seen these things.*

292.

VOCABULARY

condemnō, 1 (con, damnō, 1, inflict loss, condemn; from	flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, bend, turn.
damnum, -ī, n., loss, fine),	(for), fārī, fātus, speak, say
condemn.	(cf. fāma, -ae, f., report,
dēnsus, -a, -um, thick, dense.	rumor, reputation, fame;
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, tough	fātum, -ī, n., fate, destiny).
(cf. dūrō, 1, be hardened).	imitor, dep., 1, imitate.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum
(root *iug-*), *join*.

lac, lactis, n., milk.

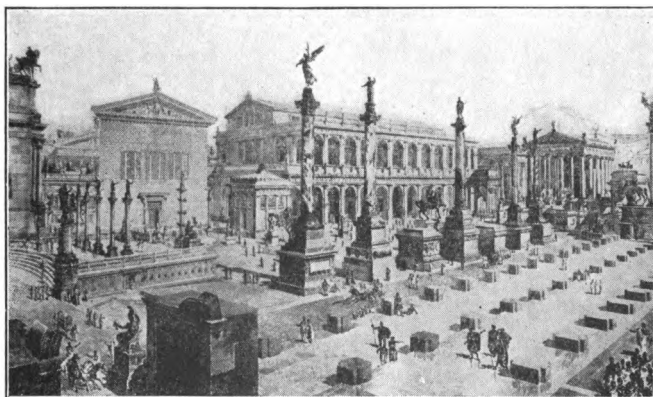
modus, -ī, m., measure, manner, means, way, mode
(*modo*, adv., *just now, only*; **modestus, -a, -um,**
within due measure, modest, discreet; **moderor, dep., 1,**
keep within bounds, re-

strain, control; **modernus, -a, -um,** *of the present manner, modern*).

ōrō, 1 (ōs, ōris, n., mouth),
speak, pray.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. (ōrō), speech,
oration.

pictūra, -ae, f. (pingō, -ere,
pīnxī, pictum, paint),
painting, picture.



ROMAN FORUM RESTORED

293. English Derivatives. Record in the Index Book and in the Derivative Notebook the Latin words in this Vocabulary which yield English derivatives. Discuss in class the English derivatives that illustrate the processes of derivation in Latin itself, as, *oration* from *ōrātiō* from *ōrō* (see pp. 132-137). Drills, tests, oral and written sentences containing derivatives. Dictation.

LESSON LXIX

EXERCISES

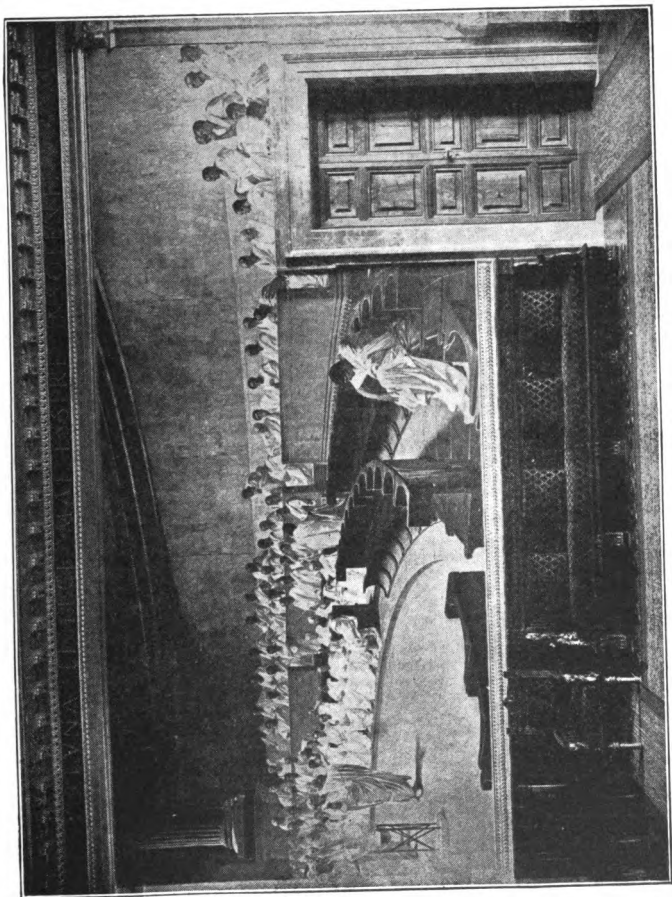
294. I. a. 1. Maiōrēs nostrōs semper imitēmur ac pācem deōs ōrēmus,¹ quī nōbīs omnia dabunt. 2. Illum miserum dē hīs rēbus nē condemnēmus, cui dūri dolōrēs complūrēs annōs accidērunt (ad, cadō). 3. Utinam in dēnsiōribus silvīs essēmus, ut quiēscere possēmus.



ROMAN FORUM IN RUINS

4. Utinam lac nōbīs nē dēfuisset, quī tot milia passuum per agrōs prōgressī erāmus. 5. Utinam tū illās ōrātiōnēs scīrēs quās Cicerō contrā Catilinam Rōmae habuit. 6. Dī immortālēs potentiā suā fāta ipsa flectant !

¹ Rules of Syntax, 18, end.



CICERO AND CATILINE
From a Fresco by Maccari

b. 1. Servi eōs equōs iungant quī magnō pretiō superiōre annō ēpti sunt. 2. Utinam dicere potuissemus nūllum modum inimicis fuisse huius occidendi. 3. Utinam paucae pictūrae essent nobis.

II. a. 1. Would that there were no thick clouds in the sky. 2. Let us pray (to) all the gods and goddesses, who are able to bend even (*etiam*) the hard fates. 3. Would that we had been able to imitate the exploits of our ancestors. 4. Do you understand how (in what way, *i.e. quō modō*) the Romans after the battle could join their forces?

b. 1. Would that we had (*express in two ways*) many books and pictures at home. 2. Let the judges not condemn those unhappy men. 3. Let the slaves bring milk for the children.

LESSON LXX

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*)

Subjunctive in Independent Clauses, *Concluded*: (c) Prohibitions; (d) Potential; (e) Dubitative.

295. Study the rules for *Prohibitions*, the *Potential Subjunctive*, and the *Dubitative* (or *Deliberative*) *Subjunctive*, Rules of Syntax, 62, 63, 64, p. 326.

Examples:

Nōli¹ hōc facere. *Do not do this* (lit., *be unwilling to do this*).

¹ Imperative of the irregular verb *nōlō*, *be unwilling*: *nōli*, *nōlite*, *be you* (singular) *unwilling*, *be you* (plural) *unwilling* (Lesson LXXVI).

Videās. *You may see.*

Vidērēs. *You would see, might see, might have seen.*

Quid faciam? *What am I to do?*

Quid facerem? *What was I to do?*

296.

VOCABULARY

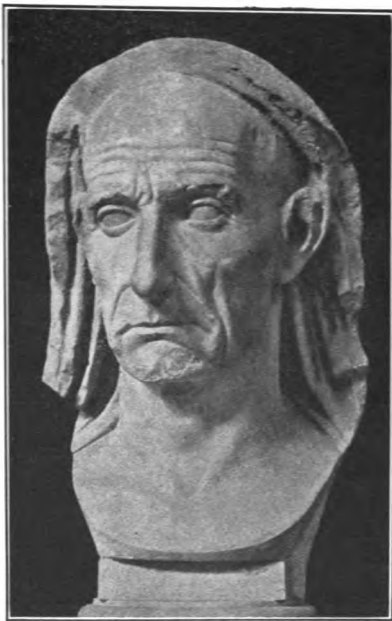
auctōritās, -tātis, f. (augeō), <i>influence, authority.</i>	imāgō, -inis, f., <i>copy, image.</i>
augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctum (cf. auxilium), <i>increase.</i>	lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum, <i>slip,</i> <i>glide.</i>
canis, -is, m., f., <i>dog.</i>	mētior, mētiri, mēnsus sum, <i>measure or mete out.</i>
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, <i>be</i> <i>on one's guard, beware,</i> <i>look out for.</i>	moror, -āri, morātus sum, <i>de-</i> <i>lay.</i>
cognōscō, -ere, cognōvi, cog- nitum (con, nōscō, <i>know</i>), <i>find out, learn.</i>	nūtriō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, <i>nour-</i> <i>ish, feed</i> (cf. nūtrix, -trixis, f., <i>nurse</i>).
equitātus, -ūs, m. (equus, eques), <i>cavalry.</i>	quam, adv., <i>how.</i>
figō, -ere, finxi, fictum, <i>shape, invent, fashion</i> (fi- gūra, -ae, f., <i>form, shape,</i> <i>figure; effigiēs, -ēi, f., copy,</i> <i>image</i>).	reprehendō, -ere, reprehendi, reprehensum (re-, pre- hendō, or prēndō, prehen- dere, prehendi, prehensum, <i>grasp, seize</i>), <i>seize or hold</i> <i>back, restrain, blame.</i>
foedus, -eris, n., <i>league, cove-</i> <i>nant, treaty.</i>	rideō, -ēre, risi, risum, <i>laugh,</i> <i>laugh at.</i>
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, <i>pour; then, scatter, rout.</i>	

297. English Derivatives. Record the Latin words which yield English derivatives. Apply the principles of Latin derivation (pp. 132-137). Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences containing derivatives. Dictation.

LESSON LXXI

EXERCISES

298. I. a. 1. Cavē canem, mī amīce, nūtrītum lacte carneque, quī per agrōs lātē errat. 2. Nōlite, discipulī, ridēre istum senem, quī incertīs (in, *not*, certus) pedibus prōcēdit. 3. Cūr, militēs, morēmur? Opere



SENEX

A Portrait Bust

mēnsō, castra cellerrimē mūniāmus. 4. Nōlī lēgātum fortissimum reprehendere, quī, cum cōpiās hostium fūdisset, cum equitātū nōn subsequēbātur. 5. Cicerō, vir magnā auctōritāte atque virtūte, cognōvit quid Catilīna proximā nocte ēgisset.

b. 1. Quam parvās imāginēs posteris ad imitandum istī scriptōrēs relinquunt! 2. Pācem foedusque cum hostibus faciāmus, ut potentia nostra magnopere augeātur.

3. Multa folia de arboribus lāpsa in silvīs cecidērunt. 4. Nōne est aliqua vīs quae omnia finxit?

II. a. 1. Do not delay, men, but find out into whose territory the cavalry of the enemy has advanced (made a march). 2. Look out for the dog, boys, which, well fed (as he is), guards (*use form of custōdiō*, 4; cf. *custōs*) the fields of the active farmer. 3. The Gauls, after their forces have been scattered, can readily (easily) make a treaty with us.

b. 1. We asked (from) our friend how many copies and pictures he had (*express in two ways*). 2. Let the Roman lady measure out the work with great care, men, in order that she may not increase the labor of the maid-servants. 3. Do not invent reasons for these things, pupils.

REVIEW OF LESSONS LX-LXXI

299. Review orally the Latin for each of the following words, giving nouns and adjectives as usual, and of verbs the principal parts and synopsis in the first person singular, active and passive, indicative and subjunctive: fright, avoid, go to rest, goad on, understand, bury, also, flower, pestilence, cheat, tooth, incredible, desire, eager for, break, sleep, pain, consider, believe, nourish, garment, be silent, touch, make a sound, space, cut, gnaw, sacred, reply, how many, why, setting (of the sun), desert, stretch, contend, shatter, shake, so many, back, whether, bind, • judge, assign, burn, stick, leaf, doubtful, laugh at, picture, speech, pray, measure, seize, how, nourish, milk, delay, measure out, slip, image, join, imitate, speak, fame, pour, league, fashion, cavalry, bend, hard, dense,

condemn, authority, increase, dog, be on one's guard, find out.

300. Give the English for the following Latin words, and name at least one derivative from each, if there



FORUM AT POMPEII

Vesuvius in the Background

are derivatives: terror, arbitror, quiēs, cupidus, intellegō (intelligō), dēns, flōs, fallō, vītō, alō, crēdō, stimulō, sepeliō, pestis, frangō, dormiō, doceō, rīdeō, augeō, reprehendō, canis, nūtriō, caveō, moror, cognōscō (nōscō), fingō, mētiōr, lābor, imāgō, fundō, foedus, pingō, damnō, ōrō, modus, dēnsus, dūrus, lac, iungō, imitor, fārī, flectō, taceō, sonō, sacer, vestis,

tangō, spatium, secō, rōdō, spondeō, tergum, ligō, serō, dēserō, tendō, concutiō, attribuō, ārdeō, haereō, folium, dubius.

301. Explain the following English words, tracing them back, and giving the meaning of the Latin words from which they are derived, with the force of prefixes, if there are prefixes: terrify, quiescent, intellectual, efflorescence, fallacy, infallible, dentifrice (*fricō*, 1, *rub*), trident, cupidity, arbitration, alimentary, coalesce, credit, credulous, incredible, docile, condolence, indolence, dormant, dormitory, fragile, fragment, infringe, sepulchral, stimulant, inevitable, arson, dubious, contribution, percussion, concussion, coherence, rodent, erosion, consecrate, desecration, bisect, secant, vivisection, expatiate, sonorous, dissonance, unison, taciturn, tact, contagion, intangible, investment, indemnity, augment, canine, precaution, notorious, incognito, deflection, affable, fictitious, disfigure, confederate, effusive, imaginary, inimitable, conjunction, relapse, lacteal, mensuration, moratorium, pigment, derision.

302. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of the following words: *quiēscō*, *intellegō*, *stimulō*, *flōrēns*, *fallō*, *dēns*, *arbitror*, *frangō*, *dormiō*, *doceō*, *crēdō*, *alō*, *vestis*, *tangō*, *spondeō*, *secō*, *quatiō* (-*cutiō*), *ārdeō*, *ligō*, *haereō*, *folium*, *rideō*, *nūtriō*, *orō*, *iungō*, *moror*, *lābor*, *fundō*, *foedus*, *figō*, *caveō*, *augeō*, *imitor*, *flectō*, *damnō*.

303. Classify as parts of speech and define the following words, giving the Latin words, with mean-

ings, from which they are derived: alimony, incredulity, arbitrary, intelligence, acquiescence, stimulant, ardent, superintendent, corrosion, inherent, ligature, intersect, divest, precaution, picturesque, federation, effigy, confusion, collapse, nutriment, ridiculous.

304. Discussion of difficult English words, apparently derived from Latin words in Lessons LX-LXX, met by pupils in their school work, and noted down at the time. Dictation.

305. Give imperatives, with their meanings, of **sum**, **prōsum**, **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, active and passive. Give gerunds, gerundives, and supines. Conjugate the present, past, perfect, and past perfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**. How are the tenses of the subjunctive of deponent verbs conjugated? Illustrate in the case of **mīror**, **vereor**, **sequor**, **patior**, and **largior**. How do deponents form imperatives, gerunds, gerundives, and supines? Illustrate in the case of the deponents just mentioned.

306. Conjugate the present, past, perfect, and past perfect subjunctive of **sum**, **possum**, and **prōsum**. Give the synopsis in the first person singular of the above verbs, and of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, active and passive, throughout the indicative and subjunctive; continue the synopsis of each of these verbs through the imperative, infinitives, participles, gerund, gerundive, and supine. In the same way give the synopsis of **mīror**, **vereor**, **sequor**, **patior**, and **largior**.

307. Explain the use of the imperative in Latin. How are the gerund, gerundive, and supine used? Give examples. Give the rule for *Harmony of Tenses*; for *Indirect Questions*. Explain the use of *Cum Temporal*. Give examples. Give the rule for *Subjunctive of Command*; for *Exhortations*. Explain how wishes are expressed in Latin. Give examples. When may *utinam* be omitted? Give rules for the *Potential* and *Dubitative Subjunctives*. What is a *prohibition*? How may prohibitions be expressed in Latin? Give examples. Give the literal meaning of *nōli* and *nōlite*. What is the rule for *Pure Clauses of Purpose*? Give two examples.

READING LESSON, TOO CLEVER, p. 217.

LESSON LXXII

FERŌ. CAUSAL CLAUSES

Ferō and Its Compounds. *Cum Causal*. *Quod, Quia*, and *Quoniam* Clauses.

308. Learn the forms of *ferō*, active and passive, including indicative, subjunctive, imperative, infinitives, participles, gerund, gerundive, and supines, Paradigms, pp. 314–315. Give the synopsis, indicative and subjunctive, active and passive, in first, second, and third persons, singular and plural. Also, give the other forms, beginning with the imperative. Note the imperatives which drop the *e*, namely, *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*, p. 146.



AUGUSTUS

309. Study the rules for *Cum Causal*, and for *Quod*, *Quia*, and *Quoniam* Clauses, Rules of Syntax, 65, 66, pp. 326-327.

Examples:

Quae cum ita sint, since these things are so.

Haedui Caesari grātiās ēgērunt, quod sē periculō liberāvisset. The Haedui rendered thanks to Caesar

because (as they said) he had freed them from danger.

Pācem nōn cupimus, quia nōn est honesta. We do not desire peace, because it is dishonorable.

310.

VOCABULARY

adferō (aff-), -ferre, *adtulī*,
adlātum (ad, ferō), *bring*
to, carry to.

augustus, -a, -um, *majestic,*
august.

Augustus, -ī, m., *Augustus,*
the first Roman Emperor.
cōnferō, -ferre, *contulī*, *con-*

lātum (con, ferō), *bring*
together, collect; sē cōn-
ferre, betake oneself.

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, de-*
sign.

differō, -ferre, *distulī*, *dilā-*
tum (dis, ferō), *bear apart,*
differ, put off.

ferāx, -ācis (ferō), *bearing, fertile, productive.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring, carry.*

iam, adv., *already, now; with the fut., soon, presently; with a neg., no longer.*

inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum (illātum) (in, ferō), *bear in or against; bellum inferre, begin (make or wage) war.*

nātūra, -ae, f. (nāscor), *nature.*

negōtium, -ī, n. (nec, ōtium), *business, employment, activity.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *ease, rest, leisure.*

quālis, -e, *of what kind, of what sort; correlative of tālis.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum (re, ferō), *bear or bring back, report; pedem referre, fall back.*

spērō, I, *hope, expect.*

stultus, -a, -um, *foolish, simple.*

tālis, -e, *of such a kind, such; correlative of quālis.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī (cf. timor), *fear.*

vivō, -ere, vixī, vīctum, *live, subsist.*

311. English Derivatives. Record the words which yield English derivatives. Drills, tests, discussions, oral and written sentences containing derivatives. Dictation.

LESSON LXXIII

EXERCISES

312. I. a. 1. Hostēs, exercitū pulsō, cum frūmentum comparāre nōn possint, ad ferācēs agrōs sociōrum sēsē cōferent. **2.** Gallī, bellō celeriter inlātō, quod nōn intellegēbant quālis nātūra Rōmānōrum esset, cum nihil domī relictum esset, ex finibus ēgrediēbantur. **3.** Barbarī, hōc negōtiō dilātō, cum nōnnūlli nostrōrum in aciem sociīs auxiliō concurrissent, cōnsilia pugnandī mūtāvērunt. **4.** Cōnsiliīs hostium cognitīs, quod

cōpiae nostrae iam coniunguntur, pedem nē referāmus, sed fortiter prōgrediāmur. 5. Negōtiis in aliud tempus dilātis, quaerāmus quam ob rem hī lūdīs nōn fruuntur.

b. 1. Cūr, iuvenēs, nōs, quī multō graviōra passi



PALACE OF THE CAESARS
Palatine Hill

sumus, tālēs hominēs timeāmus? 2. Adferte nōbis, puerī, istōs fructūs terrae, ut omnēs gaudeāmus. 3. Nōne scītis, discipulī, cūr nōs in ōtiō iam vīvere posse nōn spērēmus? 4. Augustus Caesar, quoniam populus nōmen rēgis ferre nōn poterat, nōmen imperātoris sibi dedit.

II. a. 1. Let us betake ourselves from these fertile fields to the top of the mountain, soldiers, since we can no longer endure (bear) the force of the enemy.

2. Because we have many citizens, who differ from each other (among themselves) both in nature and language, we do not hope to enjoy peace and quiet (ease) within our borders. 3. Augustus Caesar, who was called by the Romans commander-in-chief, managed the business (affairs) of the state for forty-one years.

b. 1. Do not bring war upon your native land, men, but live in peace with all your (fellow) citizens. 2. Such men, because they no longer realize how serious (of what sort) the dangers are, will rashly desert the army. 3. These men, who alone survived, will quickly retrace their steps (fall back).

LESSON LXXIV

FĪŌ. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES. CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING

313. *Faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, make, is regular; but it has the imperative fac in the active. (Cf. dīc, dūc, fer.) The passive of faciō is fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.*

314. Learn all the forms of *fiō*, including indicative, imperative, infinitives, and participles, Paradigms, pp. 315, 316. Note that *i* is long, except in *fit* and when it is followed by *-er-*, as in the present infinitive and past subjunctive (*fieri; fierem, fierēs, etc.*).

315. Most compounds of *faciō* with prepositions weaken *a* to *i* in the present system, and to *e* in the supine system. The passive is regular; as,

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum ;

perficior, perficī, perfectus sum, finish.

Other compounds of **faciō** retain **a** in the active, and have **-fiō** in the passive ; as,

benefaciō, benefacere, benefēcī, benefactum ;

benefiō, benefieri, benefactus sum.

316. Study the rules for *Concessive Clauses*, and *Clauses after Verbs of Fearing*, Rules of Syntax, 67, 68, 69, 70, 83, pp. 327, 328.

Examples :

Hōs cum Suēvī finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālīs sibi fēcērunt. *Although the Suevi could not drive these people from their territory, still they made them tributary to themselves.*

Quamquam multī adsunt. *Although many are present.*

Quamvis malī illī fuissent. *However bad they might have been.*

Timēmus nē hostēs veniant. *We fear that (or lest) the enemy will come.*

Timēmus ut¹ amīcī veniant. *We fear (that) our friends will not come.*

317.

VOCABULARY

inānis, ināne, empty, useless.

littera, -ae, f. (linō, -ere,

lēvi, litum, daub, besmear),

letter of the alphabet; pl., an epistle.

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, mourn, lament.

medeor, -ērī, cure (medicus,

-ī, m., a physician).

mergō, -ere, mersi, mersum,

sink, immerse, drown, overwhelm.

morbus, -ī, m., sickness, disease (cf. mors, mortis).

nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked.

nēve, neu, adv. (introducing a negative clause containing a command, prohibi-

¹ This *ut* originally meant *how*.

tion, etc.), and not; <i>nēve</i>	(<i>pendeō</i>), cause to hang,
. . . <i>nēve</i> , neither . . . nor.	suspend, weigh, pay.
<i>pāscō</i> , -ere, <i>pāvi</i> , <i>pāstum</i> ,	<i>poena</i> , -ae, f., punishment,
feed, pasture, be the shep-	penalty.
herd of (<i>pāstor</i> , -ōris, m.,	<i>pūniō</i> , 4 (<i>poena</i>), punish,
shepherd; <i>pābulum</i> , -ī, n.,	avenge.
food, fodder).	<i>queror</i> , <i>queri</i> , <i>questus sum</i> ,
<i>pangō</i> , -ere, <i>pepigī</i> (<i>pēgī</i> ,	complain.
<i>pānxi</i>), <i>pāctum</i> (cf. <i>pāx</i>),	<i>simplex</i> , <i>simplicis</i> (<i>sim-</i> ¹
fasten, fix, agree upon	<i>plicō</i> , -āre, <i>plicui</i> , <i>plici-</i>
(<i>paciscor</i> , arrange, bargain).	tum, fold), simple.
<i>pendō</i> , -ere, <i>pependi</i> , <i>pēnsum</i>	<i>tamen</i> , still, nevertheless.

318. English Derivatives. Record the words in this lesson which yield derivatives. Drills, tests, discussions, dictation, etc.

LESSON LXXV

EXERCISES

319. I. a. 1. *Fiēs*, fit, factum est, *fiēbās*, fimus, fiat.
 2. *Medicus*, quī dē gravissimō morbō suī fili certior factus erat, magnopere timēbat ut ante noctem pervenire posset. 3. *Pāstōrem* rogēmus, num gregēs in illis agris iam pāscantur. 4. Ille cum dē morte fili litterās accēpisset, tamen nōn lūgēbat. 5. Quamquam aedificium nūdum ināneque esse vidēbātur, tamen domus rēgis, simplicis senis, vocāta est. 6. Quamquam timēbāmus nē complūrēs nāvēs nostrae ab eis submergerentur, quī frūmentō carneque nōs prohibēre cōnābantur, tamen damnum minimē grave fiēbat.

¹ Cf. *sem-* in *semel* and *semper*, meaning *one*.

b. 1. Catilīna sociique eius, quī ex urbe proficiscen-
tur, ā Cicerōne pūniantur. 2. Quamquam hostēs
nōbiscum pācem pepigērunt, tamen temporibus periculi
summī cūr ab insidiis nōs ipsī nōn dēfendāmus?
3. Ad negōtium perficiendum octō diēs dabantur.
4. Etsī maximās poenās pendēmus temeritātis nostrae,
tamen nēve deīs nēve hominibus querāmur.

II. a. 1. I shall become, you (*plural*) had become,
let it be done, would that we had not become. 2. Al-
though many letters have been sent by the envoys to
the leading men of the state, still we fear that peace
can not be agreed upon. 3. Although these diseases
may seem to be free-from-complications (*simple*), still
let us be on our guard (*against* them).

b. 1. Since those men are unfortunate rather than
(*potius . . . quam*) wicked (*bad*), let us neither punish
them nor complain about them. 2. Although not a
few (*of*) our ships were sunk, still the victory of the
enemy was both empty and without results (*bare*).
3. While you are acting as shepherd (*ablative abso-*
lute), do not fear that the flocks will suffer.

LESSON LXXVI

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ. TIME CLAUSES

Volō, Nōlō, Mālō. Uses of Postquam, Antequam, Dum,
etc.

320. Learn the principal parts and forms of **volō**,
nōlō, and **mālō**, Paradigms, pp. 312-313. Note

especially the conjugation of the present indicative of these verbs. Give the synopsis, as usual.

321. Study the rules for the uses of **postquam**, **antequam** and **priusquam**, **dum**, etc., Rules of Syntax, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, p. 327.

Examples :

Pompeius, posteāquam equitātum suum pulsum vidit, aciē excessit. *When Pompey saw his cavalry defeated, he withdrew from the line of battle.*

Avertit equōs in castra, priusquam pābula gustārent Trōiae. *He turned the horses into camp, before they should taste the grass of Troy.*

Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, *while this was going on among the Veneti.*

Dum reliquae nāvēs convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris exspectāvit. *He waited at anchor till the ninth hour, until the rest of the ships should come together (i.e. for the rest of the ships to come together).*

322.

VOCABULARY

aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze, money; **aes aliēnum,** another's money, i.e. debt.

aliēnus, -a, -um (alius), belonging to another, strange, unfavorable, alien.

aestimō, 1 (aes ; hence, put a money value upon), estimate, think.

avāritia, -ae, f. (avārus), avarice, covetousness.

avārus, -a, -um, eagerly de-

sirous, avaricious, covetous, greedy.

aveō, -ēre, long for, crave ; (cf. **avidus, -a, -um,** eager for, covetous).

existimō, 1 (ex, aestimō), think, believe.

item, adv., likewise.

lēnis, -e, smooth, gentle.

lēniō, 4, soften, make smooth, calm (cf. **lentus, -a, -um, slow, sluggish, pliant).**

lēnitās , -tātis, f. (lēnis), <i>gentleness, mildness.</i>	ascendō , -ere, ascendī, ascēn- sum (ad, scandō), <i>ascend.</i>
lēniter , adv., <i>softly, mildly,</i> <i>gently.</i>	cōnscendō , -ere, cōnscendī, cōnscēsum (con, scandō), <i>climb up, mount, embark</i> <i>upon.</i>
mālō , mälle, mālui (magis, volō), <i>prefer.</i>	dēscendō , -ere, dēscendī, dē- scēsum (dē, scandō), <i>come</i> <i>down, descend.</i>
māteria , -ae, f. (māter), <i>stuff,</i> <i>matter, material, timber.</i>	spargō , -ere, sparsī, sparsum, <i>scatter, sprinkle.</i>
nōlō , nōlle, nōlui (nē, not, volō), <i>not wish, be unwill-</i> <i>ing.</i>	vel (old impv. of volō), <i>or</i> (im- plying choice); vel . . . vel , <i>either . . . or.</i>
portus , -ūs, m., <i>harbor.</i>	volō , velle, volui, <i>wish.</i>
premō , -ere, pressi, pressum, <i>press, press hard, pursue,</i> <i>overwhelm.</i>	
scandō , -ere, <i>climb.</i>	

323. English Derivatives. Record Latin words with their derivatives. Drills, dictation, etc.

LESSON LXXVII

EXERCISES

324. I. a. 1. Vīs, māvultis, nolumus, nōn vīs, nōn vultis, māvult, nōn vult. **2.** Reliquīs item diēbus, Caesar, ubi multa māteria in silvīs caesa est, cum ab hostibus premerētur, in finēs sociōrum sēsē cōferre māluit. **3.** Dum haec geruntur, imperātor equitēs in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere iussit. **4.** Spargite humum foliīs, puerī.

b. 1. Nōlite, amicī, lēniter sine prūdentiā vīvere, neque morārī, dum in aes aliēnum incidātis (in, cadō). **2.** Num eum quī haec facit vel avārum vel inimicum

possumus existimāre? 3. Foedus quam celerrimē fēcērunt, priusquam hostēs proelium committerent. 4. Mihi grātiaē ā senātū aguntur, quod meā prūdentia rēs pūblica liberāta sit.

II. a. 1. We wish, we are unwilling, we prefer, you (*singular*) are unwilling, you (*plural*) prefer, they wish, they are unwilling. 2. When the rest of the timber had been cut (having been cut, *ablative absolute*) the army remained on the banks of a wide river, until the enemy should come down from the higher places. 3. Our ships, driven forward (*use form of prōpellō*) during the whole night by gentle winds, as soon as the galleys (long ships) of the enemy were seen, came to anchor (stood) in the harbor.

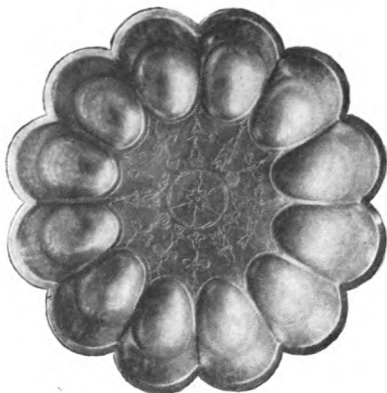
b. 1. These merchants, who were neither avaricious nor unfair (*use form of iniquus, from in, not, and aequus*), while they remained at Rome, were praised by all. 2. Since these places are sacred, we will sprinkle the earth with leaves or flowers.

LESSON LXXVIII

EÖ. RELATIONS OF PLACE. PURE RESULT

325. Learn the principal parts and forms of *eō*, Paradigms, pp. 316–317.

326. Study the rules for *Relations of Place*, and *Pure Clauses of Result*, Rules of Syntax, 77, 84, 85, pp. 327, 329.



SILVER PLATE OF ROMAN
WORKMANSHIP

Examples:

Rōmam ībit. *He will go to Rome.*

Catilīna Rōmā exiit. *Catiline has withdrawn from Rome.*

Rōmae manēbimus. *We shall remain at Rome.*

Rūs ībō. *I am going into the country.*

Haec loca tam frī-

gida erant ut domum redirēmus. *These places were so cold that we returned home.*

327.

VOCABULARY

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitum
(**dē, habeō**), *owe, ought.*

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy.*

indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy.*

eō, ire, īi (īvi), itum, *go.*

exeō, -ire, exiī, exitum, *go out.*

redeō, go back, return.

pereō, -ire, perīi, peritum,
perish.

fraus, fraudis, f., *cheating, fraud.*

frigidus, -a, -um (frigus),
cold, frigid.

frigus, -oris, n., *cold, coldness.*

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, flash, gleam,
glare.

fulmen, -inis, n., *thunder-bolt, lightning.*

furtum, -ī, n., *theft.*

furtim, adv., *like a thief, stealthily.*

gubernātor, -tōris, m. (gubernō), *steersman, pilot.*

gubernō, 1, *steer (a ship).*

iam diū, iam dūdum, iam pridem, *now for a long time (with the pres. and past having the force of*

the perf. and past perf., respectively).	probus, -a, -um, <i>upright, honorable.</i>
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., <i>Jupiter, king of the gods.</i>	probō, 1, <i>approve, test, prove.</i>
metuō, -ere, metuī (metus), <i>fear, apprehend.</i>	pūctum, -ī, n. (pungō), <i>a point.</i>
metus, -ūs, m., <i>fear, dread.</i>	pungō, -ere, pupugī, pūctum, <i>prick.</i>
odium, -ī, n., <i>hatred, grudge.</i>	pūrgō, 1 (pūrum, agō), <i>cleanse, purify.</i>
ōvum, -ī, n., <i>egg.</i>	pūrus, -a, -um, <i>clear, pure.</i>
pauper, pauperis, <i>of small means, not wealthy, poor.</i>	tranquillus, -a, -um, <i>quiet, still, tranquil.</i>
pectus, -oris, n., <i>breast.</i>	ut, conj., <i>so that, that.</i>

328. English Derivatives. Record Latin words with their derivatives, as usual. Drills, dictation, etc.

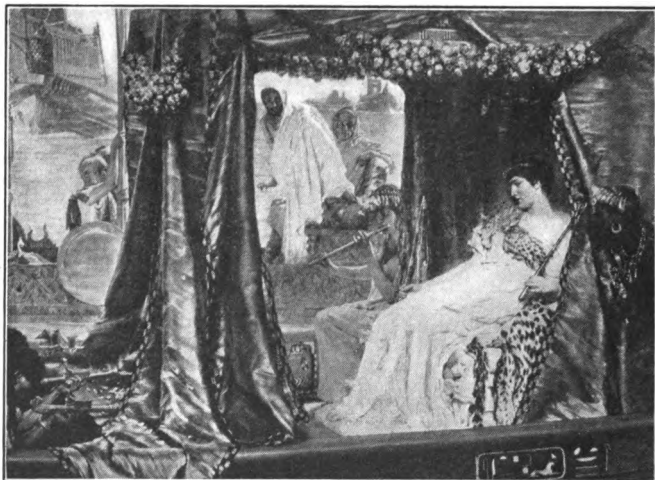
LESSON LXXIX

EXERCISES

329. I. a. 1. Īs, ibit, iērunť, iistī, eat, ī, euntō, euntēs, eundī. **2.** Paucīs diēbus caelum tam frigidum erit, ut nōnnūllī hominēs probī quī rūrī iam diū manent Rōmam redīre velint. **3.** Sed haec fraus odiō maiōre digna esse vidēbātur, cum pecūnia, quae furtō abrepta erat, pauperibus dēbērētur. **4.** Omnēs nautae tranquillō marī nāvem gubernāre possunt. **5.** Iuppiter, rēx deōrum, fulmina iēcisse dīcitur, quod malōs pūnīre vellet.

b. 1. Id quod scribēbās, quamquam omnem metum ex animō expulit, tamen pectus meum acrī dolōre pupugit. **2.** A puerīs alacribus nōs quaerē-

bāmus, quālium avium illa essent ōva, quae ex silvis dēnsis domum rettulērunt. 3. Lēgātī ad castra nōn pācis petendae, sed suī pūrgandī causā vēnērunt. 4. Hostēs tam celeriter prōgrediēbantur, ut nōs opus perficere nōn possēmus.



ANTONY AND CLEOPATRA

II. a. 1. We shall go, you (*plural*) were going, we had gone, they are going, to have gone, let us go. 2. The poor owe much to these worthy men, because they have long since protected (*use form of prohibeo*) them from fraud and theft. 3. Upright men have hearts so free from blame (pure), that they do not fear the thunderbolts of Jupiter.

b. 1. We are informed by the ancients that Jupiter

often struck (*use form of percutiō*) with his thunderbolts wicked men and women. 2. Do you know how many birds' eggs the boys brought home from the woods? 3. The hatred of those whom we believed to be friends struck home to (pricked) our hearts.

REVIEW OF LESSONS LXXII-LXXIX

330. Review orally the Latin for the following words : live, fear, simple, punish, such, foolish, finish, fix, feed, complain, hope, fall back, of what kind, rest, employment, nature, begin war, pay, naked, disease, sink, lament, letter, empty, bear, fertile, betake one's self, plan, wish, be unwilling, prefer, or, sprinkle, climb, rest of, good sense, press hard, harbor, material, gentle, likewise, eagerly desirous, estimate, debt, alien, still, reason, cleanse, prick, approve, breast, not wealthy, egg, hatred, fear, a long time, Jupiter, steer, theft, lightning, gleam, cold, cheating, go, go out, return, worthy, owe.

331. Give the English for the following Latin words, and name at least one derivative from each, if there are derivatives : poena, cōferō, cōsilium, ferō, nātūra, perficiō, pangō, pāscō, queror, pendō, negōtium, quālis, referō, nūdus, morbus, mergō, medeor, spērō, stultus, timeō, vīvō, lūgeō, littera, inānis, volō, nōlō, mālō, spargō, dēscendō, reliquus, dēbeō, dignus, eō, exeō, redeō, fraus, premō, portus, māteria, lēnis, item, avārus, aes, aestimō, aliēnus, frigidus, fulgeō, furtum, gubernātor, iam pridem, metuō, odium, ōvum, tranquillus, pūrus, pungō, probus, pectus, pauper.

332. Explain the following English words, tracing them back, and giving the meaning of the Latin words from which they are derived, with the force of prefixes, if there are prefixes: victuals, intimidate, stultify, desperado, qualify, negotiate, referendum, fertility, dilatory, benevolence, involuntary, transcend, intersperse, lenity, relentless, item, itemize, avaricious, irrational, expurgate, punctuality, expectorate, oval, odious, jovial, gubernatorial, furtively, fulmination, refulgence, refrigeration, defraud, ambitious, exit, circuitous, sedition, transitory, debt, inane, lugubrious, medicinal, immersion, submerge, morbid, denudation, recompense, querulous, pastoral, perfection, penal, impunity.

333. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of the following Latin words: pūniō, perficiō, pāscō, pendō, morbus, inānis, stultus, spērō, negōtium, ferō, volō, spargō, scandō, reliquus, premō, portus, lēnis, avārus, aestimō, pungō, probus, pectus, pauper, odium, ōvum, metus, Iuppiter (Iovis), gubernātor, furtim, fulmen, exeō, dēbeō.

334. Classify as parts of speech and define the following words, giving the Latin words, with meanings, from which they are derived: translation, naturalize, timorous, convivial, revive, inanity, remedial, penalty, avarice, pension, volition, pungent, condescension, meticulous, effulgence, fraudulent, materialism.

335. Give principal parts, synopsis, and all forms of ferō, fiō, volō, nōlō, mālō, and eō. Name with

meanings, important compounds of any of the above irregular verbs, and give the principal parts.

336. Explain the use of *cum causal* in Latin. When are *quod*, *quia*, and *quoniam* used with the indicative? When with the subjunctive? Name the different concessive particles. Why is *quamquam* used with the indicative? Give the *postquam* rule. Explain the uses of *antequam*; of *dum*. Explain the rules for *Relations of Place* in Latin. What is the *Locative*? What are its forms? How do you say in Latin: I am going home? He is in the country? We were at Athens? I went away from Rome? Explain *Pure Clauses of Purpose*; of *Result*. What is the construction after *Verbs of Fearing*?

READING LESSON, THE YOUNG SHAVER, p. 218.

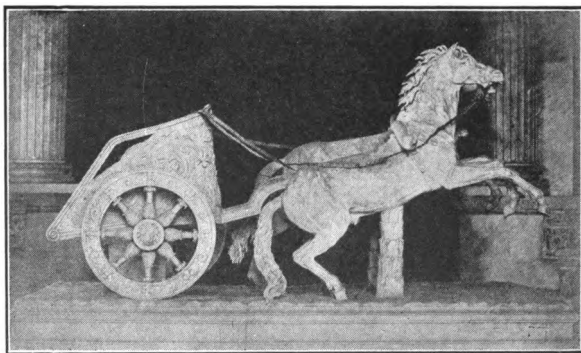
ADDITIONAL LESSONS

LESSON I

PURPOSE CLAUSES

Pure, Relative, and Substantive Clauses of Purpose.
Construction with Verbs of *Fearing*.

337. Study the rules for *Pure, Relative, and Substantive Clauses of Purpose*, and for *Clauses after Verbs*



ROMAN BIGA — TWO-WHEELED CHARIOT

of *Fearing*, Rules of Syntax, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, pp. 328-329.

Examples :

Helvëtiî lëgâtôs misërunt qui haec nüntiärent.
The Helvetians sent envoys to report these things.

Haec faciēbant, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent.
This they did, in order that they might use their swords more easily.

Monet ut omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet. *He warns him to avoid all suspicions.*

Cupiō mē esse clēmentem. *I desire to be lenient.*

Liberōs ad sē addūcī iussit. *He ordered the children to be brought to him.*

338.

VOCABULARY

cauda (cōda), -ae, f., *tail.*

clēmēns, -entis, *mild, merciful, lenient.*

comes, -itis, m. (con, eō), *companion.*

cōsistō, -ere, cōstitī (con, sistō, stō), *stand still, halt.*

cumulō, 1, *heap or pile up.*

cumulus, -ī, m., *heap, pile.*

currus, -ūs, m. (currō), *chariot.*

dēliberō, 1 (dē, libra), *weigh in the mind, deliberate.*

hortor, -ārī, hortātus, *urge, exhort.*

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (in, veniō), *come upon, find.*

libra, -ae, f., *a Roman pound, a balance or pair of scales.*

misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtum, *mix, mingle.*

opulentus, -a, -um (ops), *wealthy, rich.*

(ops), opis, f., *assistance, aid; pl., resources, wealth.*

rota, -ae, f., *wheel.*

rotō, 1, *whirl around.*

saliō, -īre, saluī, saltum, *leap.*

exsiliō, -īre, -siluī (ex, saliō), *leap forward, start up.*

somnium, -ī, n. (somnus), *a dream.*

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.*

sors, sortis, f., *drawing of lots, lot, share.*

sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum, *spread out, strew.*

torqueō, -ēre, torsi, tortum, *twist, brandish.*

unda, -ae, f., *wave.*

vādō, -ere, vāsī, go, walk, advance.

vehemēns, -mentis, *very eager, impetuous, violent.*

vehementer, adv., *violently.*

vetō, -āre, -uī, vetitum, *forbid.*

violentus, -a, -um (vis), *vehement, violent.*

vulgus, -ī, n., *the crowd, common people, rabble.*

339. English Derivatives. Record the Latin words with their derivatives. Drills, dictation, etc.

LESSON II

EXERCISES

340. I. a. 1. Discipulōs alacrēs comitēsque eōrum hortātī sumus, ut rē dēliberātā cognōscerent, cūr



SCENE ON THE APPIAN WAY
Remains of Ancient Tombs

canibus leōnibusque caudae essent. 2. Lēgātus clēmēns equitēs pecūniam, ut opes sibi cumulārent, ūllā vī ā miserō vulgō extorquēre vetuit. 3. Rotīs

currūs frāctīs, equī vehementer exsiluērunt neque nōs potērāmus eōs flectere.

b. 1. Via, quae ad undās maris fert, post tempes-
tātem violentam et arboribus et lapidibus strāta est
neque ūllum iter invenire potuimus, quō ad portum
vāderēmus. 2. Mercātor ventōrum vī somnum capere
nōn potuit et gubernātor metuit, nē nāvis firma
mergerētur. 3. Sortēs manū puerī pulchrī miscēban-
tur, ut omnēs scīrent quem deī periculōsō itinere exire
māllent.

II. a. 1. The merciful judge, after he had deliber-
ated a long time, urged the companion of the unhappy
merchant not to fear the wrath of the common people.
2. Our teacher compelled us to write the names of
all animals which have tails. 3. We endeavored to
find a chariot with large wheels, which even women
and children might use without danger. 4. We will
mix up the lots, in order to find out whether the gods
will give us wealth and long life.

b. 1. Although the ship could have been driven
over the waves by the strong (violent) wind, yet the
cautious (**prūdēns**) pilot forbade us to leave the har-
bor. 2. The general ordered the army, after it had
marched many miles over the paved (strewn) roads,
to halt (*use form of cōnsistō*) and return to the city.
3. The senate and the Roman people will not allow
any one to extort (*use form of extorquēre*) money from
the citizens, in order to heap up riches.

LESSON III

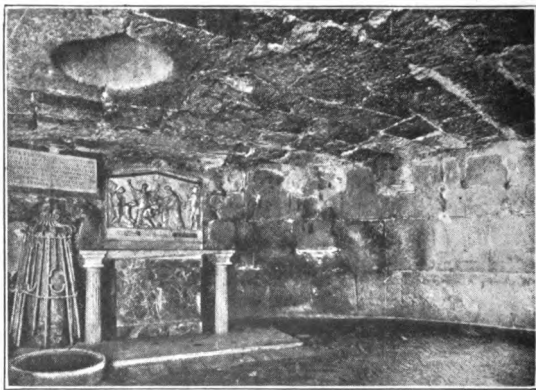
RESULT CLAUSES

Pure, Relative, and Substantive Clauses of Result. Descriptive Relative Clauses. *Quin* and *Quōminus* Clauses.

341. Study the rules for *Pure, Relative, and Substantive Clauses of Result*, for *Descriptive Relative Clauses*, and for *Quin* and *Quōminus* Clauses, Rules of Syntax, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, pp. 329-330.

Examples :

Hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut nēmō effugeret.
The enemy came on so swiftly, that no one escaped.



CARCER MAMERTINUS (LOWER CHAMBER), ROME

Quae insula tam parva fuit quae (equals ut ea) nōn portūs suōs dēfenderet? *What island was so small that it did not defend its own harbors?*

Fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.
They brought it about that the departure seemed much like a flight.

Ita fit ut adsint. *Thus it happens that they are here.*

Sunt quī dicant. *There are some who say.*

Nihil impedit quōminus id facere possimus. *Nothing hinders us from being able to do that.*

Nōn est dubium quīn Germānī fortēs sint. *There is no doubt that the Germans are brave.*

Nec quīn ērumperet prohibērī poterat. *Nor could he be prevented from rushing forth.*

342.

VOCABULARY

bēstia, -ae, f., *beast, animal.*

capillus, -ī, m., *hair.*

carcer, -eris, m., *prison, jail.*

cavus, -a, -um, *hollow.*

cor, cordis, n., *heart.*

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī (dē, ter-
reō), *frighten off, prevent, deter.*

dubitō, 1 (dubius, duo),
doubt.

ferōx, -ōcis, *fierce, ferocious.*

horreō, -ēre, -uī, *bristle, tremble, shudder at.*

horridus, -a, -um (horreō),
bristling, rough, shaggy, terrible.

ita, adv., *so.*

māchina, -ae, f., *machine, structure.*

macula, -ae, f., *spot, stain.*

maculō, 1 (macula), *spot, stain, disgrace.*

mox, adv., *soon, presently.*

nēmō (ne, homō), gen., nūl-
lius, dat., nēminī, acc.,
nēmineī, abl., nūllō (fem.,
nūllā), *no one, nobody.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f. (proficis-
cor), *departure, a setting forth.*

rōbur, -oris, n., *a very hard kind of oak.*

rōbustus, -a, -um (rōbur),
oaken, hard, robust.

tenuis, -e (tendō), *thin.*

tenuitās, -tātis, f. (tenuis),
thinness.

terminō, 1 (terminus), *set bounds to, circumscribe, end.*

terminus, -ī, m., *boundary line, limit.*

texō, -ere, texui, textum,	umbra, -ae, f., shade, ghost.
weave, construct.	vagor, -ārī, vagātus sum,
trūdō, -ere, trūsi, trūsum,	wander.
thrust, push.	vermis, -is, m., worm.

343. English derivatives, as usual.

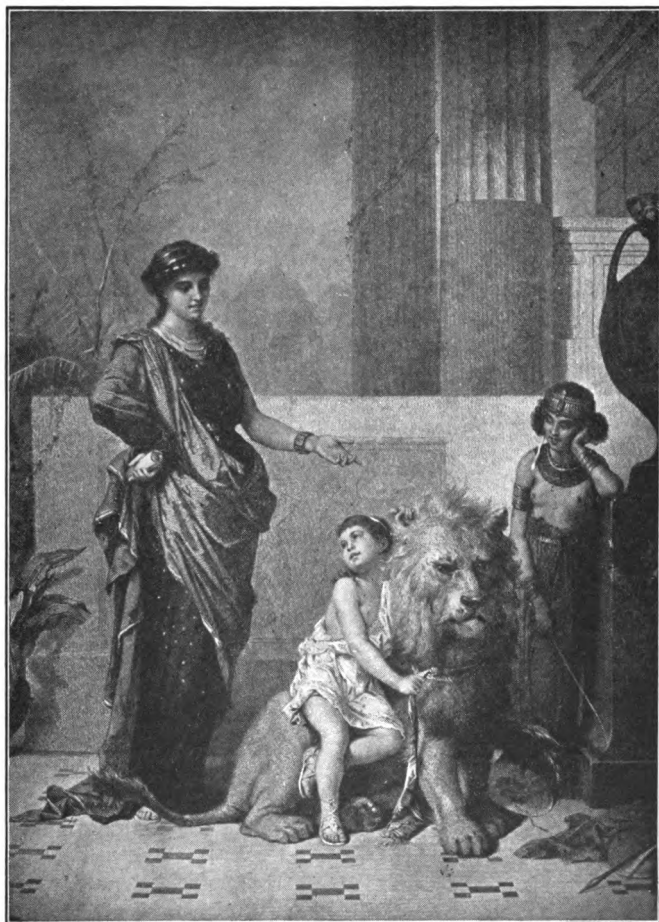
LESSON IV

EXERCISES

344. I. a. 1. Sunt ita multī, ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit. 2. Mox umbra vidēbātur, senex capillō ita horridō, ut nōs omnēs perterriti fugerēmus. 3. Iuvenēs minimē rōbustī dēterrērī nōn potuērunt, quī manibus māchinās cavās tenuēsque, sed gravis, viīs asperīs trūderent. 4. Num dubitās, quī multī vermēs et magnī et parvī in terrā sint, quibus in tergō maculae rubrae sint? 5. Quattuor post hōrīs ventīs magnīs impediēbāmur, quō minus ad terminōs profectiōnem parārēmus.

b. 1. Mox bona māter, quamquam liberī dē leōnibus bēstiisque aliīs ferōcibus multās fābulās audierant, perfēcit, ut nēmō corde terrōre concuterētur. 2. His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent. 3. Multī sunt, quī intellegant magnās opēs patriae nostrae eīs rēbus, quae texantur, cumulātās esse.

II. a. 1. Savage beasts with rough hair have brought it about that no one dares wander in the fields and woods. 2. The thinness of many of the things that



EDUCATION OF A ROMAN PRINCE

were woven was so marked (great) that we were deterred from buying them. 3. The war had become so tedious (long) that all wished it to be ended. 4. Do you (*plural*) doubt that I have seen worms which have white spots?

b. 1. There are some (those) who say that the time will come when there will be no prisons for bad men. 2. Is not the heart so strong (robust) that it performs the labor of a machine? 3. Let us thrust ourselves into the shade of yonder (that) hollow tree. 4. The terrors of war prevented the children from leaving their homes and wandering through the fields, in order to get (seek) flowers.

LESSON V

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

345. Study the rules for *Conditional Sentences*, Rules of Syntax, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, pp. 330-331. Learn the examples.

346.

VOCABULARY

bibō, -ere, bibī, bibitum, <i>drink.</i>	cēseō, -ēre, -uī, cēsum, <i>estimate, determine, think.</i>
bōs, bovis, m., f., ox, bull, <i>cow; pl., cattle.</i>	certāmen, -inis, n. (certō), <i>contest, struggle.</i>
candēō, -ēre, be white, glow.	certō, 1 (certus), make cer- tain, decide by contest; fight,
candidus, -a, -um (candēō), <i>white, shining.</i>	contend, compete.
cardō, -dinis, m., hinge (of a door).	claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum (-clūdō in compounds),

<i>close, shut up, end, conclude.</i>	<i>(lautum, lōtum), wash, sprinkle; cf. luō, wash.</i>
clāvis , -is, f., <i>key.</i>	līmen , -inis, n., <i>threshold.</i>
crepō , -āre, -uī, crepitum , <i>creak, rattle, clatter.</i>	limes , -itis, m., <i>cross-path, path, limit.</i>
crūdēlis , -e, <i>cruel.</i>	liquidus , -a, -um, <i>fluid, clear, running.</i>
crūdus , -a, -um, <i>bloody, raw, not cooked.</i>	mandō , 1 (manus , dō), <i>hand over, intrust.</i>
cruentus , -a, -um, <i>bloody.</i>	rīvus , -ī, m., <i>brook, rivulet.</i>
cruor , -ōris, m., <i>blood (when spilled).</i>	trīumphus , -ī, m., <i>triumphal procession, triumph.</i>
forās , adv., <i>out through the door, forth.</i>	vacō , 1, <i>be empty, open, or unoccupied.</i>
forēs , -um, f. pl., <i>door, gate.</i>	vacuus , -a, -um, <i>empty.</i>
foris , adv., <i>out of doors, abroad.</i>	vehō , -ere, vexī , vectum , <i>bear, carry, convey.</i>
hērēs , -ēdis, m., f., <i>an heir, heiress.</i>	voveō , -ēre, vōvī , vōtum , <i>promise solemnly, vow.</i>
lavō , -āre, lāvī , lavātum	

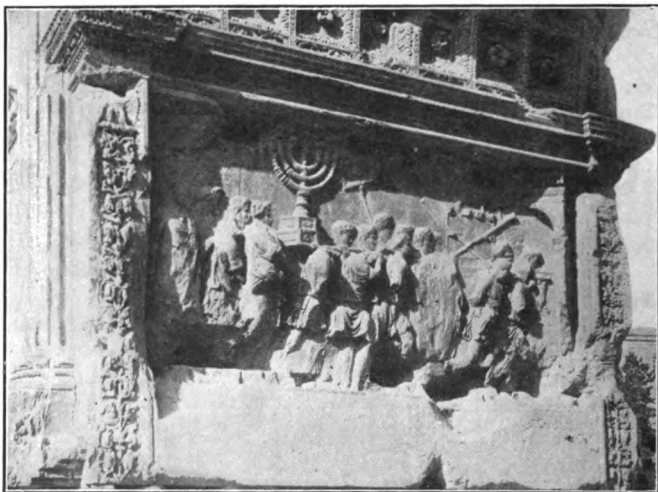
347. Record the English derivatives.

LESSON VI

EXERCISES

348. I. a. 1. Sī forēs in cārdine crepuerint, homō quīdam, omnibus vōbīs nōtus, intrā līmen aedium vacuārū stābit. 2. Crūdēlis homō, sī hērēdem parvum sē furtim caedere posse cēnsuisset, fēcisset. 3. Sī bovēs nostrī aquam pūrā et liquidam bibent, sānis corporibus erunt. 4. Sī tū domum clausissēs atque mihi clāvem mandāvissēs, omnēs istae rēs nunc salvae essent.

b. 1. Sī plūrima dōna mūneraque deīs vōveritis, nōn modo hostēs sine certāmine vincātis, sed etiam per viās urbis in triumphō vehāmini. 2. Vestēs nostrae, sī in rīvīs lāvissēmus, candidae nunc essent.



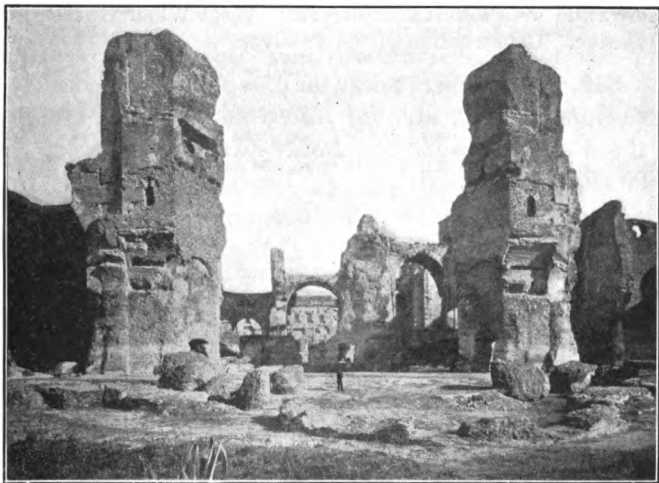
RELIEF FROM THE ARCH OF TITUS

Romans after the Capture of Jerusalem Bearing the Seven-Branched Candlestick in Triumph

II. a. 1. If the cattle had drunk clear water from the brook, we should now have pure milk. 2. If the scouts should find the cross-path which leads through the woods, we would vow gifts to the gods. 3. Even if the house is (shall be) not empty, we will use the key, although the door may creak on its hinges. 4. If the cruel general had not intrusted the letter to the unscrupulous (bad) slave, he could easily have con-

quered the enemy, so that he might have received a triumph at Rome.

b. 1. If the woman had not died before her friend could arrive (*use form of perveniō*) in the city, she



RUINS OF THE BATHS OF CARACALLA

would have made him her heir. 2. If there were not dark (obscure) clouds in the sky, we should now be able to see the moon. 3. The girls would have carried these garments to the river and washed them in the clear water, if they had thought themselves able (to do it). 4. If the foot soldiers should run quickly to the river, they would be able to take the bridge.

LESSON VII

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal Verbs. Construction with **Miseret**, **Paenitet**, etc., and with **Rēfert** and **Interest**. Verbs Which Govern the Dative. Construction in the Passive.

349. Study the rules for *Impersonal Verbs*, for *Paenitet*, *Pudet*, etc., for *Rēfert* and *Interest*, and for the *Verbs Governing the Dative*, Rules of Syntax, 98, 99, 100, 101, p. 331.

Examples :

Mē tui pudet. *I am ashamed of you.*

Eum taedet vitae. *He is weary of life.*

Pauperum nōs miseret. *We pity the poor.*

Nostrā interest. *It interests us.*

Hoc rei publicae interfuit. *This concerned the state.*

Ille bonis nocet qui malis parcit. *He harms the good, who spares the bad.*

Vōbis ignōscitur. *You are pardoned.*

Nōbis persuādēbātur. *We were persuaded.*

Eī invidēbitur. *He will be envied.*

350.

VOCABULARY

adversor, 1 (adversus, ad, vertō), <i>turn against, oppose.</i>	ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum (in, nōscō, <i>not to know</i>), <i>pardon.</i>
facinus, -oris, n. (faciō), <i>crime, misdeed.</i>	imperō, 1 (cf. imperium), <i>command, impose commands upon.</i>
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, <i>favor.</i>	indulgeō, -ēre, -sī, <i>indulge.</i>

interest, interesse, interfuit, <i>it concerns, interests.</i>	parcō, -ere, peperci or parsi, <i>parsum, spare.</i>
invidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum (in, vidēō, look at askance), <i>envy.</i>	pāreō, -ēre, pārui, pāritum, (appear for), <i>obey.</i>
invidia, -ae, f., <i>envy, jealousy,</i> <i>hatred.</i>	pudet, -ēre, puduit, <i>it shames.</i>
irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum (īra), <i>be angry with.</i>	pudor, -ōris, m., <i>shame, modesty, sense of honor.</i>
itaque, adv., <i>and so, therefore.</i>	resistō, -ere, restiti (re, sistō, stō), <i>resist.</i>
licet, -ēre, licuit, <i>it is allowed.</i>	scelus, -eris, n., <i>a crime</i> (against society).
licentia, -ae, f., <i>freedom, license.</i>	serviō, servīre (servus), <i>be a</i> <i>slave to, serve.</i>
miseret, -ēre, miseruit (miser), <i>it pities.</i>	suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum (suāvis, -e, <i>sweet, pleasant,</i> <i>courteous</i>), <i>advise.</i>
noceō, -ēre, nocui, nocitum, <i>harm, injure.</i>	persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum (per, suādeō), <i>prevail upon, persuade.</i>
noxius, -a, -um, <i>harmful,</i> <i>injurious.</i>	tonō, -āre, tonui, <i>thunder.</i>
paenitet, -ēre, paenituit, <i>it</i> <i>repents.</i>	

351. Record Latin words with derivatives, as usual.

LESSON VIII

EXERCISES

352. I. a. 1. Cum scīrēs quid nostrā interesset, cūr nōlēbās aut civitātī servīre aut hostibus fortiter resistere? 2. Sed sociīs persuādeāmus ut nōn modo populō Rōmānō faveant, sed etiam imperātōrī nostrō fidant. 3. Itaque hīs miserīs, quī nēmīnī iam nocēbunt, nē irāscāmur, sed parcāmus, quod facinorum

scelerumque eōs paenitet. 4. Lēgātus mīlitibus imperāvit, nē fēliciōribus sociīs invidērent, etiam sī rēbus nostrīs iam diū adversābantur. 5. Nōlite, amīcī, aut indulgēre aut ignōscere eīs malīs hominibus, quōs neque scelerum neque facinorum pudeat.

b. 1. Utinam patribus ā filiīs ac mātribus ā filiābus pārērētur. 2. Quoniam paulō ante lūcem tonuit, forās exīre nōlūi. 3. Miserī senis, quem in urbe et solum et pauperem vidimus, nōs magnopere miseruit. 4. Nōs omnēs semper suāvēs vidērī māllemus, sī nōbīs liceret.

II. a. 1. Let us spare our enemies. 2. Do not be angry with the bad men, who already are sorry for (repent of) their crimes and misdeeds. 3. Servants, obey your masters. Masters, do not indulge those who serve you, but trust (them). 4. Let us resist evil-doers (those who do wrong), and always oppose any who would harm our state, since it is for our interest to do this. 5. And so the son would not have been ashamed to return to his father's house, if he had been allowed (it had been allowed to him).

b. 1. The king commanded his lieutenant to put aside (*use form of dēpōnō*) all envy, and favor those who a few years before had been his enemies. 2. Would that we were able to persuade those who have long endeavored to destroy the government (republic) to become sincere (true) and loyal (loving of country) citizens! 3. We are not afraid when it thunders.

LESSON IX

DEFECTIVE VERBS

Defective Verbs. Subjunctive of *Proviso*. Different Ways of Expressing Purpose. Construction with Verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting*.

353. Learn the forms of the defective verbs, *coepī*, *meminī*, and *ōdī*, Paradigms, pp. 317, 318. Read about other defective verbs, as *aiō*, *inquam*, etc., p. 318.

354. Study the rules for *Subjunctive of Proviso*, and for the construction with *Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting*; also, review the different ways of expressing purpose, Rules of Syntax, 102, 103, 111, pp. 332, 333.

Examples :

Ōderint, dum metuant. *Let them hate, provided they fear.*

Reminiscātur virtūtis Helvētiorum. *Let him remember the valor of the Helvetians.*

Tōtam causam oblītus est. *He forgot the whole case. They sent envoys to ask for peace.*

(1) *Lēgātōs mīsērunt ut pācem peterent.*

(2) *Lēgātōs mīsērunt quī pācem peterent.*

(3) *Lēgātōs pācis petendae causā mīsērunt.*

(4) *Lēgātōs ad pācem petendam mīsērunt.*

(5) *Lēgātōs pācem petitum mīsērunt.*

He sent scouts to spy.

(6) *Explōrātōrēs speculandī causā mīsīt.*

(7) *Explōrātōrēs ad speculandum mīsīt.*

The Remi sent their cavalry to aid Caesar.

(8) *Rēmī equitātum Caesarī auxiliō mīsērunt.*

355.

VOCABULARY

aiō, *affirm, maintain, say yes; ut aiunt, as they say.*

castigō, 1 (**castum, agō**), *make pure, chastise, punish.*

castus, -a, -um, *pure, undefiled, chaste.*

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *begin.* (The present system is supplied by the forms of **incipiō**, -ere, from **in** and **capīō**.)

forte, adv., *by chance.*

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune.*

inquam, *said I; inquit, said he.*

lassitudō, -dinis, f. (**lassus**), *exhaustion, fatigue.*

lassus, -a, -um, *faint, weary, tired.*

meminī, -isse (**memor**), *remember, recollect.*

negō, 1 (**nec, aiō**), *say no, deny, refuse.*

norma, -ae, f. (*a carpenter's square*), *pattern, rule, precept.*

obliviscor, -ī, **oblītus sum**, *forget.*

odī, ōdisse (odium), *hate.*

optō, 1, *choose, wish for, desire.*

pānis, -is, m., *bread.*

penetrō, 1, *enter, penetrate.*

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people, the masses.*

precor, dep. 1, *pray to, supplicate, invoke.*

prex, precis, f., *prayer (nom. and gen. sing. not found); precēs, precum, prayers, entreaties.*

radius, -ī, m., *spoke of a wheel, rod, ray.*

rēpō, -ere, **rēpsī, rēptum**, *creep, crawl, move slowly.*

sancio, -īre, **sānxi, sānctum**, *make sacred, solemnly establish by law, ratify.*

sānctus, -a, -um (**perf. part. of sancio**), *sacred, holy, inviolable.*

serō, -ere, **sēvī, satum**, *sow, plant.*

sēmen, -inis, n. (**cf. serō**), *seed.*

speculor, dep. 1 (**specula**, -ae, f., *look-out, watch-tower, from speciō*), *spy out, watch.*

spoliō, 1, *despoil, rob.*

spolium, -ī, n., *arms or armor stripped from a defeated enemy, spoil, booty.*

sūmō -ere, **sūmpsī, sūmptum** (**sub, emō**), *take up, assume.*

superbus, -a, -um (**super**), *haughty, proud.*

tardō, 1 (**tardus**), *make slow, check, retard.*

tardus , -a, -um, <i>slow, sluggish, late.</i>	vindex , vindicis, m., <i>defender, avenger.</i>
trādō , -ere, trādidī, trāditum (trāns, dō), <i>hand over, give over, intrust.</i>	vindicō , 1 (vindex), <i>avenge, defend, punish.</i>
	vituperō , 1, <i>censure, blame.</i>

356. Record the Latin words and derivatives.

LESSON X

EXERCISES

357. I. a. 1. Utinam precibus omnibus deōs ōrāre mātūrius coepissēmus, nē plēbis aut nōbīlium patriae nostrae obliviscerentur. 2. Dummodo fortūna nostrī meminerit, inquit, et vestēs et aurum et argentum et alia spolia in manūs nostrās sūmēmus. 3. Eōs, quī in nostrōs finēs speculandī causā missī sunt, duci trādāmus. 4. Neque quisquam, ut aiunt, nōs ōderit, modo vitā castā simus. 5. Gallus miser, quī amīcō auxiliō in dēnsōs hostēs fortiter penetrāverat, cum lassus graviter vulnerātus esset, inter radiōs rotārum cecidit. 6. Cul-pae vitandae causā nē aliōs vituperēmus. 7. Hanc fuisse normam maiōrum nostrōrum scīmus: hostēs superbōs castigāre atque sociōs vindicāre.

b. 1. Caesar, ubi reliquōs esse tardiōrēs vidit, decimam legiōnem auxilium lātum misit. 2. Ex agricolā, cuius equī multā nocte domum rēpēbant, quaesivimus, quot agrī satī essent, ut nōs pānem habērēmus. 3. Vāstandī causā sē isse negāvērunt. 4. Omnēs optāvērunt ut ā senātū lēgātī dēligerentur (dē, legō, *choose, select*), quī foedus sancirent.

II. a. 1. If we had offered prayers to (prayed to) the gods for the purpose of punishing our haughty enemies, they would not have forgotten us, but would have ratified what (those things which) we did. 2. For the sake of avoiding danger, the wounded (and) tired man, who had crawled to the camp, denied that he had taken



RUINS OF A ROMAN BAKERY

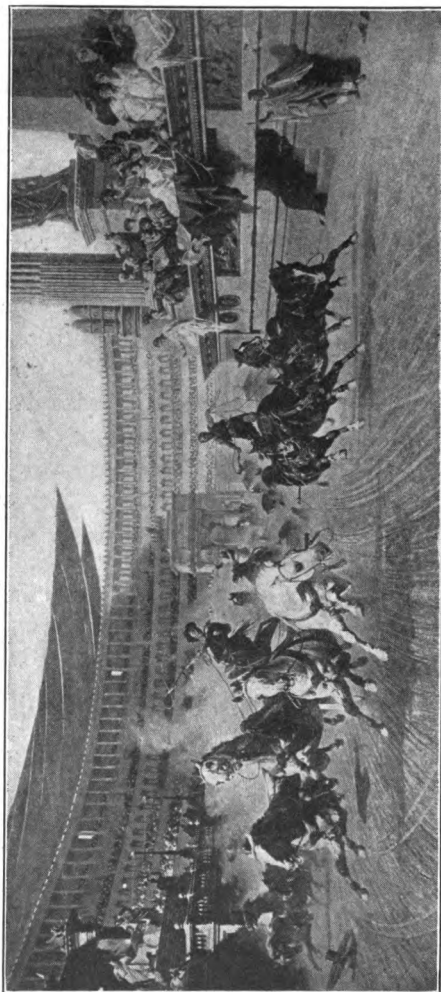
spoil from the dead. 3. "Provided only we remember", said he, "the precepts of our ancestors, the common people will neither hate us nor desire to chastise us."

b. 1. Provided only we begin to make our way (*use form of penetrō*) into the dense forests, we shall be able to find much spoil. 2. If the spokes of the wheels of our chariot had not broken (been broken),

fortune would have given (handed over to) us the victory. 3. The mother said that her little girls had gone to the house of a neighbor to get (*use form of petō*) bread.

REVIEW OF ADDITIONAL LESSONS I-X

358. Review orally the Latin for each of the following words, giving the nominative, genitive, and gender of nouns, nominative forms of adjectives, and the principal parts and synopsis in the first person singular of the indicative and subjunctive of verbs: crowd, forbid, vehement, advance, weave, twist, strew, lot, dream, leap, whirl around, wealthy, mix, deliberate, pair of scales, find, urge, chariot, heap, halt, companion, compel, lenient, tail, worm, wander, shade, thrust, weave, boundary-line, oak, robust, nobody, stain, machine, hinder, shudder at, fierce, doubt, doubtful, prevent, heart, hollow, prison, hair, beast, vow, convey, empty, triumph, brook, intrust, fluid, threshold, cross-path, wash, heir, out of doors, blood, raw, cruel, rattle, key, close up, contest, determine, be white, ox, drink, thunder, crime (against society), misdeed, sweet, persuade, serve, resist, be ashamed, obey, spare, repent, it is allowed, injure, injurious, it pities, be angry with, envy, it interests, indulge, command, pardon, trust, favor, oppose, censure, shun, punish, avenger, hand over, retard, haughty, take up, spoil, spy out, sow, seed, ratify, sacred, crawl, spoke of a wheel, prayers, the masses, bread, wish for, hate, forget, deny, remember, fatigue, said I, fortune, by chance, began, pure, chastise, say yes, say no.



A ROMAN CHARIOT RACE

359. Give the English for each of the Latin words in Additional Lessons I–IX, and name at least one derivative from each, if there are derivatives.

360. Explain the following English words, tracing them back, and giving the meaning of the Latin words from which they are derived, with the force of prefixes, if there are prefixes: divulge, veto, evasion, inundate, contortionist, distorted, extortionate, stratified, substratum, somnambulist (*ambulō*, 1, *walk*), salient, assault, salmon, exult, rotary, opulence, miscellaneous, immiscible, promiscuous, cumulative, consistency, concomitant, caudal, coda, vermin, vermiform, vagabond, vagrancy, extravagance, umbrage, abstruse, intruder, textiles, context, pretext, terminal, exterminate, predetermined, corroborate, immaculate, *deus ex māchinā*, impediment, indubitable, concordant, cavity, excavate, incarceration, capillary, bestial, imbibe, bovine culture, incandescent, exclusion, recluse, decrepitation, hereditary, alluvial, eliminate, liquidation, mandatory, rivulet, derivative, evacuation, vehicle, rotation, defiance, perfidy, interest, envy, irascible, innocuous, license, penitentiary, parsimonious, suavely, detonator, castigation, incipient, fortuitous, lassitude, reminiscence, abnormality, subnormal, oblivious, optional, companion, precarious, radiate, reptile, sanction, disseminate, spoliation, retard, vindictive, inevitable, vituperation.

361. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of the following Latin words: *vādō*, *unda*, *torqueō*, *salīō*, *misceō*, *cumulus*, *comes*, *vermis*, *vagor*, *trūdō*,

texō, rōbur, macula, dubitō, dēterreō, cor, cavus, carcer, capillus, vacuus, rīvus, limen, lavō (luō), hērēs, crepō, clāvis, candeō, bibō, tonō, suāvis, licet, noceō, irāscor, invadeō, interest, vituperō, vindicō, rēpō, radius, pānis, optō, oblivīscor, norma, negō, forte, castus.

362. Classify as parts of speech, and define the following words, giving the Latin words, with meanings, from which they are derived: vulgate, redundancy, inventory, cogency, vermicelli, vagary, protrude, texture, robustness, discordant, concave, capilliform, bibulous, candidate, concerto, seclusion, lavatory, conclave, discrepancy, crudity, subliminal, vacuum, triumphal, votary, diffident, imperious, invidious, obnoxious, illicit, repentance, chasten, abnegation, enormous, oblivion, deprecate, sanctuary, seminary, treason, vindicator, impudently.

363. Give rules for pure, relative, and substantive clauses of purpose. Explain the construction with *verbs of fearing*. After these verbs what is the meaning of *nē*? of *ut*? Give rules for pure, relative, and substantive clauses of result. How are clauses of result introduced negatively? clauses of purpose? What do you mean by *descriptive relative clauses*? How are they introduced? Explain the use of *quīn* and *quōminus* clauses. State, with examples, all the rules for conditional sentences. By what particles is the condition regularly introduced?

364. Explain the use of *impersonal verbs* in Latin. Explain the construction with *paenitet*, *pudet*, etc..

and with **interest** and **rēfert**. How do you say: It is for my interest? Give the list of verbs governing the dative. How are these verbs used in the passive? How do you say: I am obeyed?

365. What are *defective verbs*? Name the most important ones. Give the forms in use of **ōdī**, **meminī**, and **coepī**. Give the forms of a few other defective verbs. Give eight different ways of expressing purpose. Explain, and give examples.

366. Review the indicative and subjunctive of all the irregular verbs, and the subjunctive of the regular verbs of the four conjugations. Also review infinitives, participles, gerundives, gerunds, supines, and imperatives, active and passive, of both regular and irregular verbs. What is the imperative of **meminī**?

READING LESSON, THE TOUCH OF GOLD, p. 218.

LESSON XI

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF AGENT

367. Study the rule for the *Active and Passive Periphrastic Conjugations*, Rules of Syntax, 104, p. 332. Note that the present of **sum** is used for the present tense of the periphrastic form, the past for the past, the future for the future, the present infinitive of **sum** for the present infinitive of the periphrastic, etc. Note, also, that in the active periphrastic the future active participle, and in the passive periphrastic the

gerundive, agree with the subject in gender, number, and case, Paradigms, pp. 307, 308.

368. Study the rule for the *Dative of Agent*, Rules of Syntax, 105, p. 332.

Examples :

Nōn dubitābam quīn pater ventūrus esset. *I did not doubt that my father would come.*

Omnibus moriendum est. *All must die.*

Mihi eundum est. *I must go.*

369.

VOCABULARY

artus, -ūs, m. (root ar-, join), joint, limb.

cinis, -eris, m., ashes.

crux, crucis, f., cross (an instrument of execution).

cubile, -is, n. (cubō), couch, bed.

cubō, -āre, cubuī, cubitum (cumbō, in compounds), lie down.

curvus, -a, -um, crooked, bent.

fateor, -ērī, fassus sum, admit, confess.

cōfiteor, -ērī, cōfessus sum (con, fateor), confess, acknowledge, admit.

figō, -ere, fixī, fixum, fix, fasten, pierce.

trānsfigō, pierce, transfix.

flātus, -ūs, m. (flō), a blowing, blast.

flō, 1, blow.

fōns, fontis, m., spring, fountain.

gelidus, -a, -um, very cold, icy.

gelō, 1, cause to freeze, freeze.

gelū, -ūs, n., icy coldness, cold.

hauriō, -īre, haurī, haustum, draw, drain.

exhauriō, drain off, exhaust.

lignum, -ī, n., wood.

lis, litis, f., a dispute, suit at law.

mordāx, -ācis, biting, stinging.

mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsum, bite.

morsus, -ūs, m. (mordeō), biting, eating, a biting thing.

nefārius, -a, -um, wicked.

nefās, n., indecl. (ne, fās,

<i>divine law, right, from fāri, speak), a crime (against the gods).</i>	<i>tolerō, 1, bear, endure, sustain.</i>
<i>neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum (nec, old word for not, legō, collect, or gather), neglect.</i>	<i>tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, lift up, raise, remove.</i>
<i>siccus, -a, -um, dry.</i>	<i>tremendus, -a, -um (gerundive of tremō), to be trembled at, fearful, frightful.</i>
<i>statim (stō), at once, immediately.</i>	<i>tremō, -ere, tremuī, shake, tremble, tremble at.</i>
	<i>venēnō, 1 (venēnum), poison. venēnum, -ī, n., poison.</i>

370. Record Latin words and derivatives.

LESSON XII

EXERCISES

371. I. a. 1. Patrī crūdeli filiū parvum neglēctum esse cōfītendum erat, cum ipse fēcisset, ut puer miser, cui artūs curvī erant, cubile relinqueret et lignī ferendī causā in silvās exīret, quō ventis flātibusque gelidīs periit. **2.** Aquā ex fonte exhaustā, cinerem lapidēsque multōs iniectūrī sumus, ut locus fiat siccus nēve inde hostēs bibant. **3.** Pilō trānsfixus, mīles quī sibi statim moriendum esse intellēxit, tōtō corpore tremuit atque terram momordit.

b. 1. Servum, quī dominum venēnāre cōnābātur, in crucem sustulērunt. **2.** Lītem finitimō nefāriō inteturī sumus (in, tendō, *bring*), quī bovēs nostrōs abductōs furtim vēndiderit.

II. a. 1. The wicked slave, who had murdered (*use form of interficiō*) his mistress by means of poison, was

about to confess his crime, (just) before he was fastened on the cross. 2. We had to go to bed (lie down) immediately in a small house near the spring, which was then dry, where the icy winds blew across the long neglected fields. 3. We pitied the poor (wretched) old man, whose crooked limbs trembled with age (*senectūs, -tūtis, f.*), as he brought wood from the forest.

b. 1. The boys, having collected the ashes, were on the point of (about to) picking (them up) and throwing (them) into the brook, when a lion appeared under the trees. 2. Have you drunk the pure, ice-cold water, drawn from the spring on the mountain?

LESSON XIII

THE INFINITIVE

Infinitive as Noun. Infinitive Clauses.

372. Study the rules for the use of the *Infinitive as a Noun*, and for *Infinitive Clauses*, Rules of Syntax, 106, 107, p. 332.

Examples :

Dolēre malum est. *To suffer pain is an evil.*

Necesse est omnēs morī. *It is necessary that all should die.*

Senātui placuit lēgātōs mittere. *The senate decided (lit., it pleased the senate) to send envoys.*

373.

VOCABULARY

addō, -ere, -didī, additum
(*ad, dō*), *put to, add.*

cingō, -ere, cinxi, cinctum,
surround, gird.

cōsiderō, 1, *look at closely,*
contemplate, consider.

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead,*
brow, front.

glaciēs, -ēi, f., *ice.*

glomerō, 1, *wind or form into*
a ball, roll, collect or gather
together.

glomus, -ī, m., *ball.*

libēns, -entis, *willing, with*
pleasure.

libenter, adv., *gladly.*

libet, -ēre, libuit (libitum
est), *it pleases, used with*
the dat. of the person.

libidō, -inis, f., *desire, long-*
ing, lust.

lūbricus, -a, -um, *slippery.*

necessārius, -a, -um, *need-*
ful, necessary.

necesse, indecl. adj., *neces-*
sary.

necō, 1, *kill, slay.*

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew, cord,*
string.

nex, necis, f., *violent death,*
murder.

oportet, -ēre, oportuit, *it*
behooves, it is best, ought.

orbis, -is, m., *disk, orb,*
circle.

orbita, -ae, f., *track of a*
wheel, rut.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, *stand open,*
lie open, stretch out.

plānus, -a, -um, *flat, level,*
even.

recēns, -entis, *fresh, new, re-*
cent.

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood.*

sīdus, -eris, n., *constellation,*
star.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

tubus, -ī, m., *pipe, tube.*

turpis, -e, *ugly, disgrace-*
ful.

turpitūdō, -inis, f., *ugliness,*
shamefulness, disgrace.

vicārius, -a, -um (vici),
substituted.

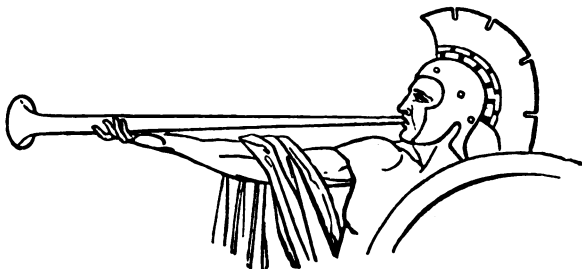
vici (gen.), f., *change, al-*
ternation, interchange; in
vicem, vicissim, adv., *in*
exchange, in turn.

374. Record the Latin words and derivatives as usual.

LESSON XIV

EXERCISES

375. I. a. 1. Rē nōn cōnsiderātā, barbaris placuit eōs necāre, quōs proeliō recentī cēperant. 2. Equitēs vicissim sēsē glomerāre in orbem ante frontem castrōrum necesse erat. 3. Signō tubā datō, fulgentibus



TUBA.

armīs nōs cingī oportet, ut in locis patentibus plānisque cōsistāmus.

b. 1. Nōbīs libēbat virtūte turpitūdinem fugae dēlēre, quamquam hoc nōn sine sanguine fieri poterat. 2. His nervōs adde, ā quibus artūs continentur. 3. Nōlīte, puerī, in glaciē stāre, quod tam lūbrica est.

II. a. 1. It was not pleasing to the soldiers, after the signal had been given (*abl. abs.*) on the trumpet, to cross (*use form of trānseō*) the slippery ice. 2. It was necessary for Caesar in turn, after the cavalry had been gathered together into a circle, to go forward over open, level fields, and to halt before the front of the enemy's

camp. 3. We ought to consider how we may strengthen the sinews of our bodies, if we wish to avoid disease, and add years to our lives.

b. 1. It would be disgraceful for you gladly to throw away (*use form of* **abiciō, ab, iaciō**) your arms and flee. 2. To run on slippery ice is not easy. 3. It is for our interest to go to the city at once.

LESSON XV

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

376. Review the rule for *Simple Indirect Discourse*, Rules of Syntax, 52, 53, p. 324. Study the rules which explain the general principles of indirect discourse for both leading and subordinate verbs, in the case of simple narration, exhortations, prohibitions, and conditional sentences, Rules of Syntax, 108, 109, pp. 332-333.

Examples :

If he should go to Rome, he would see the consul. **Sī Rōmam eat (or ierit), cōnsulem videat.**

He says that if he should go to Rome, he would see the consul. **Dicit sī Rōmam eat (or ierit), sē cōnsulem visūrum esse.**

He said that if he should go to Rome, he would see the consul. **Dixit (or dicēbat) sī Rōmam iret (or isset), sē cōnsulem visūrum esse.**

If Marcus were here, I should be glad. **Sī Mārcus adesset, gaudērem.**

He says (or said) that if Marcus were here, he would be glad. Dicit (or dixit or dicēbat) sī Mārcus adesset, sē gāvīsūrum fuisse.

If he had gone to Rome, he would have seen the consul. Sī Rōmam isset, cōsulem vidisset.

He says (or said) that if he had gone to Rome, he would have seen the consul. Dicit (or dicēbat or dixit) sī Rōmam isset, sē cōsulem vīsūrum fuisse.

If he had gone to Rome, he would have been put to death. Sī Rōmam isset, interfectus esset.

He says that if he had gone to Rome, he would have been put to death. Dicit sī Rōmam isset, futūrum fuisse ut interficerētur.

Set out for the city. Ad urbem proficiscere.

They said that you should set out for the city. Dixērunt ad urbem proficiscerēris.

Do not go home. Nōlī domum ire.

They said that he should not go home. Dixērunt nē domum iret.

Let us remember. Reminiscāmur.

They said that we should (ought to) remember. Dixērunt reminiscerēmur.

REVIEW OF ADDITIONAL LESSONS XI-XV

377. Give the English for each of the Latin words in Additional Lessons XI and XIV, and name at least one derivative from each, if there are derivatives.

378. Write sentences in English containing derivatives of each of the following Latin words: tremō, venēnum, mordeō, lis, gelō, flō, cubō (cumbō), crux,

cinis, turpis, sanguis, plānus, pateō, orbis, necō, lūbricus, glaciēs, cingō.

379. Explain the periphrastic conjugations, with their meanings. Give examples. How is the gender of the future participle or of the gerundive determined? How is the agent expressed? Give an example. Explain the various uses of the infinitive when used as a noun. Give examples. What is the construction with *libet*, *licet*, and *placet*? Give examples.

380. Review orally the Latin for each of the following words, giving the nominative, genitive, and gender of nouns, nominative forms of adjectives, and the principal parts and synopsis in the first person singular, active and passive, of the indicative and subjunctive of verbs: lift up, tremble, poison, immediately, dry, neglect, crime (against the gods), wicked, bite, suit at law, word, drain, freeze, fountain, blow, blast, fix, confess, crooked, lie down, bed, cross, ashes, limb, change, disgraceful, trumpet, star, blood, fresh, flat, please, reconcile, lie open, circle, it behooves (ought), murder, cord, necessary, slippery, it pleases, with pleasure, wind into a ball, ice, forehead, surround, add.

381. Explain the following English words, tracing them back and giving the meaning of the Latin words from which they are derived, with the force of prefixes, if there are prefixes: incinerator, crucial, recumbent, inflation, font, congeal, exhaustion, ligniferous, litigation, litigious, mordant, morsel, nefariously, desiccation, venomous, intolerant, precinct, frontier, agglomerate,

lubrication, internecine, exorbitant, patent, placate, pianoforte, sanguinary, sanguine, turpitude, vice-president.

382. Classify as parts of speech, and define the following words, giving the Latin words, with their meanings, from which they are derived: crucible, incubator, prefix, suffix, deflated, flatulent, afflatus, litigant, remorse, negligée, desiccator, envenom, extol, succinct, effrontery, glacier, conglomerate, lubricant, pernicious, orbit, patentee, aëroplane, biplane, consanguinity.

ADDED LATIN WORDS LEADING TO ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

abundō , 1 (ab , unda), <i>overflow, abound.</i>	binī , -ae, -a, <i>two by two, two each.</i>
adamās , -mantis, m., <i>hardest known substance, adamant.</i>	bracchium , -ī, n., <i>arm.</i>
adulter , -trī, m., <i>adullterer, counterfeiter.</i>	-clinātus, -a, -um, <i>inclined, bent.</i>
apis , -is, f., <i>a bee.</i>	clivus , -ī, m., <i>a hill.</i>
argilla , -ae, f., <i>white clay.</i>	corium , -ī, n., <i>skin, hide, leather.</i>
arguo , -ere, -uī, -ūtum, <i>make clear, show.</i>	costa , -ae, f., <i>rib.</i>
auspiciū , -ī, n. (avis , speciō), <i>divination by observing the flight of birds, sign, omen.</i>	crās , adv., <i>to-morrow.</i>
Bacchus , -ī, m., <i>Bacchus, the god of wine.</i>	cremō , 1, <i>consume by fire; especially, burn (of the dead).</i>
beō , 1, <i>make happy, bless.</i>	cuneus , -ī, m., <i>wedge.</i>
beātus , -a, -um, <i>blessed.</i>	cuspis , -pidis, f., <i>point, the pointed end of anything.</i>
	cyclus , -ī, m., <i>circle; a cycle, or recurring period.</i>

- decet**, -ēre, **decuit**, *it is fitting, becoming.*
decus, -oris, n. (of. **decet**), *ornament, virtue, honor.*
dicō, 1, *proclaim, dedicate.*
ēbrius, -a, -um, *drunk, intoxicated.*
fēcundus, -a, -um (fēlix, fēmina), *fruitful, fertile, abundant.*
ferveō, -ēre, **ferbui**, *boil, ferment, glow.*
fibra, -ae, f., *fiber, filament.*
filum, -i, n., *thread.*
findō, -ere, **fidi**, **fissum**, *split.*
fiscus, -i, m., *basket, money basket, state treasury, public revenue.*
figō, -ere, **fixi**, **flctum**, *dash, strike.*
fricō, -āre, -uī, **frictum**, *rub, rub down.*
frōns, **frontis**, *forehead, brow, front.*
furca, -ae, f., *a fork.*
(fūtō): perhaps connected with **fundō**, *pour. cōnfūtō*, 1, *put to silence, disprove, confute; refūtō*, 1, *restrain, refute, disprove.*
germen, -inis, n., *sprout, bud, germ.*
glūs, **glūtis**, f., *glue.*
glūten, -inis, n., *glue, gum, resin.*
grānum, -i, n., *grain, small kernel.*
gustō, 1, *taste.*
gŷrus, -i, m., *circle, ring.*
hālō, 1, *breathe, emit a vapor.*
īris, -idis, f., *Iris, goddess of the rainbow.*
iocus, -i, m., *joke, jest.*
laxus, -a, -um, *loose, slackened.*
lūxus, -ūs, m., *excess in eating and drinking, luxury.*
meditor, dep., 1, *think or reflect upon, consider.*
mendicus, -i, m., *beggar.*
mentior, -īrī, **mentitus sum** (mēns), *tell a lie.*
mendāx, -ācis (mentior), *given to lying.*
meō, 1, *go.*
mōlēs, -is, f., *mass, dyke, dam.*
mōlior, dep., 4 (mōlēs), *attempt, contrive, plan.*
nectō, -ere, **nexui** or **nexi**, **nexum**, *bind, tie, fasten.*
nōdus, -i, m., *knot, joint.*
oleum, -i, n., *oil, olive oil.*
paedagōgus, -i, m., *preceptor, pedagogue (attendant).*
petra, -ae, f., *rock.*
plangō, -ere, -ānxi, -ānctum, *strike, beat (especially with a loud noise).*
plaudō, -ere, **plausi**, **plausum**, *clap, strike, applaud.*
poliō, 4, *smooth, polish.*
pompa, -ae, f., *procession, parade, pomp.*

- porcus**, -ī, m., *pig, swine.*
pulmō, -ōnis, m., *a lung;*
pl., the lungs.
ratio, -onis, f., *account, reason,*
plan.
reor, rēri, ratus sum, *reckon,*
calculate, think.
repudiō, 1 (re-, pudet), *cast*
off, scorn, divorce.
rigeō, -ēre, *be stiff, hardened.*
rigidus, -a, -um (rigeō), *stiff,*
hard, rigid.
rūminor, dep., 1, *chew the*
cud.
sagāx, -ācis, *keen-scented,*
keen.
sapiō, -ere, -iī, *taste, be wise,*
understand.
sapor, -ōris, m. (sapiō), *taste,*
flavor.
sāpō, -ōnis, m., *soap.*
scindō, -ere, scidi, scissum,
tear or rend asunder, split,
cleave.
scintilla, -ae, f., *spark.*
sculpō, -ere, -psi, sculptum,
carve out, chisel out.
sibilō, 1, *hiss.*
sinus, -ūs, m., *a fold, the*
bosom.
sōlor, dep., 1, *comfort, con-*
sole.
- splendeō**, -ēre, *shine. be il-*
lustrious.
splendidus, -a, -um (splen-
deō), *shining, glittering, bril-*
liant.
stāgnum, -ī, n., *a pool,*
swamp.
strideō, -ēre, strīdi, *make a*
harsh, shrill sound.
sublimis, -e, *uplifted, lofty,*
exalted.
sūdō, 1, *sweat, perspire.*
temnō, -ere, *scorn, disdain.*
contemnō, -ere, contempsi,
contemptum, despise, dis-
dain.
tepeō, -ēre, *be lukewarm.*
terō, -ere, trivi, tritum, *rub,*
rub to pieces.
torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostum,
scorch, parch, burn.
toxicum, -ī, n., *poison.*
tundō, -ere, tutudī, tūsum
or tūnsum, beat, pound,
bruise.
tyrannus, -ī, m., *a ruler, cruel*
or despotic ruler.
vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*
vergō, -ere, *bend, verge, be*
situated.
vīrus, -ī, n., *a slimy or*
poisonous liquid, poison.

READING MATTER

THE BAD BOY¹

Albertus, puer ignāvus, quī litterās nōn amābat, magistrum suum saepe vitābat et agrōs pererrābat. At taurus saevus hōs agrōs incolēbat. Ōlim puerum cōspexit. Primō cōstitit atque advenam ferōcibus oculis lūstrābat. Albertus autem effugere cōnābatur. Tum insequitur taurus. Mox miserī puerī tergum vulnerābitur ā cornigerō mōnstrō.

Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:

1. Who was Albert? 2. What did he often do?
3. What savage animal lived in the fields? 4. Did the bull see the boy? 5. What did Albert try to do?
6. Will not the back of the boy be wounded by the monster?

THE BAD BOY (continued)²

Ad lātam fossam, plēnam limō aquāque, quae forte agrum terminābat, miserābilis puer accurrit atque in aquam corpus temere immisit. Aqua quidem nōn erat alta, sed limus profundus membra cohibēbat. Taurus autem, quī periculum aquae magnopere timēbat, vānā

¹ To be read after § 205, p. 98.

² To be read after § 237, p. 122.

irā captivum lūstrābat. Diū haeret Albertus. Sed tandem agricola quīdam agrum forte intrāvit, quī magnō baculō correptō taurum dēturbābat et puerum liberāvit.

Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:

1. To what place did the unhappy boy run?
2. Where was this ditch? 3. Into what did he rashly plunge? 4. Was the water deep? 5. What held his limbs fast? 6. Why did not the bull plunge in?
7. What did he do? 8. Who entered the field at last?
9. What did the farmer do?

THE SPORTING DOCTOR¹

Mārcus medicus, vir benignus sed suae artis omnīnō ignārus, nec causās nec remedia morbōrum intellegēbat. Itaque clientēs plērumque ē vitā discessērunt. Erat autem Mārcus vērator, sēdulus quidem sed imperītus. Canēs equōsque plūrimōs habuit, sed iacula sagittāsque maximē diligēbat. Quondam dum tēla ante portam aedium parat, amīcus quīdam occurrit. "Hodiē saltem, Ō medice," inquit, "tū nihil occīdēs."

Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:

1. Who was Marcus? 2. What did he know about the causes and remedies of disease? 3. What sort of (quālis, -e) hunter was he? 4. What did he have?
5. What did he especially love? 6. While he was get-

¹ To be read after § 269, p. 140.

ting ready his weapons in front of his door, who came running up to him? 7. "You won't kill anything to-day, will you, doctor?"

TOO CLEVER¹

Rōscius, advocātus praeclārus, pūblicōs lūdōs quondam spectābat. Subitō rūsticus quīdam ad eum accurrit. "Dā mihi," inquit, "respōnsum, Ō nōbilis Rōscī. Canis dīvitis vicīnī in meum agrum ingressus est, necāvitque trēs pullōs. Quantam multam² tū dominō canis impōnis?" "Quattuor nummōs," respondit Rōscius. "Dā mihi igitur istam pecūniam," inquit rūsticus, "tuus enim canis erat reus." "Rēs est aequa," iterum respondit Rōscius, "et ego libenter tibi quattuor nummōs dabō. At tū primum mihi numerā decem nummōs, nam nunquam sine stīpendiō dant advocātī respōnsa."

Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:

1. Who was Roscius, and what was he doing?
2. Who came running up to him? 3. "Will you not give me (legal) advice, good Roscius?" 4. "My neighbor's dog has killed five chickens of mine. 5. Won't you impose a fine on him?" 6. "I impose a fine of five shillings." 7. "Your dog did it. So, will you not give me the five shillings?" 8. "But give me ten shillings first, for what lawyers give advice without pay?"

¹ To be read after § 307, p. 163.

² *Multa* (*mulcta*), *ae*, *f.*, *fine*.

THE YOUNG SHAVER¹

Glaucus, puer Graecus quī adultōrum virōrum mōrēs induēbat, et togam virilem vulgō gerēbat et mollēs genās saepe tondēbat. Quondam in tabernam tōnsōris cuiusdam praeclārī incessit, et magnā vōce, "Tū, tōnsor," inquit, "sine morā tondē meam barbam." Tōnsor autem, vir iocōsus, aquam parat; mentum adulēscentulī spūmā albā obdūcit; cultrum acuit; postrēmō ad portam vādīt et cum amicīs sermōnem habet. Primō Glaucus rem patienter tolerābat; tandem iram continēre nōn poterat, sed causam morae postulāvit. "At," respondit tōnsor, "exspectō, dum ista barba tua crēscat."

Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:

1. Whose ways did Glaucus follow? 2. What did he frequently do? 3. Whose shop did he once enter?
4. What sort of man was the barber? What did he do?
5. Why could not Glaucus restrain his wrath? 6. "Will you not shave my face (cheeks) without delay?"
7. "But I am waiting for your beard to grow."

THE TOUCH OF GOLD²

Midās, rēx Phrygiae, quod ōlim Bacchō magnopere placuerat, ēgregiō mūnere ā deō dōnātus est. "Dēlige, rēx magne," inquit deus, "id quod maximē cupis; hoc

¹ To be read after § 336, p. 179.

² To be read after § 366, p. 205.

tibi libenter dabō." Tum vir avārus mīrum dōnum impetrāvit, ut omnia quae suō corpore tangeret in aurum mūtārentur. Prōtinus laetus rēx rēgiam domum percurrēbat manūque vāsa, mēnsās, lēctōs, omnia tangēbat. Inde cum nihil lignī aut argenti in aedibus manēret, grātiās prō tantō beneficiō Bacchō persolvit. Tandem labōre fessus cēnam poscit avidis-que oculīs splendidās dapēs lūstrat. Mox autem ubi piscem ad ōs admōvit, cibus in aurum statim mūtātus est; rēx igitur, cuius in faucibus rigida massa haerēbat, vīnum poscit; idem ēvēnit. Tandem rēx ēsuriēns, cum quicquam nec ēdisset nec bibisset complūribus diēbus, Bacchum maximīs precibus ōrābat. Inde cum rīsū deus fātāle dōnum āmovet.

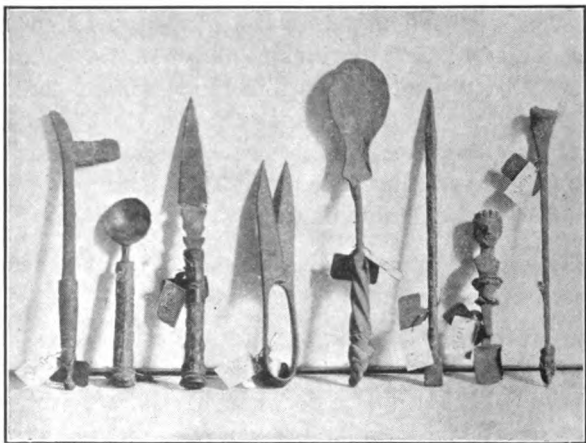
Express and answer orally in Latin the following questions:

1. With what boon was Midas presented by Bacchus? Why? 2. What did the covetous king desire most? 3. What did he do when he had received the gift? 4. When the king brought food and wine to his mouth, what happened? 5. Why did the greedy king pray earnestly to Bacchus? 6. What finally happened?

A ROMAN GIRL

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī filiā minōre dēfūctā, quā puellā nihil umquam fēstīvius, amābilius, nec modo longiōre vitā sed prope immortalitāte dignius vīdī. Nōndum annōs quattuordecim implēverat, et iam illi anilis prūdētia, mātērōnālis gravitās

erat, et tamen suāvitās puellāris cum virginālī verēcundiā. Ut illa patris cervicibus inhaerēbat! Ut nōs amīcōs paternōs et amanter et modestē complectēbātur! Ut nūtricēs, ut paedagōgōs, ut praeceptōrēs prō suō quemque officiō diligēbat! Quam studiōsē, quam intellegenter lēctitābat! Ut parcē custōditē-



SURGEON'S INSTRUMENTS

From Pompeii

que lūdēbat! Quā illa temperantiā, quā patientiā, quā etiam cōstantiā novissimam valētūdinem tulit! Medicis obsequēbātur, sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur, ipsamque sē dēstitūtā corporis vīribus vigōre animī 10 sustinēbat. Dūrāvit hic illi ūsque ad extrēmum nec aut spatiō valētūdinis aut metū mortis infractus est, quō plūris graviōrēsque nobīs causās relinqueret et dēsiderī et dolōris. Ō triste plānē acerbūque fūnus!

Ō morte ipsā mortis tempus indignius! Iam dēstināta erat ēgregiō iuveni, iam ēlēctus nūptiārum diēs, iam nōs vocātī. Quod gaudium quō maerōre mūtātum est! Nōn possum exprimere verbīs quantum animō vulnus accēperim, cum audīvī Fundānum ipsum praeci-5



STREET OF THE TOMBS

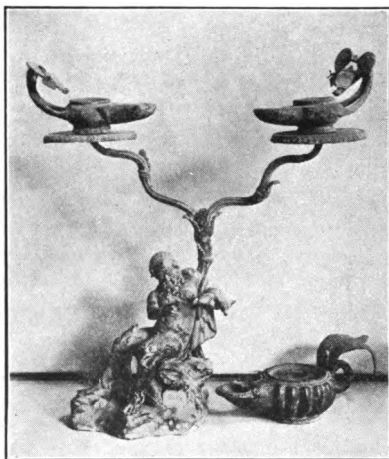
At Pompeii

piētem, quod in vestīs, margarīta, gemmās fuerat ērogātūrus, hoc in tūs et unguenta et odōrēs impen-derētur. Est quidem ille ērudītus et sapiēns; sed nunc omnia, quae audīvit saepe, quae dixit, aspernātur, expulsiisque virtūtibus aliīs pietātis est tōtus. Ignōscēs, 10 laudābis etiam, sī cōgitāveris quid āmiserit.

PLINY, *Epist.* v, 16.

AN ANCIENT GHOST STORY

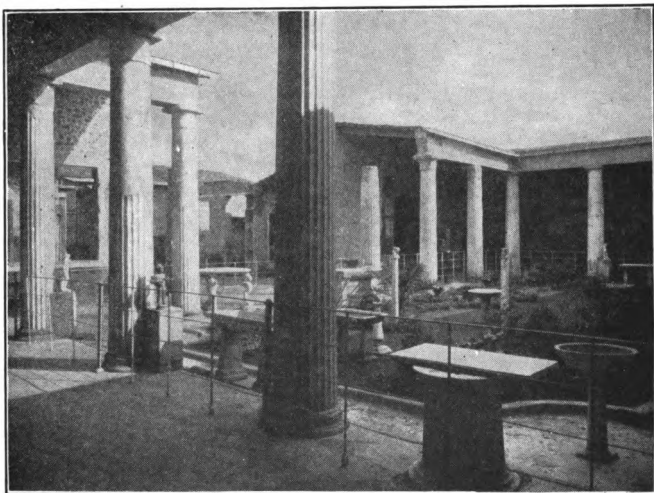
Erat Athēnīs spatiōsa et capāx domus, sed infāmis et pestilēns. Per silentium noctis sonus ferrī et, sī at-
 tenderēs ācrius, strepitus vinculōrum longius primō,
 deinde ē proximō reddēbātur. Mox 5
 adpārēbat idōlon, senex maciē et squālōre cōnfectus, prōmissā barbā, horrentī capillō; crūri- 10
 bus compedēs, manibus catēnās gerēbat quatiēbatque. Inde inhabitantibus trīstēs diraeque noctēs 15
 per metum vigilābantur; vigiliam morbus et crēscēte formīdine mors sequēbātur. Nam 20



BRONZE LAMPS
 From Pompeii

interdiū quoque, quamquam abscesserat imāgō, memoria imāginis oculis inerrābat, longiorque causīs timōris timor erat. Dēserta inde et damnāta sōlitūdine domus tōtaque illi mōnstrō relicta; prōscribēbātur tamen seu quis emere seu quis condūcere ignārus 25
 tantī mali vellet. Venit Athēnās philosophus Athēnōdōrus, legit titulum, auditōque pretiō, quia suspecta vilitās, percontātus, omnia docētur ac nihilō minus, immō tantō magis condūcit.

Ubi coepit advesperāscere, iubet sternī sibi primā domūs parte, poscit pugillārīs, stilum, lūmen; suōs omnis in interiōra dīmittit, ipse ad scribendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit, nē vacua mēns audīta simulā-cra et inānis sibi metūs fingeret. Initiō, quāle ubique, 5 silentium noctis, dein concutī ferrum, vincula mōvērī;



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE

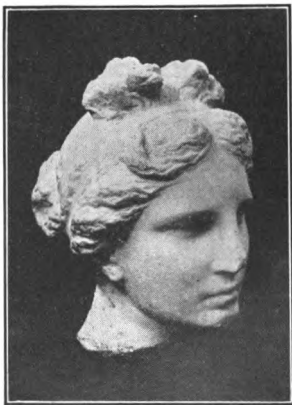
ille nōn tollere oculōs, nōn remittere stilum, sed offi-māre animum auribusque praetendere; tum crēbrēscere fragor, adventāre, et iam ut in limine, iam ut intrā limen audīrī; respicit, videt agnōscitque nārrātam sibi 10 effigiem. Stābat innuēbatque digitō similis vocantī. Hic contrā ut paulum expectāret manū significat rūrsusque cērīs et stilō incumbit; illa scribentis capiti

catēnis insonābat. Respicit rŭsus idem quod prius innuentem, nec morātus tollit lūmen et sequitur. Ībat illa lentō gradū quasi gravis vinculis. Postquam dēflexit in āream domūs, repente dilapsa dēserit comitem; dēsertus herbās et folia concerpta signum locō pōnit.⁵ Posterō diē adit magistrātūs, monet ut illum locum effodi iubeant. Inveniuntur ossa inserta catēnis et implicita, quae corpus aevō terrāque putrefactum nūda et exēsa reliquerat vinculis; conlēcta pūblicē sepeliuntur. Domus postea rite conditis mānibus caruit. 10

PLINY, *Epist.* vii, 27.

DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,
Et quantumst hominum venustiōrum!



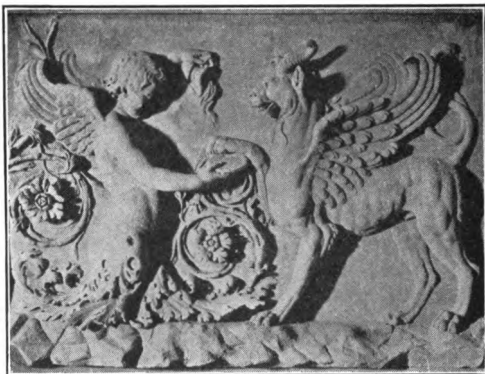
VENUS (APHRODITE)

Passer mortuus est meae
puellae,
Passer, dēliciae meae puellae,
Quem plūs illa oculis suis
amābat; 5
Nam mellitus erat suamque
nōrat
Ipsa tam bene quam puella
mātre,
Nec sēsē ā gremiō illius
movēbat,
Sed circumsiliēns modo hūc
modo illūc
Ad sōlam dominam ūsque
pīpiābat. 10



LESBIA ET PASSER

Quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum
 Illūc unde negant redire quemquam.
 At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae
 Orcī, quae omnia bella dēvorātis;



CUPID FEEDING A GRIFFIN

Tam bellum mihi passerem abstulistis.
 Ō factum male! iō miselle passer!
 Tuā nunc operā meae puellae
 Flendō turgidulī rubent ocelli.

5

CATULLUS, 3.

THE STORY OF ROBINSON CRUSOE

Extracts from the Story of Robinson Crusoe
 Adapted from the Work of G. F. Goffaux

His Early Years

Quondam Londīnī, urbe celebrī apud Britannōs,
 vivēbat vir quīdam, cui nōmen erat Crusoeus. Trēs

filiōs suscēpit, quōrum maximus nātū miles fiēbat atque cum bellum inter Turcās Britannōsque exārisisset, in quō quidem multa ēgregiē fēcit, gladiō per pectus trānsfixus cecidit. Alter filius, quī litterās in gymnasiō discēbat ut causās in forō ageret, cum 5 forte in fēriīs autumnālibus corpore adhūc calidō aquam nimis frīgidam imprudentius bibisset, in morbum incidit atque intrā paucōs diēs exstinctus est. Iam nūllus supererat praeter minimum nātū, quī Robīnsōn appellābātur. Itaque ambō parentēs in eō 10 omnem suam spem collocābant. Sed amor eōrum nōn erat rēctae ratiōnī cōsentāneus. Nam omnia filiolo indulgēbant, quī, cum lūdere quam studēre māllet, tōtam illam aetātem quae bonīs artibus vacāre poterat in ōtiō atque nūgīs cōsūmēbat. 15

Pater vērō optābat ut ille mercātūrae sē addiceret. Quae rēs filiō minimē placuit, quī sē mālle dīcebat per orbem terrārum vagārī, ut multās rēs novās et audire et vidēre posset. Itaque Robīnsōn nauta fierī cōstituit, et ut prīmum annum vicēsimum attigit, parentibus 20 dēsertīs nāvem cōnscendit. Paucīs diēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit.

The Shipwreck

Hic Robīnsōnis cursus maritimus faustissimum initium habuit. Iamque incolumēs fretum Anglicum 25 trānsierant atque in ipsō Atlanticō marī versābantur. Prīmō paucōs diēs ventō reflante nāvis ad Americam abrepta est. Tum vērō plūrēs continuōs diēs felicissimō cursū ūsī sunt. At repente vehemēns tempestās ab austrō oritur. Spūmābant flūctūs et in immēnsam 30

altitudinem surgēbant. Nāvis autem invicta stetit. Sed cum sex diēs atrōx tempestās saevisset, illa tam longē ā viā dēiecta est ut nec praefectus nec gubernātor iam intellexeret quō in locō versārentur. Sed septimō diē, cum primum dilūcēsceret, quidam ē 5 nautis terram cōspicit. Tum nōnnūllī in stegam cōnscendere, vīsūrī quāenam sit terra illa ad quam adpul-sūrī sint. Sed nunc laetitia in summum terrōrem mūtāta est. Nam subitō nāvis in terram impingitur. Quō ictū ei quī in stegā stābant excussī in caput volvun- 10 tur. Cōnfestim flūctūs spūmantēs tantam vim aquae in stegam prōfūdērunt ut omnibus in cubiculum esset cōfugiendum, nē ipsī abriperentur.

Tum miserrimus nautārum orīrī clāmor; aliī dēspērantēs sibi crīnēs āvellere, aliī stupefactī iacēre. Re- 15 pente exclāmant nāvem dehīscere. Itaque in stegam omnēs accurrere et in dēmissam scapham quam celerimē dēsilīre. Mox autem ingēns flūctus ad scapham volvi, instar montis, quō cōspectū omnēs obstupēscere, rēmōsque dīmittere. Nunc, nunc instat pericu- 20 lum. Aquae mōns scapham adsequitur subvertitque. Tum omnēs ūniversī hauriuntur.

The Island

Fēlicī fātō contigit ut ingēns ille flūctus quī Robīn- sōnem absorpserat, idem vī magnā reciprocāns homi- nem in terram expueret. Quī cum praeter expectā- 25 tiōnem in siccō versārētur, tum extrēmīs vīribus ūsus est, ut summam in ōram ascenderet. Quō cum per- vēnisset, circumspicere coepit. Ēheu! quālia oculis obversantur! Scapha, nāvis, sociī, omnia dēmersa.

Nihil omnīnō reliquum erat praeter āvulsās tabulās, quae flūctibus ad terram ferēbantur. Cum vērō nihil praeter arbusta, praeter arborēs dēprehenderet neque ūlla vēstīgia unde intellegere posset hanc regiōnem ab hominibus incolī, gravissimum vidēbātur vitam tāli in sōlītūdine dēgere. Mox siti quā ārdēbat torpōrem istum excussit. Quam cum diūtius patī nōn posset, fontem aut rīvum indāgāre coepit et sic vēstīgans occurrit mānanti per herbās rīvulō, quem ille secūtus fontem amoenissimum invēnit, quō valdē recreātus est. Sed iam summō angōre excruciātus famem et ultima sibi ōminābātur. "Pereundum mihi erit fame," sic miserābiler exclāmat, cum forte conversus ecce nōnnūllās in arēnā conchās ostreārum cōnspexit. Ac primō quidem illās nōn sine difficultāte aperuit; sed acūtō silice insertō perfēcit ut circiter trīgintā ostreis teneris dēvorātis ventrem paululum plācāret. Tum in montem aegrē, quoniam erat satis excelsus, ascendit unde quam lātissimē circumspicere posset. Sed quantus terror cor eius invāsīt, cum sē esse in insulā vīdisset neque ūllam omnīnō terram appārere praeter trēs parvās insulās, quae, spatiō aliquot mīlium passuum interiectō, ex aequare ēminēbant. "Heu! mē miserum!" sic est locūtus manibus ad caelum sublātis. "Nunquam igitur parentēs revīsam, quī mē mortuum esse arbitrābuntur. Nunquam culpaē meae veniam exōrāre licēbit."

Ita locūtus monte dēscendit atque quaerēbat ubi tūtō noctem exigere posset. Diū autem frūstrā indāgāvit; tandem ad ēdiōriem locum pervēnit ex adversā 30 parte, instar mūrī praeruptum.

He Captures a Llama

Nōnnūllis post diēbus Crusoeus primā lūce surrēxit atque ad vēnandum sēsē accinxit. Secūri instrūctus et laqueō quem ad lāmās inrētiendās cōnfecerat, umbellamque manū tenēns in viam sē contulit.

Summum adhūc māne erat. Cōstituit igitur ā rēctā 5 viā dēflectere, ut aliās quoque insulae partēs explōrāret. Inter innumerās avēs quae arboribus insidēbant psittacōs mirīs colōribus pictōs cōspicit. Ut ille optābat ūnum ex iīs capere, quem mānsuētum atque socium sibi faceret! Adultī vērō callidiōrēs erant quam quī caperen- 10 tur; pullōrum autem nīdum nūsquam vīdit. Laetus tamen eum locum petīvit ubi lāmam sē exceptūrum spērābat. Itaque sub arbore recubuit et exspectābat quā hōrā trānsire solēbant, cum ecce lāmās accurrentēs ē longinquō prōspicit. Nōnnūllae iam praeterierant, sed 15 longius quam quae caperentur. Ūna tandem ex illis tam prope accessit ut eius collō laqueum inicere potuerit. Quae cum bālāre cōnārētur, Robīnsōn, nē cēterās dēterrēret, laqueum ita contrahēbat ut vōx faucibus haerēret. Capta lāma duōrum pullōrum māter erat, quī magnō 20 Robīnsōnis gaudiō mātris vēstigia secūtī hominem minimē timēre vīsī sunt. Dum vērō ab illō dēmulentur, eius manum lambunt, quasi ōrārent ut mātrem dīmitteret. Quam igitur quamvis relūctantem sēcum abstrāxit atque tandem fēliciter domum re- 25 vertitur.

Quantam nunc laetitiam expertus est! Etenim praeter iūcundissimam istōrum animālium societātem multa alia maximaque commoda inde spērābat. Neque hoc frūstrā. Nam mox discēbat quā arte ex eōrum lānā 30

vestem sibi cōficere, eōrum lacte vesci, atque būtyrum cum cāseō inde parāre posset.

The Parrot

Complūribus post diēbus Crusoeus, cum forte domum rediret, nīdum psittaci invēnit, id quod iam diū optābat. Tum circumspiciēns quā parte facillimē locum invādere 5 possit, suspēnsō pede accēdit. Māter pullis incubāns rōstrō extrā nīdum prōminente vigilābat et aspectū inūsītatae fōrmæ aliquid malī suspicāta oculōs ad periculum adiēcit. Robīnsōn autem per dēnsissimās frondēs scandit manibus retinēns virgulta. Sed quō 10 propius accēdēbat, eō magis crēscēbat sollicitūdō māttris. Ac postrēmō homō adest manumque nīdō inicit, cum āvolat māter atque āvolant adulti iam validiōrēs. Ūnus autem cēteris tardior in manibus haeret. Nunc Crusoeus domum properat, hilarior quam sī thēsaurum 15 nactus esset.

Tum redux quam sollertissimē potest caveam concinnat in quā hospitem novum collocet. Quā quidem iūxtā strātum suum positā, sic laetus recubuit, tamquam sī novum sibi amīcum comparāvisset. 20

Complūribus diēbus postea, dum forte Robīnsōn in silvā ambulat, vōcem audīvit velut caelō dēmissam haec verba prōferentem: "Heus, Robīnsōn!"

Ille perterritus exsilit tōtō corpore contremiscēns et inops cōnsili. Mox iisdem verbis iterum audītis, 25 oculōs in eum locum timidē convertit unde vōx profecta erat. Vidit autem sē vānō metū territum esse, nam vōx illa profecta erat nōn dē caelō, sed dē rāmō in quō cārissimus psittacus insidēbat. Tum vērō metus in

laetitiam vertitur, quod causam rei invēnisset. Manum psittacō porrigit; ille dēvolat, dumque mūtuis alter alterum blanditiis excipit, psittacus dictatam salutatiōnem iterābat.

He Explores the Island. Cannibals

Forte tandem Crusoeus in animō volvēbat sē, quam-5
quam iam diū in insulā habitāret, nihil nisi minimam
partem adhūc explōrāsse. Sibi obiēcit ut vitium animi
timōrem istum, quō impeditus tōtam insulam nōndum
peragrārat. "Sī minus ego timidus fuisset," inquit
sēcum, "multās rēs invēnissem quae nunc mihi maximae 10
essent utilitatī." Postridiē igitur ortō solē unō ē lāmīs
victū quattuor diērum onerātō, armīs ipse indūsus
fidentī animō in viam ingressus est. Cōstituit,
quantum fieri posset, litus sequi neque silvestribus
locīs sē committere, nē in ferās incideret. 15

Ac primō diē nihil ei in itinere memorābile accidit.
Sed circiter sex milia passuum cōnfēcit, et quō longius
prōgrediēbātur, eō certius comperiēbat sē in sterilissimā
insulae parte sēdem posuisse. Primam noctem in
arbore ēgit, ut tūtus ā feris esset, atque posterō diē 20
iter persecūtus est. Nec multum viae cōnfecerat,
cum extrēmam insulae partem ad merīdiem attigit.
Solum nōnnūllis in locīs erat arēnōsum. Dum autem ad
linguam terrae in mare prōcurrentem prōgreditur,
ecce pedem retrō fert; tum pallēscere, contremiscere, 25
oculōs circumferre, et subitō haerēre quasi fulmine
ictus. Nam vidit quod hīc sē nunquam vīsūrum esse
spērāverat, vēstigia hominum in arēnā impressa!
Tum ille perterritus undique circūspicit. Audītō

vel levissimō foliōrum strepitū stupet animōque adeō perturbātur ut stet cōsili inops. Tandem viribus collēctis fugam corripit, quasi hostēs ā tergō instārent. At ecce repente substitit. Metus in horrōrem sē vertit. Nam fossam rotundam videt atque in mediō focum 5 ignis exstincti. Circā eum, horrēscō referēs, capita, manūs, pedēs, aliaque corporis hūmāni ossa cōspicit, exsecrātās reliquiās convīvī, ā quō nātūra abhorret. Scilicet isti erant ferī hominēs, *cannibālēs* vel *anthrōpophagī* vocāti, quibus erat sollemnis cōnsuetūdō captivīs 10 mactātis coctisque immānē sepulās celebrāre, canentibus vel potius ululantibus. Sed Crusoeus oculōs ab horribili spectāculō āvertit. Nausea etiam virēs omnīnō ēripuisset, nisi domum tantā celeritāte profūgisset ut vix fugientem fidēlis lāma sequi potuerit. 15

Complūrēs diēs Robīnsōn domī morābātur necque ūllus homō ferus obviam vēnit; ex quā rē satis cōnstābat eōs in illā insulā domicilium nōn habēre. “Vērisimile,” inquit sēcum, “aliā regiōnem hōs incolere unde nōnnunquam hūc veniant, ut victōriās atrō- 20 cibus epulis concelebrent. Itaque, sī ad hanc insulam iterum ibunt, incautum mē ipsum nēquāquam invenient.”

Friday is Rescued from the Savages

Crusoeus domiciliō diligentissimē mūnītō aliquot annōs vītā dēgēbat adeō tranquillā ut nihil memorābile fieret. Cum autem māne quōdam diē serēnō in 25 cymbā fabricandā esset occupātus, ingentem subitō ē longinquō fūmum ascendentem cōspexit. Prīmō quidem aspectū obstupuit, mox autem ad montem spēluncae imminentem ubi domicilium habuit quam celer-

rimē cucurrit ad causam novae rei speculandam. Ubi primum montem cōscendit, magnō cum terrōre quīnque scaphās vīdit in litore religātās atque trigintā barbarōs apud focum magnum truci gestū clāmōreque inconditō chorum agentēs. Unicō tantum pede saltābant; alterum ērēctum in āere librātum habēbant. Vērūm mox Robīnsōn obstupuit atque irātus est, cum duōs hominēs ē scaphīs trahī ad ignem vīdit. Quīdam ex barbarīs alterum captīvum prōsternunt prōstrātumque duo aliī adortī corpus laniant ad epulās 10 atrōcēs instruendās. Interim stābat alter captīvus dōnec ipse quoque mactārētur. Quī autem, dum quisque intentōs oculōs in cruciātum lacerātiōnemque tenet, subitō vinculis ruptis sē lētō ēripuit atque citātissimō cursū in eam partem contendit quam Robīnsōn incolēbat. Ille vērō exsultat, cum captīvum aliquō spatiō persequentēs superantem videt; inde tōtō corpore contremīscit, cum cūctōs ad domum suam anteā ignōtam cursum dirigere animadvertit. Itaque ipse hastā correptā monte dēcurrit atque continuō ē 20 silvā ēgressus terribili vōce exclāmat: "Siste gradum!" At ille aspectū Robīnsōnis pellibus horridī obstupuit atque aliquem esse suprā hūmānam condiōnem ratus, incertus erat utrum sē ei ad pedēs prōiceret, an potius fugam persequerētur. Vērūm Crusoeus manū significat 25 sē adesse dēfēnsōrem et statim conversus obviam hostibus prōgreditur. Quōrum priōrem, cum iam propius esset, hastā percussum vī magnā dēicit. Alius barbarus quī circiter centum passūs aberat, attonitus stupet. Tum arcum sagittā instruit, quam in Robīnsōnem iam 30 proximē accēdentem intorquet. Illa quidem pectus

eius ferit, sed adeo leviter pellem quam indutus erat strinxit ut corpus ferro esset intactum. Tum Crusoeus priori victoriam ferox et vehementi impetu elatus barbarum prostravit. Deinde hominem respicit cuius vitam servaverat. Primo barbarum ad se vocat 5 significatque ut propius accedat. Hic vero paruit, sed mox prae metu constitit; et pedem nunc profert, nunc retrahit. Cum autem Robinsōn amicitiam suam omni modo demonstrasset, tandem ille progressus supplex in genua procidit atque toto corpore proiecto 10 terram osculatur. Noster autem, qui magis amicum habere quam servum mallebat, quaecumque potuit ratione ei persuadere conabatur se cum ipso iungere amicitiam velle.

Iuvenis erat egregiae formae annorum circiter viginti 15 aetate, colore fuscō, cute nitidā, crinibus nigris, non autem laneis, sed rectis, naso brevi, labiis parvis, dentibus tam albis ut ebur aequarent. Aurēs eius variis conchis pennisque ornatae erant, quibus ille non mediocriter superbire videbatur; nudus ceterum a 20 capite ad pedes.

Itaque, cum hic dies in vita Robinsōnis maximē memorandus esset Veneri consecratus, barbarum quem servaverat Venerdium, vel Anglicē Fridaium, nomine appellare constituit. 25

Diebus deinceps qui sequēbantur Crusoeus inter labores diurnos Anglicam linguam comitem docebat. Qui quidem tam docilem attentumque se ostendit ut brevi tempore maximos progressus fecerit. Mox Robinsōn et socium et amicum sibi comparat. Fridaius 30 autem grato animo erat atque semper honestum,

fidēlem, ingenuum dominō sē prae-buit. Quem Robīn-sōn cārīorem in diēs habuit, ut tandem in eādem spēluncā sēcum pernoctāreum eum paterētur.

The Derelict. Friday Swims to the Wreck. He Finds a Dog, and is Attacked by a Goat

Nocte quādam Robīnsōn sociusque vix ūnam hōram dormierant, cum exortā subitō tempestāte expergē-5 facti sunt. Procella horrendum furit repetitōque tonitruum fragōre terra ipsa concussa tremit. "Audisne, Frīdaī?" ait Robīnsōn. "Heu!" respondit ille, "sī haec tempestās nōs in altō dēprehendisset!" Quibus vix dictīs, repente fragor tormenti bellici sonitum referēns 10 audītur. Frīdaius tonitrum esse putat; Robīnsōn autem prō certō habet sē tormenti sonitum audīvisse, animusque eius et laetitiā et timōre perturbātur. Extemplō ē strātō sē corripit atque taedā ē focō adreptā Frīdaium subsequi iubet. Statim montem cōnscendit atque oculis 15 ad orientem directis subitō laetātus atque simul attonitus fuit! nāvem scilicet permagnam tam plānē et perspicuē cōnspicit, etsī satis longē aberat, ut nihil dubitātiōnis amplius supereset. Quam nāvem ipse magnopere mirātus est. Quamquam enim ea satis longē ā 20 litore distābat, tamen esse vel maximam nāvem intellegēbat quam adhūc vīdisset. Nunc vērō exsultare, nunc iūbilāre, nunc socium amplectī, eumque lacrimāns obtestārī ut et ipse laetārētur. Prīmum altā vōce clāmat, sed frūstrā. Itaque socium quam celerrimē 25 ignem accendere iubet, quem ē nāvī nautae cōnspicerent. Hōc celeriter perāctō flamma brevī tempore altitūdinem arborum aequāvit. Interim Crusoeus ocu-

lōs in nāve dēfigit, exspectāns dum scapha inde dēmissa ad sē tenderet. Quae tamen spēs eum fefellit.

Tandem postquam ignis per aliquot hōrās ārsit, cum nūlla in cōspectū scapha esset, Frīdaius ultrō spondet sē ad nāvem, quamvis longius distet, natandō perventūrum, quī eōs quī in eā vehantur invitet ut ad insulam accēdant. Robīnsōn eum amplexus ōrat nē sē temere periculō obiciat, sed potius vitāe suae cōsulat. Tum Frīdaius vestēs ē strāgulīs cōfectās exuit et rāmō viridī āvulsō dentibus habitō, quem prō signō pācis 10 offerat, in mare alacrī animō prōsilit. Fēliciter vērō ad nāvem accessit. Cum nōndum semel circum eam natāssset, clāmōrem sustulit. Sed ā nullō redditur. Tandem scālās animadvertit ā latere nāvis dēpendentēs, quārum operā nāvem cōnscendit. Tum stegam oculis 15 perlūstrāns aspectū bēstiae ignōtae exterritus est, quae nigra villōsaque erat. Atque ubi primum illa hominem cōnspexit, vōcem prōdidit quālem ille numquam audierat. Mox autem tacuit adeoque mitem blandamque sē praebuilt ut timōrem Frīdaiō dēpelleret. Supplex 20 quoque caudam movēns miserābiliterque ululāns adrēpit, quasi auxilium praesidiumque implōrāret. Itaque cum ūsque ad eius pedēs prōrēpsisset, eam Frīdaius manū mulcēre audet, quō factō illa quidem mīrificē laetāta est. 25

Tum magnā vōce clāmāns stegam pererrābat. Nēmō autem respondit. Cum vērō omnēs rēs admirārētur quae in stegā oculis occurrēbant, dorsō ad locum versō quō dēscēnsus in interiōrem nāvis partem patēbat, repente ā tergō percussus est tantō ictū, ut prōnus caderet. 30 Terrōre percussus sē ērēxit atque cum respexisset

attonitus haesit aspectū animālis satis magnī cornibus curvīs, barbā prōlixā dēnsāque, quod iterum minitanti vultū in pedēs sē ērigēbat, ut in hominem dēnuō impetum faceret. Vērūm Frīdaius clāmōre sublātō in mare praeceps prōsilit. 5

Prior scilicet bēstia nigrō colōre erat canis villōsus, quī hominem secūtus ē nāve sē quoque prōiēcit. Quem cum hic natantem ā tergō audīret, mōnstrum alterum cornibus armātum urgēre arbitrātus, adeō exterritus est ut vix natāre valēret. Parum abfuit quīn flūc- 10 tibus absorbērētur, nec respicere iam audēbat. Cum tamen paululum animum recēpisset, tantā vėlōcitatē trānābat ut vix eum canis sequī posset. Tandem litus attingit atque exanimātus ad pedēs Robīnsōnis sēsē prōiēcit. Canis quoque postea aliquantō ad terram 15 advēnit.

Salvage from the Wreck

Posterum diem tantā cum assiduitate operī impendērunt ut vespere ratem cōnfēcerint. Duplicem arborum seriem partim fūnibus, partim vīminibus tam artē colligāverant ut opus rudī māteriā compāctum 20 tūtissimae ratis speciem praebēret, longitudine circiter vīgintī pedum, lātitudīne ferē eādē. Prudentius illam quoque prope litus cylindrīs impositam cōstrūxerant, quō facilius in mare dēdūcerent.

Atque opportunē aestus primō dilūculō minuere 25 coepit. Itaque sine morā ratem dētrūdunt, ut aquā recēdente velut fluviō ad nāvem scopulis affixam dēferātur. Et mox profectī dīmidiā hōrae parte elāpsā ad nāvem perveniunt. Quibus tunc gaudiis Crusoeus exsultābat, dum ad nāvem ingentem Eurō- 30

pacem accēdit! Sed cārissimī istī Eurōpaeī hominēs, heu! ēvānuerant undisque fortasse obrutī perierant. Omnī vērō spē ad Eurōpam statim redeundi iam sublātā, nihil supererat nisi ut ex nāvī tantam supellectilem quantam posset servāret, quam in propriōs ūsūs converteret. Itaque nāvem cōscendere properat, ut opēs quibus illa onerāta esset explorāret, sī essent incolumēs. Frīdaius autem timōris hesternī nōn immemor dominum in stegā comitārī vix audēbat. Sed illud mōnstrum cornūtum dēbilitātum iacēbat, ut vix 10 surgere posse vidērētur, quoniam trīdium pābulō caruerat. Sed Crusoeus ante omnia cūrāvit ut bēstiam ferē cōnsūptam fame cibō recreāret. Deinde singulis cubiculis nāvis perlūstrātīs multās rēs cōspexit quae quidem apud Eurōpaeōs neglēctae, nunc in Insulā 15 summō erant pretiō. Cadōs nīmīrum integrōs invēnit plēnōs pānis nauticī, oryzae, farinae, frūmentī, vīnī, pulveris nitrātī, globōrumque plumbeōrum et maiōris et minōris modī, tormenta quoque bellica, sclopēta, gladiōs, secūrēs, serrās, terebrās, rādulās, malleōs, 20 māssās ferri, clāvōs, cultrōs, acūs, patīnās, variam supellectilem culināriam ligneam, ferream, stanneam, cuprinam; plēnās tandem cistās vestimentōrum, linteōrum, tibiālīum, calceōrum, infinītāque aliārum rērum cōpiam quās vilēs habēmus, sed quantō pretiō sint 25 tam dēmum intellegimus cum dēsiderantur.

Haec quidem omnia Frīdaius, quālia nunquam antea vīderat, obstupescēns intuēbātur. Tandem Robīnsōnī dēscendere in interiōrem carinam placuit. Quam aquā replētā invēnit, quoniam ibi nāvis male dehīscēbat. Iam igitur diū dēliberantī sēcum quid potissimum

auferret, nunc haec, nunc illa magis necessariā videntur ; itaque saepe reicit quae modo ēlēgerat, aliaque ēligit ipsa quoque mox reicienda. Tandem quae omnium praestantissima vidēbantur, haec sēligit : duo tormenta bellica, trēs cadōs magnōs pulveris nitrātī plēnōs, 5 cum arcīs plumbeārum glandium, nōnnūlla sclopēta et magna et parva, duōs gladiōs bellicōs, duōs vēnāticōs, duplicem vestimentōrum apparātum ā capite ūsque ad calcēs, ūnum sibi, alterum sociō, duās secūrēs, serrās, runcinās, māsās ferri, malleōs, nōnnūllaque alia in- 10 strumenta ; quōsdam librōs, chartae scriptōriae cōpiam, cum ātrāmentō calamisque ; cadum pāne nauticō replētum, carbasī mediocrem cōpiam, caprum. Cum iam mare redire coepisset, uterque ad ratem dēscendit, et cum eam solvissent, lēniter aquā accēdente 15 ad lītus dēlātī opēs servātās in terram dēportāre festinant.

Reliquīs deinceps diēbus illius annī memorābilis Fridaius discere studiōsē cōnābātur quī hārem omnium rērum ūsus esset, atque Robīnsōn ipse patienter 20 et aequō animō hanc cognōscendī cupiditātem semper explēbat. Ūnō diē Crusoeus absente Fridaiō sclopētum complet, ut amicō ostendat quanta sit vīs pulveris nitrātī atque eōdem tempore admirātiōnem eius excitet. Itaque, cum ille iam redisset, falcōnem marīnum 25 cōspiciēns pisce raptō āvolantem, sclopētō repente adreptō, “Attende, Fridai,” exclāmat, “istum dēiciam.” Quibus vix dictīs subitō fragōre dētonat atque avis magna in terram exanimis dēcidit. Quō vīsō audītōque Fridaius in terram prōcidit, quasi ipse quoque 30 occīsus esset. Sed paucīs mēnsibus ēlāpsīs, cum ā

dominō diligenter iam doctus esset, sclopētō et ipse accuratissimē ūtī discēbat.

Battle with the Cannibals

Duo annī iam efflūxerant, cum māne quōdam diē forte Robīnsōn in negōtiō domesticō occupātus ad lītus socium mīsīt quī testūdinem quaereret; hōc enim 5 cibō grātō iam diū carēbat. Ille vērō mox magnā cum festinātiōne rediit et anhēlāns pavitānsque haec sōla prōferre potuit: “Adsunt! adsunt!” Territus Robīnsōn ipse interrogāvit quisnam adesset. “Ō domine! ūna, duae, trēs, sex, scaphae.” Nam numerōs scilicet inter 10 trēs et sex propter agitātiōnem animī reminiscī nōn poterat. Crusoeus quam vėlōcissimē collem cōnscendit atque nōn sine horrōre Fridaium nōn errāvisse agnōscit; ipse enim sex scaphās barbarīs replētās numerat, quās ad lītus tranquillō marī gubernābant. 15 Tum celeriter dēscendit sociūque animō cōfirmatō interrogat num fidēliter strēnuēque cum ipsō stāre velit, sī cum barbarīs sit dēcertandum. “Vīta mea est tua,” respondet ille. “Age vērō,” exclāmat Crusoeus. “Utinam barbarī inhūmāna cōnsilia hīc nōn exsequantur! 20 nunc nōn loquendī, sed agendī est tempus.”

Tum ūnum ē tormentīs fultum rotīs ē vāllō dēdūcit; sex sclopēta maiōra, quattuor minōra, cum duōbus gladiīs prōfert. Abundābant praetereā globīs plumbeis maiōribus minōribusque et pulvere nitrātō. Sic 25 cum hōc militārī apparātū fortiter ad proelium prōgrediuntur. Tum Robīnsōn sociō tōtum cōnsilium bellī exposuit. “Circum montem,” ait, “atque per dēnsissimam silvam eāmus, nē ab hostibus cōspiciāmur. Tum in

arbusculis densis ad litus ferē prōcurrentibus ad eos propius accēdēmus ; cum erimus intrā tēli iactum, subito tormentum bellicum dētonābit, quō barbari, ego equidem crēdō, territi praedā relictā in scaphās cōfugient."

Interim tacito gradū usque ad extrēmam dūmē- 5
torum partem perveniunt. Robīnsōn in aurem comitis insurrāvit ut quam cautissimē post magnam arborem quandam adrēperet rediretque, ut sē certiorē faceret num hostēs inde cōspici possent. Mox Fridaius reversus nūntiat illōs optimē observārī posse circum 10
ignem sedentēs ossaque alterius captivi iam mactātī rōdentēs ; alterum nōn procul ab illis vinctum iacēre ; hunc ex albō genere hominum vidērī et parī neci dēstinātum. Deinde Crusoeus ad eam partem dūmētō- 15
rum prōgressus hiātum mediocrem ē longinquō vix cōn-
spiciendum animadvertit. Collocātum ibi tormentum ita dīrigit ut globus super capita barbarōrum ēmissus nēmīnem laedat. Deinde sociō tacitē significābat ut accūrātē ipsum omnibus rēbus imitārētur quās agentem vidēret. Quō factō duo sclopēta humi pōnit, tertium 20
manū tenet ; idem Fridaius facit. Tum fūnem incendiārium rimulae tormenti admovet. Ignem pulvis concipit, globus ēicitur. Fragōre auditō barbari ad terram prōcidunt, quasi omnēs unā occisi sint. Mox autem terrōre quō primum perculsi fuerant parumper 25
sēdātō, in pedēs sē ērigēbant. Timidi ad scaphās prōfugiant, fortiorēs arma capiunt. Illi vērō tormenti fragōre sōlō exterriti neque ignem neque globum viderant ; terror igitur eōrum expectātiōne Crusoei minor fuit. Cum autem circumspectiōnē nihil animadvertē- 30
rent quō timērent, animōs statim recēperunt. Fugi-

tivī quoque revertuntur, cūnctī horrendum clāmōrem
ēdunt atque saevissimō vultū gestūque hastās vibrantēs
chorum bellicum instaurant.

Crusoeus haeret etiam incertus, dōnec chorō finis
fieret. Cum vērō barbarōs iterum cōnsidere vīdisset 5
duōsque mittī quī captivum album mactandum addūce-
rent, iram diūtius cohibēre nōn potuit. Itaque vōce
submissā sociō praecipit : “ Tū ad dextram, ego ad sinis-
tram. Dī omnēs nōs adiuvent ! ” Hīs dictīs ē sclopētō
globum ipse ēmittit, idem facit Fridaius, quī melius 10
dominō collineāverat. Nam in sinistrā parte trēs tan-
tum in dextrā quīnque prōcidērunt. Ex quibus trēs
interfectī, quīnque vulnerātī erant. Mīra fuit celeritās
quā iam omnēs quī incolumēs erant fugam corripuēre.
Aliī alia in loca aufugientēs immānem eiulātum ēdunt. 15
Robīnson nunc prōrumpere gestit, ut fugientēs perse-
querētur miserumque Eurōpaeum vinculis liberāret.
Sed sānē obstupuit cum nōnnūllōs fugientium rūsus
concurrere et sēsē dēfendere parāre vīdisset. Itaque
quam celerrimē aliud sclopētum corripit. Idem Fri- 20
daius facit atque simul ambō sclopētīs unā ūtuntur.
Hīc duo tantum barbarī occubuērunt. Nōnnūllī autem
vulnerātī scīlicet clāmantēs atque ululantēs instar
āmentium discurrunt, aliī cruentī, aliī vehementer laesi.
Ex istīs paulō post trēs etiam sēmivivī prōcidunt. 25

“ Agedum, Frīdai,” exclāmat Robīnson, dum sclopē-
tum vacuātum abicit, ut tertium replētum corripiat,
“ prōrumpāmus.” Hīs dictīs factō impetū in campum
ambō ruunt atque Crusoeus ad captivum prōvolat. Dum
autem ad illum accēdit, nōnnūllōs barbarōrum fugien- 30
tium animadvertit gradum sistere atque ad pugnam sē

compōnere. Itaque sociō innuit. Quī quidem signō
intellēctō propius accessit sclopētōque ēmissō ūnum
ex illis prōstrāvit. Interim Robīnson cultrō vincula
secat quibus captīvī manūs pedēsque cōstrictī erant.
Tum Anglicā linguā interrogāvit quisnam esset. Captī- 5
vus Latīnis verbīs respondet sē esse Hispāniēsem. Cui
Crusoeus sclopētum gladiumque porrēxit, ut ad pugnam
dirimendam ipse auxiliō esset. Quae arma ille vix
accēperat, cum furōre impulsus bellumque commūne
recentiōre irā gerēns in barbarōs impetum fēcit et 10
dum cēteri ad scaphās sē recipiunt, nōnnūllōs cūctantēs
cecidit. Iam illi vēlīs rēmisque aufūgēre.

Sed noster Crusoeus, quī erat mītissimō animō, per
campum proeliū lacrimāns circumiit, sī cui forte suc-
currere posset. Plūrimī autem expīrāverant; cēteri- 15
que inter manūs eius vīnum vulneribus instillantīs
animam efflant. Vīgintī barbarī mortuī erant neque
īnter victōrēs quisquam quidem vulnerātus erat.

A Synopsis of Events. Crusoe Returns to England

Frīdaius patrem suum invenit. Hispāniēsis suōs
cāsūs nārrat. Cōntiō convocāta. Lēgēs institūtae. 20
Spēlunca. Mōnstrum. Nāvis Anglica adpulsa ad
īnsulam. Quō cāsū. Nautae coniūrātiōne factā nāvī
potītī erant. Magna Crusoeī in praefectum merita.
Spēs liberātiōnis. Fundāta colōnia. Robīnson īnsu-
lam relinquit. 25

Crusoeō fēlicissimus cursus erat ad Londīnium.
Inde patrem suum senem bonā valētūdine gaudēre
audīvit, mātrem vērō, fēminam optimam, iam mor-

tuam esse. Quae quidem rēs gravissimō dolōre eum adfēcit. Cum autem sequente cane et psittacō in umerō insidente in terram dēscendisset, per circumfūsam spectantium turbam in hospitium proximum sē contulit. Inde nūntiō ad patrem missō cūrāvit ut bonus 5 senex ad filium recipiendum cautē praeparārētur, nē scilicet tantae nōn capāx laetitiae mortem occumberet.

Intereā filius per plateās satis sibi cognitās ad patriōs penātēs prōvolat, atque cum domum antīquam pervēnisset, in anplexūs patris gaudiō trepidantis ruit. 10 “Ō pater! Ō fili!” Haec erant sōla verba quae uterque ēloquī posset. Mūtī, trepidī, spīritū interelūsō, alter ē collō alterius pendet, dōnec vīs benigna lacrimārum animum utriusque oppressum levāvit.

NOTES TO READING MATTER

N.B. The first number refers to the page, and the second to the line. By S. is meant *Rules of Syntax*.

A ROMAN GIRL

Page 219. 1. *filia*, ablative absolute with *dēfūctā* ; S. 39.

2. *quā puellā*, ablative with the comparative *fēstivius* ; *quam*, than, omitted ; S. 44.

3. *vītā . . . immortālītātē*, ablative with *dignius*, the regular construction : *more worthy of*.

5. *illi*, dative of possession ; S. 15.

Page 320. 2. *ut*, how.

5. *Quam*, how.

7. *temperantiā*, ablative of manner ; S. 17.

9. *Medicis*, S. 29.

10. *viribus*, S. 8.

11. *hic*, i.e. *vigor animi*.

13. *relinqueret*, result ; S. 86.

14. *dēsideri*, objective genitive ; S. 24. *fūnus*, accusative of exclamation.

Page 221. 1. *indignius*, accusative neuter singular of the comparative of *indignus*, agreeing with *tempus*.

3. *quod . . . quō*, i.e. *To what grief this joy has been changed !*

5. *accēperim*, perfect subjunctive of indirect question, introduced by the interrogative *quantum*, and depending upon *exprimere verbis* ; S. 56.

5. *audivī*, indicative, denoting the point of time at which the event occurred ; S. 57 (1).

7. *impenderētur*, past subjunctive, for imperative in the direct discourse ; S. 108 (near the end).

10. *pietātis est tōtus* : *he is wholly given to fatherly devotion*.

11. *cōgitāveris*, *reflect.* *āmiserit*, *indirect question*, introduced by the interrogative pronoun *quid*, and depending upon *cōgitāveris*; S. 56.

AN ANCIENT GHOST STORY

Page 222. 1. *Athēnis*, *locative*, S. 22.

6. *idōlon*, a Greek form. The suffix *-on* equals the Latin *-um*, as in *bellum*.

9. *barbā* . . . *capillō*, S. 31.

14. *inhabitantibus*, *participle of inhabitō*, used as a *noun*, *inhabitants*; *dative of reference or concern*, to be translated, *by the inhabitants*.

16. *vigilābantur*, *were spent in watching*, i.e. *passed without sleep*.

19. *formidine*, S. 39.

21. *abscesserat*, *indicative*, S. 68.

22. *longior*, *more lasting*. *causis*, S. 44.

23. *dēserta* . . . *damnāta* . . . *relicta*: *est* is understood.

24. *prōscribēbātur*, *was advertised or placarded*.

25. *seu quis* . . . *vellet*, i.e. *in case any one wished*, a future condition thrown back into past time, S. 55, 97.

26. *Athēnodōrus*, S. 5.

27. *pretiō*, S. 39. *suspecta*: *est* is understood.

28. *omnia*, *accusative*; object of the active retained in the passive: *was told all things*, i.e. *the whole story*. *nihilō*, S. 45.

29. *tantō*, S. 45.

Page 223. 1. *sibi*, *dative of reference*: *for himself*.

3. *scribendum*, *gerund*, S. 48.

6. *concuti*, and other infinitives: the so-called *historical infinitive*, or *infinitive of intimation*, used with subject in the nominative, and much like a past indicative.

11. *Similis vocanti*, *like one calling*.

12. *expectāret*, in a *substantive clause of purpose*, following *manū significat*, which is like a verb of *commanding*, S. 81.

13. *cēris et stilō*, S. 29.

13. *capiti*, S. 29: *over the head of the writer*.

Page 224. 1. *catēnis*, S. 9. *idem quod prius*, the same as before.

5. *dēsertus*, the (philosopher thus) deserted; lit., the deserted (man).

6. *diē*, S. 35.

7. *effodī*, S. 82. *iubeant*, S. 81.

8. *putrefactum*, agrees with *corpus*; *nūda et exēsa*, with *quae*, whose antecedent is *ossa*.

10. *mānibus* from *mānēs*, "spirits" of the dead; ablative of separation, S. 8.

DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW

Page 224. 1. *Lūgēte*, imperative.

2. *quantumst*, i.e. *quantum est*. Translate: *all there are. venustiōrum*, comparative of *venustus*, i.e. endowed with more grace than men in general; "*whom the Graces love*" (Cornish).

5. *oculis*, S. 44.

6. *mellitus*, sweet as honey, honey sweet, from *mel*, *mellis*, n., honey. *nōrat*, past perfect for *nōverat*, knew. *suam*, his own (mistress).

7. *tam bene quam*, as well as.

9. *modo hūc modo illūc*, now hither, now thither.

10. *pipiābat*, chirped. Cf. the English *peeped*.

Page 226. 3. *male sit*, plague take you! evil upon you! S. 60.

4. *bella*, pretty, beauteous.

7. *tuā operā*, through your agency, i.e. on account of you S. 19.

ROBINSON CRUSOE

HIS EARLY YEARS

Page 226. 1. *Londīni*, locative, at London, S. 22. *urbe*, ablative, in apposition with the locative, *Londīni*.

2. *cui*, dative of possession, S. 15. *genitive*, S. 20.

Page 227. 1. *quōrum*, partitive. *nātū*, supine in *-ū*, S. 51.

5. *ageret*, *pure purpose*, introduced by *ut*.
6. *corpore*, *ablative absolute*, with the idea of *being understood*, S. 39.
10. *Robinson*, *predicate nominative* with *appellābatur*, S. 18.
12. *rationi*, *dative* with *cōsentāneus*, S. 33.
13. *filio*, S. 101. *mallet*, S. 65.
16. *addiceret*, verb in a *substantive clause of purpose*, completing the meaning of *optābat*, S. 81.
17. *filiō*, S. 101. *malle*, S. 108.
18. *vagari*, S. 34.
19. *posset*, S. 79.
20. *attigit*, *perfect indicative*, to be translated by the *past perfect*, S. 72. *parentibus*, S. 39.
21. *diēbus*, *ablative*, *time within which*, S. 35. *nactus*, from *nanciscor*.
22. *navigandum*, *gerund* with *ad*, S. 48. *vigiliā*, *ablative*, *time when*, S. 35.

THE SHIPWRECK

23. *cursus maritimus*, *voyage*.
 24. *fretum Anglicum*, *the English Channel*.
 25. *versābantur*, *frequentative* from *vertō*.
 26. *diēs*, S. 35. *ventō*, *ablative absolute* with *reflante*.
 28. *cursū*, S. 46.
- Page 228. 3. *ā viā dēiecta est*, *was driven from the course*.
4. *intellegeret*, in a *pure clause of result*, S. 85. *versārentur*, in an *indirect question*, introduced by the interrogative pronoun, *quō*, and depending upon *intellegeret*, S. 56.
 5. *ē nautis*, instead of the *partitive genitive*, because used with *quidam*. This would also be the construction with *cardinal numerals*.
 6. *cōnscendere*, *historical infinitive*. Cf. *oriri* line 14. These infinitives, with subject in the nominative, have much the same force as the past indicative.
 7. *visūri*, *future active participle*, i.e. *to see*. *Sit*, S. 56. *appulsūri sint*, *active periphrastic*, S. 104.
 10. *ictū*, S. 19. *in caput volvuntur*, *were thrown headlong*.

- Page 228. 12. *esset cōfugiendum*, passive periphrastic, S. 104. Subjunctive, S. 85.
13. *abriperentur*, S. 79.
14. *nautārum*, S. 23. *orīrī*, historical infinitive.
15. *sibi*, dative of reference, much like a possessive genitive limiting *crinēs*. *āvellere*, *iacēre*, *accurrere*, etc., so-called historical infinitives, or infinitives of intimation.
16. *dehiscere*, S. 52.
19. *instar montis*, the image of a mountain, i.e. as big as a mountain. *obstupēscere*, inceptive, from *ob*, *stupeō*.
22. *hauriuntur*, were swallowed up, i.e. drowned.

THE ISLAND

23. *fātō*, S. 19.
25. *exspueret*, verb in a substantive clause of result, subject of *contigit*, S. 87, b.
26. *viribus*, S. 46.
27. *ascenderet*, S. 79.
28. *oculis*, S. 29.
- Page 229. 4. *posset*, S. 88.
5. *incolī*, S. 108.
6. *dēgere*, subject of *vidēbātur*, S. 107. *quā*, S. 19.
12. *Pereundum erit*, S. 104. *mihi*, S. 105.
16. *silice*, S. 39.
17. *plācāret*, S. 87.
19. *posset*, verb in a relative clause of purpose, introduced by *unde*, which equals *ut inde*, S. 80.
23. *mē*, accusative of exclamation, with *miserum*.
24. *sublātis*, from *tollō*.
27. *exōrāre*, subject of *licēbit*, S. 107.
28. *monte*, ablative, way by which.
29. *posset*, S. 56.
31. *instar mūrī*, the image of a wall ; i.e. like a wall.

HE CAPTURES A LLAMA

- Page 230. 1. *diēbus*, ablative, measure of difference with *post*, S. 45. *lūce*, S. 35.

2. *vēnandum*, S. 48.
 3. *inrētiendās*, *gerundive*, agreeing with *lāmās*, S. 49.
 6. *dēflectere*, *complementary infinitive*, completing the meaning of *cōstituit*, S. 34. *explōrāret*, S. 79.
 7. *arboribus*, *dative*, S. 29.
 9. *ex iis*, instead of the *partitive genitive*, with *ūnum*. So, also, with *quidam*.
 10. *faceret*, S. 80. *caperentur*, subjunctive in a *descriptive relative clause*, S. 88. Translate : *than to be caught*, or, *too clever to be caught*.
 12. *sē*, S. 53.
 14. *ē longinquō*, *far off*, *at a distance*.
 16. *ex illis*. Cf. *ex iis*.
 17. *potuerit*, S. 85. In this construction the *perfect subjunctive* is often found, even when the main verb is *secondary*.
 18. *dēterrēret*, S. 79.
 21. *gaudiō*, S. 17.
 22. *dēmulcentur*, S. 74.
 23. *ōrārent*, S. 110.
 24. *dīmitteret*, S. 81.
 25. *domum*, S. 77.
- Page 231. 2. *posset*, S. 56.

THE PARROT

4. *id quod*, *a thing which*, i.e. *as*. *iam diū optābat*, translate : *had long desired*. Cf. the use of *iam diū*, etc., with the present.
6. *pede*, S. 17. *pullis*, S. 29.
7. *rōstrō*, *ablative absolute* with *prōminente*, denoting *attendant circumstances*.
8. *malī*, S. 20.
10. *quō propius . . . eō magis*, translate : *But the nearer he came, the more the anxiety of the mother increased*.
14. *cēteris*, S. 44.
16. *nactus esset*, S. 95.
17. *quam*, with the superlative, *as* (. . . *as*) *possible*.

Page 231. 18. collocet, S. 80. *quā*, *ablative absolute* with *positā*, S. 39, 1.

20. comparāvisset, S. 110.

21. diēbus, S. 45.

24. tōtō corpore, S. 77. In the construction, *place in which*, the preposition *in* is usually omitted, if the noun is of *general meaning*, or is modified by *tōtus*.

25. cōsili, S. 32.

27. metū, S. 19. *territum esse*, S. 108.

Page 232. 1. invēnisset, S. 66, last part. The reason given is Crusoe's, not the narrator's.

3. excipit, S. 74.

HE EXPLORES THE ISLAND. CANNIBALS

6. habitāret, S. 68, 109.

7. sibi, S. 29. *ut*, *as*.

9. peragrārat, *past perfect indicative*, contracted from *peragrāverat*. *fuissem . . . invēnissem*, S. 95.

10. mihi . . . *ūtilitāti*, S. 21.

11. essent, S. 88. *sōle*, S. 39. *ē lāmīs*, instead of *partitive genitive*, because used with a *cardinal numeral*. Cf. the use with *quidam*.

13. *fidentī animō*, *ablative of manner*.

14. *posset*, subordinate verb in *implied indirect discourse*, standing for *poterō*, in the *direct*.

16. diē, S. 35.

17. *quō . . . eō*, *the . . . the*.

20. esset, S. 79.

21. viae, S. 20.

23. *arēnōsum*. What is the force of the suffix ?

24. *prōgreditur*, S. 74.

25. *pallēscere*, and other infinitives : *historical infinitives*.

26. *quasi fulmine ictus* : *as if struck by lightning*.

27. *visūrum esse*, S. 108.

Page 233. 1. *vel levissimō* : *the very lightest*.

3. *instārent*, S. 110.

8. *reliquiās*, S. 5.

10. quibus, S. 15. *cōsuētudō*, *predicate noun* with *erat*, S. 4.
11. *celebrāre*, subject of *erat*, S. 107.
13. *ēripuisset*, S. 95.
15. *potuerit*, S. 85. Notice the *perfect* tense, sometimes used in result clauses, although the main verb is *past*.
16. *diēs*, time *how long*, S. 35. *domī*, *at home*, *locative*, S. 77.
19. *sēcum*. With what other ablatives is *cum enclitic*? *incolere*, *indirect discourse*, depending upon *vērisimile*.
21. *concelebrent*, S. 79.
22. *ibunt*, S. 96.

FRIDAY IS RESCUED FROM THE SAVAGES

23. *domiciliō*, S. 39.
 24. *annōs*, *time how long*, S. 35.
 25. *fieret*, S. 85.
 26. *fabricandā*, S. 49.
 28. *spēluncae*, S. 29.
 29. *quam* with the superlative: *as quickly as possible*. *speculandam*, S. 49, 103.
- Page 234. 2. *cōnscendit*, S. 72. *terrōre*, S. 17.
5. *pede*, S. 9.
 8. *vidit*, S. 57, 1.
 9. *ex barbaris*, instead of *partitive genitive*, with *quidam*. Cf. the same construction with *cardinal numerals*.
 11. *instruendās*, S. 49, 103.
 12. *mactārētur*, S. 76, 2.
 14. *lētō*, S. 8.
 15. *cursū*, S. 17.
 17. *persequentēs*, i.e. *his pursuers*. *videt*, S. 57 (1).
 20. *monte*, *ablative of way by which*.
 23. *esse*, S. 108.
 24. *eī*, *dative of reference*. Translate: *his* (i.e. Crusoe's) *feet*. *prōiceret* . . . *persequerētur*, S. 56.
 26. *hostibus*, *dative with obviam*.
 27. *Quōrum*, S. 20.

28. *hastā*, S. 9. *vī*, S. 17.

29. *passūs*, S. 36.

Page 235. 1. *ferit* : *feriō*, *ire*, *strike*.

2. *esset*, S. 85.

6. *accēdat*, S. 81.

11. *noster*, *our* (*friend*), i.e. *Crusoe*.

13. *eī*, S. 101.

15. *fōrmæ*, S. 30.

16. *aetāte*, S. 16. *colōre*, *cute*, etc., S. 31.

20. *cēterum*, *in other respects*.

23. *esset*, S. 65.

27. *linguam comitem*, S. 18, last part.

31. *animō*, S. 31.

Page 236. 2. *in diēs*, *from day to day*.

THE DERELICT

4. *nocte*, *ablative, time when*. *hōram*, *accusative, time how long*, S. 35.

5. *expergēfacti sunt*, S. 57, 1.

6. *horrendum*, *adverbial accusative, terribly*.

9. *in altō*, *on the deep*. *dēprehendisset*, S. 95. The conclusion is not expressed.

10. *tormentī bellicī*, *cannon*.

12. *prō certō habet*, *held it for sure, felt sure*.

14. *taedā*, *ablative absolute with adreptā*, S. 39.

15. *subsequī*, S. 82.

18. *dubitātiōnis*, S. 20.

19. *superesset*, S. 85.

21. *distābat*, S. 68.

22. *vidisset*, S. 109. *exsultāre*, etc., *historical infinitives*.

24. *laetārētur*, S. 81.

26. *cōspicerent*, S. 80.

27. *tempore*, *ablative, time within which*, S. 35.

Page 237. 2. *tenderet*, S. 76, 2.

3. *ārsit*, S. 72.

5. *distet*, S. 70. *natandō*, *gerund*, S. 48.

6. *vehantur*, S. 88. *invitet*, S. 80.

7. *accēdant*, S. 81. Cf. also *obiciat*, line 8.
8. *periculō*, S. 29. *vītae*, i.e. *consult* or *look out for his life*.
11. *offerat*, S. 80. *animō*, S. 17.
13. *natāisset*, S. 57, 2. *nūllō*, *ablative of nēmō*. Case, S. 10.
18. *cōspexit*, S. 72.
20. *Fridaiō*: a *dative*, used (as often of a *person*) instead of the *ablative of separation*, S. 8. *dēpelleret*, S. 85.
21. *caudam movēns*. translate: *wagging his tail*.
22. *implōrāret*, S. 110.
23. *eam*, *feminine*, sc. *bēstiam*. Cf. *illa*, line 24.
26. *Nēmō*, *genitive nūllius*, *dative nēminī*, *accusative nēminem*, *ablative nūllō* (*fem.*, *nūllā*). Cf. *nūllō*, line 13.
28. *dorsō*, *ablative absolute with versō*, S. 39.
- Page 238. 1. *satis magnī*, *quite large*. *cornibus . . . barbā*, S. 31.
3. *in pedēs sē ērigēbat*, *was raising himself on his hind feet*, i.e. *he was getting ready (past) to butt again*.
4. *sublātō*, *principal parts*: *tollō*, *-ere*, *sustulī*, *sublātum*.
6. *colōre*, S. 31.
9. *urgēre*, S. 108.
10. *Parum abfuit quīn*, *lacked but little that*; i.e. *came near being . . .* More fully: *It lacked only a little that he should be sucked under by the waves*, i.e. *he came near being drowned*.
11. *absorbērētur*, S. 89. *audēbat*. Name the other *semi-deponents*.
15. *aliquantō*, S. 45.

SALVAGE FROM THE WRECK

17. *assiduitāte*, S. 17. *operī*, S. 29.
18. *cōnfēcerint*, *perfect subjunctive* though following a *past tense*, as often in *clauses of result*.
21. *longitūdine*, S. 16.
22. *pedum*, S. 47. *lātītūdine*, S. 31.
23. *cylindris*, S. 29.

- 24. *dēdūcerent*, S. 79, last part.
- 26. *aquā*, tide, *ablative absolute* with *recēdente*, S. 39.
- 27. *scopulis*, S. 29.
- 29. *gaudiis*, S. 19.

Page 239. 1. *accēdit*, S. 74.

- 2. *ēvānuerant*, from *ēvānēscō*.
 - 3. *redeundī*, S. 48, 24.
 - 5. *servāret*, subjunctive in a clause of result with *ut converteret*, S. 80.
 - 7. *essent*, S. 97, 55 ; if they should prove to be safe.
- See note on *seu quis . . . vellet*, 222, 25.

- 8. *timōris*, S. 32.
- 11. *trīdum*, accusative, S. 35. *pābulō*, *ablative of separation* with *caruerat*. Mood, see S. 66.
- 13. *cibō*, S. 9. *recreāret*, S. 81.
- 16. *pretiō*, S. 31.
- 18. *pulveris nitrātī*, *gunpowder*. *globōrum plumbeōrum*, *lead balls, bullets*.
- 19. *sclopēta*, *muskets, guns*.
- 21. *variā supellectilem culināriā*, *various kitchen utensils*.
- 25. *sint*, S. 56.
- 27. *quālia*, *the like of which*.
- 28. *obstupēscēns*, *inceptive*, § 260 (b), p. 136.
- 29. *dēscendere*, subject of *placuit*, S. 107, last part.
- 30. *dehiscēbat*, S. 66.
- 31. *dēliberanti*, *dative* with *eī* understood : *to him deliberating*; *freely, as he deliberated*.

Page 240. 1. *auferret*, S. 56.

- 3. *reiciēda*, *gerundive* agreeing with *alia ipsa*. *omnium praestantissima*, *the very best, most valuable of all*.
- 6. *plumbeārum glandium*, *bullets*.
- 12. *ātrāmētō*, *(black) ink*.
- 13. *cum . . . coepisset*, *when the tide began to come in*, S. 57, 2.
- 18. *diēbus*, *time within which*, S. 35.
- 19. *qui*, *interrogative adjective* with the noun *ūsus*.
- 20. *esset*, S. 56.

22. *absente*, ablative absolute with *Frīdaið*, in the absence of Friday.

23. *complet*, loads. sit, S. 56.

27. *dēiciam*, I will bring down.

28. *dētonat*, (the gun) goes off.

31. *occisus esset*, S. 110.

Page 241. 1. *sclopētō*, S. 46. et ipse, he himself, also.

BATTLE WITH THE CANNIBALS

5. *mīsit*, S. 57, 1. *quaereret*, S. 80.

6. *cibō*, S. 8. Note that *iam diū* with a past tense is to be translated by a past perfect, and with a present, by a present perfect. In the same way *iam dūdum* and *iam pridem*.

7. *festinātiōne*, S. 17.

9. *adesset*, S. 56.

10. *numerōs*, S. 111.

12. *quam vëlōcissimē*, as swiftly as possible.

15. *marī*, ablative, way by which.

17. *velit*, S. 56.

18. *sit dēcertandum*, passive periphrastic, S. 104. Why subjunctive? S. 56, 109.

19. *Age vērō*, come on then!

20. *exsequantur*, S. 60.

22. *rotis*, S. 9.

29. *eāmus*, S. 59.

Page 242. 1. *prōcurrentibus*, present participle, agreeing with *arbustis*.

2. *intrā tēli iactum*, within gun-shot.

3. *ego equidem*, I for my part.

8. *adrēperet*, S. 81. ut sē certiōrem faceret, in order to inform him (*Crusoe*).

9. *possent*, S. 56.

13. *ex albō genere*, of the white race.

15. *cōspiciendum*, gerundive, agreeing with *hiātum*: scarcely to be seen.

18. *laedat*, S. 85.

19. *omnibus rēbus imitārētur*, etc., lit., *that he should imitate himself* (i.e. Crusoe) *in all things which he should see him doing*.

20. *humī*, locative.

21. *fūnem incendiārium*, *slow match*.

22. *rimulae*, *touchhole*. *ignem . . . concipit*, *caught fire*.

24. *occīsī sunt*, S. 110.

29. *expectātione*, S. 44.

31. *quō*, S. 19. *timērent*, S. 88.

Page 243. 5. *fieret*, S. 76, 2.

6. *mactandum*, *gerundive*, *to be slaughtered*. *addūcerent*, S. 80.

8. *dextram . . . sinistram*, *right, left*, fem., *with manum* understood.

11. *dominō*, *ablative with quam*, *than*, omitted. *tantum*, *only*.

12. *ex quibus*, *instead of the partitive genitive*.

15. *aliī alia in loca*, *in various directions*; i.e. *some to some places, others to others*.

19. *vidisset*, S. 65. *quam celerrimē*, *as quickly as possible*.

21. *sclopētis*, S. 46. *ūnā*, *used adverbially: together, at the same time*.

23. *instar āmentium*, *the image of mad men*, i.e. *like mad men*; *instar* is properly a noun, in apposition with the subject.

Page 244. 5. *Anglicā linguā*, *in English*. *esset*, S. 56.

14. *cui*, *to any one*.

16. *vulneribus*, *dative after instillantis*. *instillantis*, *genitive, agreeing with eius*.

17. *animam efflant*, *breathe out their life, expire*.

SYNOPSIS. RETURN TO ENGLAND

23. *merita*, *services*.

27. *valētūdine*, S. 19.

Page 245. 4. *spectantium*, *spectators*. *hospitium*, *inn*.


8. *plateās*, *streets*. *patriōs penātēs*, *father's household gods, home*.

14. *oppressum*, *overwhelmed (with joy)*. *levāvit*, S. 76, 1.

Mica, Mica, Parva Stella



TWINKLE, TWINKLE, LITTLE STAR

Spanish Tune





1. Mi - ca, Mi - ca, par - va stol - la; Mi - ror quo - nam sis tam bol - la!
1. Twin - kle, twin - kle, lit - tle star;— How I won - der what you are!—

3. Ti - bi, noc - tu qui va - ga - tur, Ob scin - til - lu - lam gra - ta - tur;
3. Then the trav - ler in the dark,— Thanks you for your ti - ny spark;





Splen - dens e - mi - nus in il - lo, Al - ba vo - lut gem - ma, cae - lo.
Up a - bove the world so high,— Like a dia - mond in the sky.—

Ni mi - ca - res, tu non sci - ret Quas per vi - as er - rans i - ret.
He could not see which way to go,— If you did not twin - kle so.—




2. Quan - do fer - vens sol dis - ces - sit, Nec ca - lo - ro pra - ta pas - cit,
2. When the blas - ing sun is set,— When the grass with dew is wet,—

4. Mo - um sae - po thala - mum lu - co Spo - cu - la - ris cu - ri - o - sa;
4. In the dark blue sky you keep, And oft - en through the cur - tains peep;—



Mox os - ten - dis lu - men pu - rum, Mi - cans, mi - cans, per ob - scu - rum.
Then you show your lit - tle light,— Twin - kle, twin - kle through the night.—

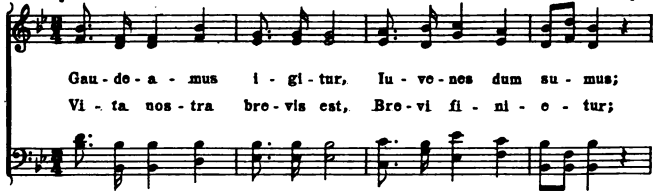
No - que carp - se - ris so - po - rem, Do - nec vo - nit sol per au - ram.
For you nev - er shut an eye— Till the sun is in the sky.—



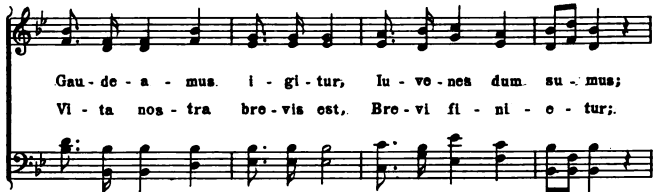
Gaudeamus Igitur

Anonymous

Old German Melody.



Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Iu - ve - nes dum su - mus;
Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est, Bre - vi fi - ni - o - tur;



Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Iu - ve - nes dum su - mus;
Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est, Bre - vi fi - ni - o - tur;



Post lu - cun - dam lu - ven - tu - tem, Post mo - les - tam se - neo - tu - tem
Ve - nit mors ve - lo - ci - ter, Ra - pit nos a - tro - ci - ter;



Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus, Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus.
Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur, Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur.

3. Vivat omnes virgines,
Faciles, formosae.
Vivant et mulieres,
Tenerae, amabiles,
Bonae, laboriosae.

4. Vivat et res publica
Et qui illam regit.
Vivat nostra civitas,
Maecenatum caritas,
Quae nos hic protegit.

Integer Vitae

Horatius Flaccus

Arr. from Flemming

In - te - ger vi - tae sco - lo - ris - quo pu - rus
Si - ve per Syr - tis i - ter aes - tu - o - sas,

Non o - get Mau - ris la - cu - lis nec ar - cu
Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi - ta - lem

Nec ve - ne - na - tis gra - vi - da sa - git - tis,
Cau - ca - sum vel quae lo - ca fa - bu - lo - sus

Fus - ce, pha - ro - - tra.
Lam - bit Hy - das - - pes.

FAMILIAR LATIN QUOTATIONS, PROVERBS, AND PHRASES

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Abeunt studia in mōrēs.
— <i>Ovid</i>.
Ab initio.
Absit ōmen.
Ā capite ad calcem.
Ācerrima proximōrum
odia. — <i>Tacitus</i>.
Āctum est dē rē pūblicā.
Ad infīnitum.
Ad libitum.
Ad nauseam.
Ad valōrem.
Adversum stimulum cal-
cās. — <i>Terence</i>.
Aequam mementō rēbus
in arduis servāre men-
tem. — <i>Horace</i>.
Alma māter.
Alter ego.
Alter idem.
Ā maximis ad minima.
Amīci probantur rēbus ad-
versis.</p> | <p>Amīcus hūmāni generis.
Annō aetātis suae.
Annus mirābilis.
Ante bellum.
Ante victōriam nē canās
triumphum.
Aqua vitae.
Arbiter bibendi (<i>Toast-
master</i>). — <i>Horace</i>.
Argūmentum ad hominem.
Audendō magnus tegitur
timor. — <i>Lucan</i>.
Audiātur et altera pars. —
<i>Adapted from Seneca</i>.
Aurea mediocritās (<i>The
Golden Mean</i>). — <i>Hor-
ace</i>.
Auribus teneō lupum. —
<i>Terence</i>.
Aurī sacra famēs. — <i>Vergil</i>.
Aut amat aut ōdit mulier,
nihil est tertium. —
<i>Publilius Syrus</i>.</p> |
|---|--|

Aut Caesar aut nullus. — <i>Motto of Caesar Borgia.</i>	Cōnscia mēns rēctī. — <i>Ovid.</i>
Aut vincere aut morī.	Crēdula rēs amor est. — <i>Ovid.</i>
Avē, Imperātor! moritūrī tē salūtant. — <i>Gladia-</i> <i>tors in the Arena. Sal-</i> <i>utation to the Emperor</i> <i>Claudius. — Suetonius.</i>	Cui bonō ? ¹ — <i>Cicero.</i> Cum grānō salis. — <i>Pliny.</i> Cuneus cuneum trūdīt.
Beātae memoriae.	Dā dextram miserō. — <i>Vergil.</i>
Bellum nec timendum nec prōvocandum. — <i>Adapted from Pliny.</i>	Dēcipimur speciē rēctī. — <i>Horace.</i>
Bis peccāre in bellō nōn licet.	Dē factō.
Bonā fidē.	Dē gustibus nōn est dis- putandum.
Caeca regēns filō vēstīgia. — <i>Vergil.</i>	Deī grātiā.
Candida pāx. — <i>Ovid.</i>	Dē integrō.
Carpe diem. — <i>Horace.</i>	Dē iūre.
Cāsus bellī.	Dēlenda est Carthāgō. — <i>Cato in the Senate. —</i> <i>Florus.</i>
Caveat ēmptor.	Dē nihilō nihilum, in nihi- lum nīl posse revertī. — <i>Persius.</i>
Cēdant arma togae. — <i>Cicero.</i>	Dē novō.
Citō mātūrum, citō putri- dum.	Deōs fortiōribus adesse. — <i>Tacitus.</i>
Cōgitō, ergō sum. — <i>A first</i> <i>principle in Philosophy.</i> — <i>Descartes.</i>	Deō volente. Dē profundīs. Deus ex māchinā.

¹ "Double dative," i.e. to whom is it (for) a benefit?

- Dictum sapienti sat est. Ex nihilō nihil fit. —
— *Plautus.* *Theory of Lucretius.*
- Diēs irae. Ex officiō.
- Docendō discimus. — Ex parte.
- Adapted from Seneca.* Experientia docet stultōs.
- Drāmaticis persōnae. Expertō crēdite. — *Vergil.*
- Dūcunt volentem fāta, Ex tempore.
- nōlentem trahunt. — Extrā ordinem.
- Seneca.*
- Dulce et decōrum est prō Faber est quisque fortūnae
patriā morī. — *Horace.* suae. — *Modified from*
Sallust.
- Dum vivimus, vivāmus. Facile princeps.
- Dux fēmina factī. — *Vergil.* Fac simile.
- Ecce homō. Facta, nōn verba.
- Ēripuit caelō fulmen, Fāta obstant. — *Vergil.*
- scēptrumque tyrannīs. Fāta viam invenient. —
— *Said of Benjamin Vergil.*
- Franklin.*
- Esse quam vidērī. — *Sal-* Festinā lentē. — *A fre-*
lust. *quent saying of the Em-*
peror Augustus. — Sue-
- Est modus in rēbus. *tonius.*
- Et nātī nātōrum et quī Fidēs Pūnica.
- nāscuntur ab illis. — Fīdus Achātēs. — *Vergil.*
- Vergil.* Filius terrae. — *Persius.*
- Ex cathedrā. Fīnis corōnat opus.
- Exceptiō probat rēgulam. Fortēs fortūna adiuvat. —
Terence.
- Exeunt omnēs.
- Exitus ācta probat. Gravis ira rēgum est sem-
- *Washington's Motto.* per. — *Seneca.*
- *Ovid.*

Habeās corpus.	Iūs et norma loquendī. —
Hannibal ad portās. —	<i>Horace.</i>
<i>Livy.</i>	Lāpsus linguae.
Hic iacet.	Latet anguis in herbā. —
Hinc illae lacrumae. —	<i>Vergil.</i>
<i>Terence.</i>	Laudātor temporis āctī. —
Hodiē mihi, crās tibi.	<i>Horace.</i>
Iacta ālea est. — <i>Caesar</i>	Laus Deō.
<i>at the Rubicon.</i> — <i>Sue-</i>	Longō intervallō. — <i>Ver-</i>
<i>tonius.</i>	<i>gil.</i>
Ignōrantia lēgis nēminem	Lucrī causā.
excūsāt.	Lūx benigna.
Inde irae et lacrimae. —	Magna est vērītās et prae-
<i>Juvenal.</i>	valet. ¹ — <i>Vulgate, 3 Es-</i>
In extrēmīs.	<i>dras.</i>
In hōc signō vincēs. —	Magnum opus.
<i>Motto of the Emperor</i>	Mārs gravior sub pāce
<i>Constantine.</i>	latet. — <i>Claudian.</i>
In locō parentis.	Meā culpā.
In mediās rēs. — <i>Horace.</i>	Mediō tūtissimus ibis. —
In memoriā.	<i>Ovid.</i>
In perpetuum.	Mē iūdice.
In rē.	Mementō morī.
In statū quō.	Mēns sāna in corpore sānō.
Integrōs haurīre fontēs. —	— <i>Juvenal.</i>
<i>Adapted from Lucretius.</i>	Mīrābile dictū. — <i>Vergil.</i>
Inter pōcula. — <i>Persius.</i>	Miserābile vulgus. — <i>Ver-</i>
In vacuō.	<i>gil.</i>
Ipse dixit. — <i>Cicero.</i>	Modus operandī.

¹ Not *praevalēbil*.

Monumentum aere perennius. — *Horace*.

Mūtātis mūtandis.

Nē cēde malis. — *Vergil*.

Necessitās nōn habet
lēgem.

Nec tēcum possum vīvere,
nec sine tē. — *Martial*.

Nē plūs ultrā.

Nē quid nimis. — *Terence*.

Nervōs bellī pecūniam infinitam. — *Cicero*.

Nīl admīrārī. — *Horace*.

Nīl dēspērandum. — *Horace*.

Nōlēs volēs.

Nōlī mē tangere.

Nōmen atque ōmen. —
Plautus.

Nōn compos mentis.

Nōn omnis moriar. —
Horace.

Nōn 'prōgredi est regredi.

Nōn sequitur.

Nūlla diēs sine lineā. —
Pliny.

Obiit.

Obiter dictum.

Ōderint, dum metuant. —

Accius.

Omnia vincit amor. —

Vergil.

Ōrā prō nobis.

Palmam quī meruit ferat. — *Lord Nelson's Motto*.

Palma nōn sine pulvere.
— *Modified from Horace*.

Particeps criminis.

Pater familiās.

Pater Noster.

Pāx vōbiscum.

Per angusta ad augusta.

Poēta nāscitur, nōn fit.

Pōns asinōrum.

Possunt, quia posse videntur. — *Vergil*.

Post mortem.

Prīmus inter parēs.

Prō bonō publicō.

Prōpāgandā fidē.

Prō ratā.

Prōsit.

Quid prō quō.

Quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs? — *Juvenal*.

Quōs Iuppiter vult perdere, prius dēmentat.
— *Translation from an unknown Greek Tragedy.*

Rāra avis in terrīs. —
Juvenal.

Reductiō ad absurdum.

Requiēscat in pāce.

Rēs angusta domī. — *Juvenal.*

Resurgam. — *Common inscription on Tombstones.*

Sic ītur ad astra. — *Vergil.*

Sic trānsit glōria mundi.

Similia similibus cūrantur.

— *The Motto of Homeopathy, as stated by Hahnemann.*

Sine cūrā.

Sine diē.

Sine quā nōn.

Suāviter in modō, fortiter in rē. — *Probably from a sentence of the Jesuit General Aquaviva.*

Sub rosā.

Suī generis.

Summum bonum.

Tabula rāsa.

Tempus edāx rērum. —
Ovid.

Tempus fugit.

Tē nōsce. — *(From Greek).*

Terra firma.

Terra incognita.

Timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentīs. — *Vergil.*

Toga virilis.



ROMAN WEARING TOGA

Troia fuit. — *Vergil.*

Tū quoque (*You, also,* —
i.e. "*You're another*").

Ubi mel, ibi apēs.

Unā vōce.

Unguis in ulcere.

Vāde mēcum (*Go with me,*
— *as of a book much*
used).

Vae victīs! — *Livy.*

Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī. — *Words*
of Caesar. — *Suetonius.*

Via media.

Via trīta, via tūta.

Vice versā.

Vīta brevis, longa ars. —
Translation from Hip-
pocrates. — *Seneca.*

Vivā vōce.

Vive valēque. — *Horace.*

Vivida vīs animī. — *Lucre-*
tius.

Vōx populi vōx Deī.

LATIN MOTTOES

Ad astra per aspera. —
Kansas.

Animīs opibusque parātī.
Dum spirō, spērō. —
South Carolina.

Artēs. Scientia. Vēritās. —
University of Michigan.

Commercia expulsīs pirā-
tīs restitūta. — *Baha-*
mas.

Crēscit eundō. — *New*
Mexico.

Crēscit velut arbor. — *Uni-*
versity of Toronto (from
Horace).

Deī sub nūmine viget. —
Princeton University.

Deō dūcente nīl nocet.
— *East India Com-*
pany.

Deō iuvante. — *Monaco.*
Deus gubernat nāvem. —
Renfrew (England).

Deus nōbīs haec ōtia
fēcit. — *Liverpool (from*
Vergil).

Dīrigō. — *Maine.*

Dītat Deus. — *Arizona.*

Domine, dīrige nōs. —
London.

Dominus illūminātiō mea.
— *University of Ox-*
ford.

Dominus mihi adiūtor. —
Denmark.

- Ēnse petit placidam sub
 libertāte quietem. —
Massachusetts.
- Ē plūribus ūnum. Annuit
 coeptis. Novus ōrdō sē-
 clōrum. — *United States.*
- Ē plūribus ūnum. Tuē-
 bor. Sī quaeris pēnīn-
 sulam amoenam, cir-
 cumspice. — *Michigan.*
- Esse quam vidēri. — *North
 Carolina.*
- Excelsior. — *New York.*
- Ex ūnitāte vīrēs. — *South
 Africa.*
- Fīat lūx. — *Clark Univer-
 sity.*
- Fidēs invicta triumphat.
 — *Gloucester (England).*
- Fīnis origine pendet. Nōn
 sibi. — *Phillips Acad-
 emy, Andover. Phillips
 Exeter Academy.*
- Flōreat Imperiī portus. —
Port of London.
- Fortis est vērītās. — *Ox-
 ford University.*
- In Deō spērāmus. — *Brown
 University.*
- Initium sapientiae timor
 Domini. — *University of
 Aberdeen.*
- In lūmine tuō vidēbimus
 lūmen. — *Columbia Uni-
 versity.*
- Iūstitia omnibus. — *Dis-
 trict of Columbia.*
- Labor omnia vincit. —
*Oklahoma (Also Uni-
 versity of Illinois).*
- Līterae¹ sine mōribus
 vānae. — *University of
 Pennsylvania.*
- Lūx et vērītās. — *Yale
 University.*
- Montānī semper liberī. —
West Virginia.
- Nēmō mē impūne lacessit.
 — *Scotland.*
- Nīl sine nūmine. — *Colo-
 rado.*
- Nisi Dominus frūstrā. —
Edinburgh.
- Nōn ministrārī, sed minis-
 trāre. — *Wellesley Col-
 lege.*

¹ Early spelling for *litterae*.

- Obēdientia cīvium urbis
fēlicitās. — *Dublin.*
- Orandō. Labōrandō. —
Rugby School.
- Orta recēns quam pūra
nitēs. — *Commonwealth*
of Australia.
- Per ardua stābilis estō. —
Calcutta.
- Pietāte. Literīs.¹ Indus-
triā. — *Dorchester.*
- Plūs ultrā. — *Gibraltar.*
- Prōspēra lūx oritur. —
Porto Rico.
- Prōvidētiāe memor. —
Kingdom of Saxony.
- Quī trānstulit sustinet. —
Connecticut.
- Quō fāta ferunt. — *The*
Bermudas (from Vergil).
- Salūs populi suprēma lēx
estō. — *Missouri.*
- Scūtō bonae voluntātis
tuaē corōnāstī nōs. —
Maryland.
- Semper fidēlis. — *Exeter*
(England).
- Sic semper tyrannīs. —
Virginia.
- Sicut patribus, sit Deus
nōbīs. — *Boston.*
- Splendor sine occāsū. —
Dominion of Canada.
- Stet fortūna domūs. —
Harrow.
- Tempore ūtimur. — *Green-*
wich (England).
- Terrās irradiant. — *Am-*
herst College.
- Tuum est. — *University of*
British Columbia.
- Vēritās. — *Radcliffe Col-*
lege.
- Vēritās. Christō et Ec-
clēsiae. — *Harvard Uni-*
versity.
- Vēritās nōs liberābit. —
Johns Hopkins Univer-
sity.
- Vēritātem dilēxī. — *Bryn*
Mawr College.

¹ Early spelling for *litterīs*.

- Vigilandō ascendimus. — Vivit post fūnera virtūs.
Grand Duchy of Saxe- — Nottingham (Eng-
Weimar-Eisenach. land).
- Virtūte. Studiō. Lūdō. — Vōx clāmantis in dēsertō.
Marlboro' College (Eng- — Dartmouth College.
land).

ABBREVIATIONS FROM THE LATIN

- A. B.** — **Artium Baccalaureus** (*Bachelor of Arts*).
A. D. — **Annō Domini** (*In the Year of our Lord*).
ad lib. or **ad libit.** — **ad libitum** (*at pleasure*).
A. M. — **Artium Magister** (*Master of Arts*); **ante meridiem** (*before noon*).
cf. — **cōfer** (*compare*).
cwt. — **centum**, **weight** (*a hundredweight*).
D. D. — **Divinitātis Doctor** (*Doctor of Divinity*).
e. g. — **exempli grātiā** (*for the sake of example, for example*).
et al. — **et aliī** or **et aliae** (*and others*); or **et alibi** (*and elsewhere*).
etc. — **et cētera** (*and the other things, and so forth*).
et seq. — **et sequentēs**, or **sequentia** (*and the following*).
et ux. — **et uxor** (*and wife*).
ibid. — **ibidem** (*in the same place*).
i. e. — **id est** (*that is*).
inst. — **instantis** (*of the present month*).
lb. — **libra** (*pound*).
lib. — **liber** (*book*).
LL. B. — **Lēgum Baccalaurus** (*Bachelor of Laws*).
LL. D. — **Lēgum Doctor** (*Doctor of Laws*).
M. D. — **Medicinae Doctor** (*Doctor of Medicine*).
N. B. — **Notā bene** (*Note well*).
no. — **numērō**.
nol. pros. — **nōlle prōsequi** (*to be unwilling to prosecute*).
per cent. — **per centum** (*by the hundred*).
Ph. D. — **Philosophiae Doctor** (*Doctor of Philosophy*).
P. M. — **post meridiem** (*after noon*).
pro tem. — **prō tempore** (*for the time being*).
prox. — **proximō** (*next, or of the next month*).
P. S. — **Post scriptum** (*written after, postscript*).
Q. E. D. — **Quod erat dēmōnstrandum** (*which was to be proved*).
Q. E. F. — **Quod erat faciendum** (*which was to be done*).
q. v. — **quod vidē** (*which see*).
sc. — **scilicet** (*being understood*).
S. P. Q. R. — **Senātus Populusque Rōmānus** (*the Roman Senate and People*).
ult. — **ultimō** (*last month, or of the last month*).
vid. — **vidē** (*see*).
viz. — **videlicet** (*namely, to wit*).
vs. — **versus** (*against, or in opposition to*).

PARADIGMS

NOUNS

The terminations of the several declensions are the following :

DECL. I	II	III	IV	V
SINGULAR				
N. -a	-us, -um, —	-s (-is), —	-us, -ū	-ēs
G. -ae	-ī	-is	-ūs	-ēī, -eī
D. -ae	-ō	-ī	-uī (-ū)	-ēī, -eī
Ac. -am	-um	-em (-im)	-um, -ū	-em
V. -a	-e, —	(as nom.)	-us, -ū	-ēs
Ab. -ā	-ō	-e (-ī)	-ū	-ē
PLURAL				
N., V. -ae	-ī, -a	-ēs, -a, -ia	-ūs, -ua	-ēs
G. -ārum	-ōrum	-um, -ium	-uum	-ērum
D., Ab. -īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus, -ubus	-ēbus
Ac. -ās	-ōs, -a	-ēs, -is, -a, -ia	-ūs, -ua	-ēs

First or ā-Declension

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	Insula (<i>island</i>)	Insulae
G.	Insulae	Insulārum
D.	Insulae	insulis
Ac.	Insulam	Insulās
V.	Insula	Insulae
Ab.	Insulā	insulis

Second or o-Declension

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	servus (<i>slave</i>)	servi	bellum (<i>war</i>)	bella
G.	servi	servōrum	belli	bellōrum
D.	servō	servis	bellō	bellis
Ac.	servum	servōs	bellum	bella
V.	serve	servi	bellum	bella
Ab.	servō	servis	bellō	bellis

SINGULAR

N.	puer (<i>boy</i>)	ager (<i>field</i>)	vir (<i>man</i>)
G.	pueri	agri	virī
D.	puerō	agrō	virō
Ac.	puerum	agrum	virum
V.	puer	ager	vir
Ab.	puerō	agrō	virō

PLURAL

N.	pueri	agri	virī
G.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
D.	pueris	agris	viris
Ac.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
V.	pueri	agri	virī
Ab.	pueris	agris	viris

Third Declension

Mute Stems

SINGULAR

N., V.	rēx (<i>king</i>)	miles (<i>soldier</i>)	caput (<i>head</i>)
G.	rēgis	militis	capitis
D.	rēgī	militi	capiti
Ac.	rēgem	militem	caput
Ab.	rēge	milite	capite

PLURAL

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>capitum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>

SINGULAR

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>custōs (guard)</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>custōdis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>custōdi</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>custōdem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>custōde</i>

PLURAL

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>custōdēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>custōdum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>custōdibus</i>

Liquid Stems

SINGULAR

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>cōnsul (consul)</i>	<i>virgō (maiden)</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>cōnsulis</i>	<i>virginis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>cōnsuli</i>	<i>virginī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>cōnsulem</i>	<i>virginem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>cōnsule</i>	<i>virgine</i>

PLURAL

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>cōnsulēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>cōnsulum</i>	<i>virginum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>cōnsulibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>

SINGULAR

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>mercātor (merchant)</i>	<i>corpus (body)</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>mercātōris</i>	<i>corporis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>mercātōrī</i>	<i>corporī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mercātōrem</i>	<i>corpus</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mercātōre</i>	<i>corpore</i>

PLURAL

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>mercātōrēs</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>mercātōrum</i>	<i>corporum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>mercātōribus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>

Stems in i

SINGULAR

N., V.	ignis (<i>fire</i>)	caedēs (<i>murder</i>)
G.	ignis	caedis
D.	ignī	caedī
Ac.	ignem	caedem
Ab.	ignī, -e	caede

PLURAL

N., V.	ignēs	caedēs
G.	ignium	caedium
D., Ab.	ignibus	caedibus
Ac.	ignēs, -is	caedēs, -is

SINGULAR

N., Ac., V.	mare (<i>sea</i>)
G.	maris
D., Ab.	mari

PLURAL

maria ¹*Mixed Stems*

SINGULAR

N., V.	urbs (<i>city</i>)	mēns (<i>mind</i>)
G.	urbis	mentis
D.	urbī	mentī
Ac.	urbem	mentem
Ab.	urbe	mente

PLURAL

N., V.	urbēs	mentēs
G.	urbium	mentium
D., Ab.	urbibus	mentibus
Ac.	urbēs, -is	mentēs, -is

¹ The only plural form in common use is *maria*. The ablative *maribus* occurs once.

Fourth or *u*-Declension

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N., V.</i>	exercitus (<i>army</i>)	exercitūs	cornū (<i>horn</i>)	cornua
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>D.</i>	exercitui (-ū)	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

Fifth or *ē*-Declension

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N., V.</i>	diēs (<i>day</i>)	diēs	rēs (<i>thing</i>)	rēs
<i>G.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>D.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Ac.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Ab.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

Irregular Nouns

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	deus	dei (diī), di	<i>N.</i>	vīs	vīrēs
<i>G.</i>	dei	deōrum, deum	<i>G.</i>	—	vīrium
<i>D.</i>	deō	deīs (diīs), dis	<i>D.</i>	—	vīribus
<i>Ac.</i>	deum	deōs	<i>Ac.</i>	vim	vīrēs
<i>Ab.</i>	deō	deīs (diīs), dis	<i>V.</i>	vīs	vīrēs
			<i>Ab.</i>	vī	vīribus

SINGULAR

<i>N., V.</i>	senex (<i>old man</i>)	carō (<i>flesh</i>)	os (<i>bone</i>)
<i>G.</i>	senis	carnis	ossis
<i>D.</i>	seni	carni	ossi
<i>Ac.</i>	senem	carnem	os
<i>Ab.</i>	sene	carne	osse

PLURAL

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>senēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>	<i>ossa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>senum</i>	<i>carnium</i>	<i>ossium</i> (rare)
<i>D.</i>	<i>senibus</i>	<i>carnibus</i>	<i>ossibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>senēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>	<i>ossa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>senibus</i>	<i>carnibus</i>	<i>ossibus</i>

ADJECTIVES

First and Second Declension

SINGULAR

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>bonus</i> (<i>good</i>)	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>bone</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>miser</i> (<i>wretched</i>)	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>miserum</i>	<i>miseram</i>	<i>miserum</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>miser</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserō</i>

PLURAL		
	M.	F.
N.	miseri	miseræ
G.	miserōrum	miserārum
D.	miseris	miseris
Ac.	miserōs	miserās
V.	miseri	miseræ
Ab.	miseris	miseris
SINGULAR		
N.	pulcher (<i>beautiful</i>)	pulchra
G.	pulchri	pulchrae
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram
V.	pulcher	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā
PLURAL		
N.	pulchri	pulchrae
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum
D.	pulchris	pulchris
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās
V.	pulchri	pulchrae
Ab.	pulchris	pulchris

Third Declension : Adjectives of Three Terminations

SINGULAR		
	M.	F.
N., V.	acer (<i>sharp</i>)	ācris
G.	ācris	ācris
D.	ācrī	ācrī
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī
PLURAL		
N., V.	ācrēs	ācrēs
G.	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācris, -ēs	ācris, -ēs
Ab.	ācribus	ācribus

Adjectives of Two Terminations

SINGULAR				PLURAL	
	M. F.	N.		M. F.	N.
N., V.	fortis (<i>brave</i>)	forte		fortēs	fortia
G.	fortis	fortis		fortium	fortium
D.	forti	forti		fortibus	fortibus
Ac.	fortem	forte		fortēs, -is	fortia
Ab.	forti	forti		fortibus	fortibus

Adjectives of One Termination

SINGULAR			
	M. F.		N.
N., V.	potēns (<i>powerful</i>)		potēns
G.	potentis		potentis
D.	potenti		potenti
Ac.	potentem		potēns
Ab.	potenti (-e)		potenti (-e)

PLURAL			
N., V.	potentēs		potentia
G.	potentium		potentium
D., Ab.	potentibus		potentibus
Ac.	potentēs (-is)		potentia

SINGULAR				SINGULAR	
	M. F.	N.		M. F.	N.
N., V.	fēlix (<i>lucky</i>)	fēlix		vetus (<i>old</i>)	vetus
G.	fēlicis	fēlicis		veteris	veteris
D.	fēlici	fēlici		veteri	veteri
Ac.	fēlicem	fēlix		veterem	vetus
Ab.	fēlici (-e)	fēlici (-e)		vetere (-i)	vetere (-i)

PLURAL				PLURAL	
N., V.	fēlicēs	fēlicia		veterēs	vetera
G.	fēlicium	fēlicium		veterum	veterum
D.	fēlicibus	fēlicibus		veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	fēlicēs	fēlicia		veterēs	vetera
Ab.	fēlicibus	fēlicibus		veteribus	veteribus

Declension of Comparatives

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
<i>N., V.</i>	cārior (<i>dearer</i>)	cārius	cāriōrēs	cāriōra
<i>G.</i>	cāriōris	cāriōris	cāriōrum	cāriōrum
<i>D.</i>	cāriōri	cāriōri	cāriōribus	cāriōribus
<i>Ac.</i>	cāriōrem	cārius	cāriōrēs	cāriōra
<i>Ab.</i>	cāriōre	cāriōre	cāriōribus	cāriōribus

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	—	plūs (<i>more</i>)	plūrēs	plūra
<i>G.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>D.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Ac.</i>	—	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra
<i>Ab.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

Irregular Adjectives

SINGULAR		
N.	nūllus (<i>no, none</i>)	nūlla nūllum
G.	nūllius	nūllius
D.	nūlli	nūlli
Ac.	nūllum	nūllam nūllum
Ab.	nūllō	nūllā nūllō

SINGULAR		
N.	alter (<i>the other</i>)	altera alterum
G.	alterius	alterius
D.	alteri	alteri
Ac.	alterum	alteram alterum
Ab.	alterō	alterā alterō

SINGULAR

N. neuter (<i>neither</i>)	neutra	neutrum
G. neutrius	neutrius	neutrius
D. neutri	neutri	neutri
Ac. neutrum	neutram	neutrum
Ab. neutrō	neutrā	neutrō

The *vocative* is wanting. The *plural* is regular.

Comparison of Adjectives

cārus, <i>dear</i>	cārior	cārissimus
fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortior	fortissimus
fēlix, <i>lucky</i>	fēlicior	fēlicissimus
potēns, <i>powerful</i>	potentior	potentissimus
asper, <i>rough</i>	asperior	asperrimus
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrior	pulcherrimus
ācer, <i>sharp</i>	ācior	ācerrimus

Irregular Comparison

facilis, <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
difficilis, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior	difficillimus
similis, <i>like</i>	similior	simillimus
dissimilis, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis, <i>slender</i>	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis, <i>low</i>	humilior	humillimus
exterus, <i>outward</i>	exterior, <i>outer or more outward</i>	extrēmus and extimus, <i>outermost or last</i>
inferus, <i>low</i>	inferior, <i>lower</i>	īnfimus and īmus, <i>low- est</i>
posterus, <i>following</i>	posterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus and pos- tumus, <i>last</i>
superus, <i>upper</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus and sum- mus, <i>top of, highest</i>
bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
malus, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>

multus, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, <i>most</i>
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, <i>smallest</i>
senex, <i>old</i>	senior (maior nātū) <i>older, elder</i>	maximus nātū, <i>oldest, eldest</i>
iuvenis, <i>young</i>	iūnior (minor nātū) <i>younger</i>	minimus nātū, <i>youngest</i>

cis or citrā, <i>this side of</i>	citerior, <i>on this side</i>	citimus, <i>near</i>
dē, <i>down</i>	dēterior, <i>inferior</i>	dēterrimus, <i>worst</i>
intrā, <i>within</i>	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
prae or prō, <i>in front of</i>	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
prope, <i>near</i> (potis, <i>possible</i>)	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>nearest</i>
ultrā, <i>beyond</i>	potior, <i>preferable</i>	potissimus, <i>chiefest</i>
	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>

ADVERBS

Comparison

(cārus)	cārē	cārius	cārissimē
(pulcher)	pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
(fortis)	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
(vēlōx)	vēlōciter	vēlōcius	vēlōcissimē
(ācer)	ācriter	ācrius	ācerimē
(facilis)	facile	facilius	facillimē
(difficilis)	difficile	difficilius	difficillimē
	difficulter		

Irregular Comparison of Adverbs

bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male, <i>ill</i>	peius	pessimē
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē

multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
nōn multum	} <i>little</i>	minimē
parum		
diū, <i>long</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
mātūrō, <i>betimes</i>	mātūrius	{ mātūrrimē mātūrrissimē
nūper, <i>recently</i>	—	
—	potius, <i>rather</i>	potissimum, <i>especially</i>
—	prius { <i>previously</i> <i>before</i> }	primum, <i>first</i>
prope, <i>near</i>	propius	proximē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē
secus, <i>otherwise</i>	sētius, <i>less</i>	

A number of adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form adverbs in -ō, instead of -ē; as,

crēbrō, <i>frequently</i> ;	falsō, <i>falsely</i> ;
continuō, <i>immediately</i> ;	subitō, <i>suddenly</i> ;
rārō, <i>rarely</i> ; and a few others.	

A few adjectives use the accusative singular neuter as the positive of the adverb; as,

multum, <i>much</i> ;	paulum, <i>little</i> ;	facile, <i>easily</i> .
-----------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

A few adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the positive adverb in -iter; as,

firmus, firmiter, <i>firmly</i> ;	hūmānus, hūmāniter, <i>humanly</i> ;
largus, largiter, <i>copiously</i> ;	alius, aliter, <i>otherwise</i> .

Various other adverbial endings occur, the most important of which are -tus and -tim; as, antiquitus, *anciently*; paulātim, *gradually*.

Declension of Numerals

<i>N.</i>	<i>duo</i> (<i>two</i>)	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>

So *ambō*, *both*, except that its final *o* is long.

<i>N.</i>	<i>trēs</i> (<i>three</i>)	<i>tria</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>trēs</i> (<i>tris</i>)	<i>tria</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

The hundreds (except *centum*) are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

Mille is regularly an adjective in the *singular*, and indeclinable. In the *plural* it is a noun (followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated), and is declined :

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>mīlia</i> (<i>thousands</i>)
<i>G.</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>

Cardinal Numerals

1. <i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum</i>	11. <i>ūndecim</i>
2. <i>duo, duae, duo</i>	12. <i>duodecim</i>
3. <i>trēs, tria</i>	13. <i>tredecim</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	14. <i>quattuordecim</i>
5. <i>quīnque</i>	15. <i>quīndecim</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	16. <i>sēdecim</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	17. <i>septendecim</i>
8. <i>octō</i>	18. <i>duodēvigintī</i>
9. <i>novem</i>	<i>.(octōdecim)</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	

19. ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	101. centum ūnus <i>or</i> cen- tum et ūnus
20. vīgintī	102. centum duo <i>or</i> centum et duo
21. vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	200. ducentī, -ae, -a
22. vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	300. trecentī, -ae, -a
28. duodētrīgintā	400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
29. ūndētrīgintā	500. quīngentī, -ae, -a
30. trīgintā	600. sēscentī, -ae, -a
40. quadrāgintā	700. septingentī, -ae, -a
50. quīnquāgintā	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
60. sexāgintā	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
70. septuāgintā	1000. mille
80. octōgintā	2000. duo milia
90. nōnāgintā	10,000. decem milia
100. centum	100,000. centum milia

Ordinal Numerals

1st. prīmus	18th. duodēvicēsīmus
2d. secundus	19th. ūndēvicēsīmus
3d. tertius	20th. vicēsīmus
4th. quārtus	21st. vicēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vicēsīmus
5th. quīntus	28th. duodētricēsīmus
6th. sextus	29th. ūndētricēsīmus
7th. septīmus	30th. tricēsīmus
8th. octāvus	40th. quadrāgēsīmus
9th. nōnus	50th. quīnquāgēsīmus
10th. decīmus	60th. sexāgēsīmus
11th. ūndecīmus	70th. septuāgēsīmus
12th. duodecīmus	80th. octōgēsīmus
13th. tertius decīmus	90th. nōnāgēsīmus
14th. quārtus decīmus	100th. centēsīmus
15th. quīntus decīmus	200th. ducentēsīmus
16th. sextus decīmus	1000th. millēsīmus
17th. septīmus decīmus	

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

Personal Pronouns

FIRST PERSON

SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. ego, <i>I</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>
G. meī, <i>of me</i>	nostrum and nostrī, <i>of us</i>
D. mihi, <i>to, for me</i>	nōbīs, <i>to, for us</i>
Ac. mē, <i>me</i>	nōs, <i>us</i>
Ab. mē, <i>from, by, with, etc., me</i>	nōbīs, <i>from, by, with, etc., us</i>

SECOND PERSON

N., V. tū, <i>(thou) you</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>
G. tuī, <i>of (thee) you</i>	vestrum and vestrī, <i>of you</i>
D. tibi, <i>to, for (thee) you</i>	vōbīs, <i>to, for you</i>
Ac. tē, <i>(thee) you</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>
Ab. tē, <i>from, by, with, etc., (thee) you</i>	vōbīs, <i>from, by, with, etc., you</i>

THIRD PERSON

Reflexive

N. —	—
G. suī, <i>of him(self), her(self), it(self)</i>	suī, <i>of them(selves)</i>
D. sibi, <i>to, for him(self), etc.</i>	sibi, <i>to, for them(selves)</i>
Ac. sē, sēsē, <i>him(self), etc.</i>	sē, sēsē, <i>them(selves)</i>
Ab. sē, sēsē, <i>from, by, with, etc., him(self)</i>	sē, sēsē, <i>from, by, with, etc., them(selves)</i>

Possessive Pronominal Adjectives

These are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected as such. They are :

FIRST PERSON

meus, -a, -um, my

noster, nostra, nostrum, our

SECOND PERSON

tuus, -a, -um, thy

vester, vestra, vestrum, your

THIRD PERSON

suus, -a, -um, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)

Demonstrative Pronouns

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>iī, eī, ī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>iīs, eīs, īs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs, īs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs, īs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>iīs, eīs, īs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs, īs</i>	<i>iīs, eīs, īs</i>

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Ac.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Ab.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs
N.	Idem	eadem	idem	{	iidem eīdem eadem eadem	[dem
G.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem			
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{	iīsdem iīsdem iīsdem eīsdem eīsdem eīsdem	īsdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem			
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{	iīsdem iīsdem iīsdem eīsdem eīsdem eīsdem	īsdem
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsō-
						[rum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Relative Pronoun

qui, who, which

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Interrogative Pronoun

quis, *who*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quis	quid	quī	quæ	quæ
G.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quæ
Ab.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

(quis is the proper substantive form for both masculine and feminine.)

Indefinite Pronouns

SUBSTANTIVE		
M.	F.	N.
quis		quid <i>any one, anything</i>
aliquis		aliquid <i>some one, something</i>
quisquam		quidquam <i>any one, anything</i> (quicquam)
quispiam		quidpiam <i>any one, anything</i> (quippiam)
quisque		quidque <i>each</i>
quīvis	quævis	quidvis <i>any one (anything) you</i>
quīlibet	quælibet	quidlibet } <i>wish</i>
quidam	quædam	quiddam <i>a certain person, or thing</i>

ADJECTIVE		
M.	F.	N.
quī	quæ or qua	quod <i>any</i>
aliquī	aliqua	aliquod <i>any</i>
quispiam	quaepiam	quodpiam <i>any</i>
quisque	quæque	quodque <i>each</i>
quīvis	quævis	quodvis } <i>any you wish</i>
quīlibet	quælibet	quodlibet }
quidam	quædam	quoddam <i>a certain</i>

VERBS

First Conjugation

PRINCIPAL PARTS : amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum

STEMS: amā-, amāv-, amāt-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PRESENT			
<i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		<i>I am loved</i>	
amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris or -re	amāmini
amat	amant	amātur	amantur
PAST			
<i>I loved, was loving, did love</i>		<i>I was loved</i>	
amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris or -re	amābāmini
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur
FUTURE			
<i>I shall love</i>		<i>I shall be loved</i>	
amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis or -re	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur
PERFECT			
<i>I have loved, I loved</i>		<i>I have been (was) loved</i>	
amāvī	amāvimus	amātus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amātī} \\ (-ae, -a) \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
amāvisti	amāvistis	(-a, -um)	
amāvit	amāverunt		
	or -re		

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PAST PERFECT			
<i>I had loved</i>		<i>I had been loved</i>	
amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus	eram
amāverās	amāverātis	(-a, -um)	erās amāti
amāverat	amāverant		erat (-ae, -a) erātis
			erant

FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have loved</i>		<i>I shall have been loved</i>	
amāverō	amāverimus	amātus	erō
amāveris	amāveritis	(-a, -um)	eris amāti
amāverit	amāverint		erit (-ae, -a) eritis
			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris or -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur
PAST			
amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris or -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur
PERFECT			
amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	sim
amāveris	amāveritis	(-a, -um)	sis amāti
amāverit	amāverint		sit (-ae, -a) sītis
			sint
PAST PERFECT			
amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus	essem
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	(-a, -um)	essēs amāti
amāvisset	amāvissent		esset (-ae, -a) essētis
			essent

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

amā, love (thou)
amāte, love (ye)

amāre, be (thou) loved
amāmini, be (ye) loved

FUTURE

amātō, thou shalt love
amātō, he shall love
amātōte, you shall love
amantō, they shall love

amātor, thou shalt be loved
amātor, he shall be loved

amantor, they shall be loved

INFINITIVES

PRES. *amāre, to love*

amārī, to be loved

FUT. *amātūrus (-a, -um)*
esse, to be about to
love

amātum irī, to be about to
loved

PERF. *amāvisse, to have loved*

amātus (-a, -um) esse, to have
been loved

PARTICIPLES

PRES. *amāns, -antis, loving*

PERF. *amātus (-a, -um),*

FUT. *amātūrus (-a, -um),*
about to love

having been loved

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

G. *amandī, of loving*
D. *amandō, for loving*
Ac. *amandum, loving*
Ab. *amandō, by loving*

amandus (-a, -um), to be
loved

SUPINE

amātum, to love
amātū, to love

Second Conjugation

PRINCIPAL PARTS : moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

STEMS : monē-, monu-, monit-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PRESENT			
<i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>		<i>I am advised, am being advised</i>	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris or -re	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
PAST			
<i>I was advising, advised, did advise</i>		<i>I was advised, was being advised</i>	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris or -re	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur
FUTURE			
<i>I shall advise</i>		<i>I shall be advised</i>	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis or -re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur
PERFECT			
<i>I have advised, advised</i>		<i>I have been advised, was advised</i>	
monuī	monuimus	monitus (-a, -um)	moniti { sumus
monuisti	monuistis		estis
monuīt	monuērunt or -re		sunt

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PAST PERFECT			
<i>I had advised</i>		<i>I had been advised</i>	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus	{ eram moniti
monuerās	monuerātis	(-a, -um)	{ erās (-ae, -a)
monuerat	monuerant		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have advised</i>		<i>I shall have been advised</i>	
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	{ erō moniti
monueris	monueritis	(-a, -um)	{ eris (-ae, -a)
monuerit	monuerint		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris or -re	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

PAST			
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris or -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT			
monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	{ sim moniti
monueris	monueritis	(-a, -um)	{ sis (-ae, -a)
monuerit	monuerint		{ sit sint

PAST PERFECT			
monuisssem	monuissēmus	monitus	{ essem moniti
monuissēs	monuissētis	(-a, -um)	{ essēs (-ae, -a)
monuisset	monuissent		{ esset essent

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

monē, *advise (thou)*monēre, *be (thou) advised*monēte, *advise (ye)*monēmini, *be (ye) advised*

FUTURE

monētō, *thou shalt advise*monētor, *thou shalt be advised*monētō, *he shall advise*monētor, *he shall be advised*monētōte, *you shall advise*monentō, *they shall advise*monentor, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVES

PRES. monēre, *to advise*monēri, *to be advised*

FUT. monitūrus (-a, -um)

monitum iri, *to be about to be ad-*esse, *to be about*

vised

to advise

PERF. monuisse, *to have*monitus (-a, -um) esse, *to have*

advised

been advised

PARTICIPLES

PRES. monēns, -entis, *advising*PRES. monitus (-a, -um), *hav-*

FUT. monitūrus (-a, -um),

ing *been advised, ad-*

about to advise

vised

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

G. monendī, *of advising*monendus (-a, -um), *to be ad-*D. monendō, *for advising*

vised

Ac. monendum, *advising*Ab. monendō, *by advising*

SUPINE

monitum, *to advise*monitū, *to advise*

Third Conjugation

PRINCIPAL PARTS : regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum

STEMS : rege-, rēx-, rēct-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PRESENT			
<i>I rule, am ruling, do rule</i>		<i>I am ruled, am being ruled</i>	
rego	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris or -re	regimini
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur
PAST			
<i>I was ruling, ruled, did rule</i>		<i>I was ruled, was being ruled</i>	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris or -re	regēbāmini
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur
FUTURE			
<i>I shall rule</i>		<i>I shall be ruled</i>	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris or -re	regēmini
reget	regent	regētur	regentur
PERFECT			
<i>I have ruled, ruled</i>		<i>I have been ruled, was ruled</i>	
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus	<div> <div> <div>sum</div> <div>es</div> <div>est</div> </div> <div> <div>rēcti</div> <div>(-ae, -a)</div> </div> <div> <div>sumus</div> <div>estis</div> <div>sunt</div> </div> </div>
rēxistī	rēxistis	(-a, -um)	
rēxit	rēxērunt or -re		
PAST PERFECT			
<i>I had ruled</i>		<i>I had been ruled</i>	
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus	<div> <div>eram</div> <div>erās</div> <div>(-a, -um) erat</div> </div> <div> <div>rēcti</div> <div>(-ae, -a)</div> </div> <div> <div>erāmus</div> <div>erātis</div> <div>erant</div> </div>
rēxerās	rēxerātis		
rēxerat	rēxerant		

ACTIVE		PASSIVE			
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.		
FUTURE PERFECT					
<i>I shall have ruled</i>		<i>I shall have been ruled</i>			
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus	{ erō { eris { erit	rēcti	{ erimus { eritis { erunt
rēxeris	rēxeritis	(-a, -um)		(-ae, -a)	
rēxerit	rēxerint				

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris or -rē	regāmini
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

PAST

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris or -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus	{ sim	rēcti	{ simus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	(-a, -um) {	sis	(-ae, -a) {	sitis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit		sint

PAST PERFECT

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus	{ essem	recti	{ essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis	(-a, -um) {	essēs	(-ae, -a) {	essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

rege, *rule (thou)*
regite, *rule (ye)*

regere, *be (thou) ruled*
regimini, *be (ye) ruled*

FUTURE

regitō, *thou shalt rule*
regitōte, *ye shall rule*
regitō, *he shall rule*
reguntō, *they shall rule*

regitor, *thou shalt be ruled*
regitor, *he shall be ruled*
reguntor, *they shall be ruled*

INFINITIVES

PRES. **regere**, *to rule*

regī, *to be ruled*

FUT. **rēctūrus (-a, -um) esse**,
to be about to rule

rēctum iri, *to be about to be ruled*

PERF. **rēxisse**, *to have ruled*

rēctus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been ruled*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. **regēns, -entis**, *ruling*

PERF. **rēctus (-a, -um)**, *ruled, having been ruled*

FUT. **rēctūrus (-a, -um)**,
about to rule

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

G. **regendī**, *of ruling*

regendus (-a, -um), *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled*

D. **regendō**, *for ruling*

Ac. **regendum**, *ruling*

Ab. **regendō**, *by ruling*

SUPINE

rēctum, *to rule*

rēctū, *to rule, be ruled*

Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō

PRINCIPAL PARTS : capiō, capere, cēpi, captum

STEMS : capi- and cape-, cēp-, capt-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PRESENT			
<i>I take, am taking, do take</i>		<i>I am taken</i>	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis or -re	capimini
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

PAST			
<i>I took, was taking, did take</i>		<i>I was taken</i>	
capiebam, etc.		capiebar, etc.	

FUTURE			
<i>I shall take</i>		<i>I shall be taken</i>	
capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
capies	capietis	capieris or -re	capiemini
capiet	capient	capietur	capientur

PERFECT			
<i>I have taken, took</i>		<i>I have been (was) taken</i>	
cēpi, etc.		captus (-a, -um) sum, etc.	

PAST PERFECT			
<i>I had taken</i>		<i>I had been taken</i>	
cēperam, etc.		captus (-a, -um) eram, etc.	

FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>I shall have taken</i>		<i>I shall have been taken</i>	
cēperō, etc.		captus erō, etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PRESENT			
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris or -re	capiāmini
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
PAST			
caperem, etc.		caperer, etc.	
PERFECT			
cōperim, etc.		captus (-a, -um) sim, etc.	
PAST PERFECT			
cōpissem, etc.		captus (-a, -um) essem, etc.	

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	
cape, take (thou)	capere, be (thou) taken
capite, take (ye)	capimini, be (ye) taken
FUTURE	
capitō, thou shalt take	capitor, thou shalt be taken
capitō, he shall take	capitor, he shall be taken
capitōte, ye shall take	
capiuntō, they shall take	capiuntor, they shall be taken

INFINITIVE

PRES.	capere, to take	capī, to be taken.
FUT.	captūrus (-a, -um)	captum irī, to be about to be taken
	esse, to be about to take	
PERF.	cōpisse, to have taken	captus (-a, -um) esse, to have been taken

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	<i>capiens, -ientis, taking</i>	PERF.	<i>captus (-a, -um), taken, having been taken.</i>
FUT.	<i>capturus (-a, -um), about to take</i>		

GERUND

G.	<i>capienti, of taking</i>
D.	<i>capiendo, for taking</i>
Ac.	<i>capendum, taking</i>
Ab.	<i>capiendo, by taking</i>

GERUNDIVE

<i>capendus (-a, -um), to be taken</i>
--

SUPINE

<i>captum, to take</i>
<i>captū, to take</i>

Fourth Conjugation

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *audiō, audire, audiui, auditum*STEMS : *audi-, audiv-, audit-*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PRESENT			
<i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i>		<i>I am heard</i>	
<i>audiō</i>	<i>audimus</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>audimur</i>
<i>audis</i>	<i>auditis</i>	<i>audiris or -re</i>	<i>audimini</i>
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiunt</i>	<i>auditur</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>
PAST			
<i>I heard, was hearing, did hear</i>		<i>I was heard</i>	
<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>
<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbātis</i>	<i>audiēbāris or -re</i>	<i>audiēbāmini</i>
<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbant</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>I shall hear</i>		<i>I shall be heard</i>	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris or -re	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur
FUTURE			
<i>I have heard, I heard</i>		<i>I have been (was) heard</i>	
audiui	audivimus	auditus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right. \text{audiui} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
audivisti	audivistis	(-a, -um)	(-ae, -a)
audivit	audivērunt		
	or -re		
PERFECT			
<i>I had heard</i>		<i>I had been heard</i>	
audiveram	audiverāmus	auditus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right. \text{audivi} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
audiverās	audiverātis	(-a, -um)	(-ae, -a)
audiverat	audiverant		
PAST PERFECT			
<i>I shall have heard</i>		<i>I shall have been heard</i>	
audiverō	audiverimus	auditus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right. \text{audivi} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
audiveris	audiveritis	(-a, -um)	(-a, -ae)
audiverit	audiverint		
FUTURE PERFECT			

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris or -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
PAST			
audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris or -re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur
PERFECT			
audiverim	audiverimus	auditus	auditi
audiveris	audiveritis	(-a, -um) {	sim {
audiverit	audiverint	sīs (-ae, -a) {	auditi {
		sit	sint
PAST PERFECT			
audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus	auditi
audivissēs	audivissētis	(-a, -um) {	essem {
audivisset	audivissent	essēs (-ae, -a) {	auditi {
		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, <i>hear (thou)</i>	audire, <i>be (thou) heard</i>
audite, <i>hear (ye)</i>	audimini, <i>be (ye) heard</i>

FUTURE

audītō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>	auditor, <i>thou shalt be heard</i>
audītō, <i>he shall hear</i>	auditor, <i>he shall be heard</i>
audītōte, <i>ye shall hear</i>	
audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>	audiuntor, <i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES.	audire, <i>to hear</i>	audiri, <i>to be heard</i>
FUT.	audīturus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	auditum iri, <i>to be about to be heard</i>
PERF.	audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>	auditus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to have been heard</i>

PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	audiēns, -ientis, <i>hear- ing</i>	PERF. auditus (-a, -um), <i>heard, having been</i>
FUT.	audītūrus (-a, -um), <i>about to hear</i>	<i>heard</i>

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

G.	audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>	audiendus (-a, -um), <i>to be</i>
D.	audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>	<i>heard</i>
Ac.	audiendum, <i>hearing</i>	
Ab.	audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>	

SUPINE

Ac.	audītum, <i>to hear</i>
Ab.	audītū, <i>to hear.</i>

Deponent Verbs

Paradigms of deponent verbs are as follows:

I	Conj.	mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, <i>admire</i>
II	Conj.	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
III	Conj.	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
III	(in -ior)	patior, pati, passus sum, <i>suffer</i>
IV	Conj.	largior, largiri, largitus sum, <i>give</i>

INDICATIVE

I	II	III	III (in -ior)	IV
mīror	vereor	sequor	patior	largior
mīrāris	verērīs	sequeris	pateris	largiris
mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	patitur	largitur
mīrāmur	verēmur	sequimur	patimur	largimur
mīrāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	patiminī	largiminī
mīrantur	verentur	sequuntur	patiuntur	largiuntur
mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	patiēbar	largiēbar
mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	patiar	largiar
mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	largitus sum
mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	largitus eram
mīrātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	largitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

I	II	III	III (in -ior)	IV
mirer	verear	sequar	patiar	largiar
mirārer	verērer	sequerer	paterer	largīrer
mirātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	largītus sim
mirātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	largītus essem

IMPERATIVE

mirāre	verēre	sequere	patere	largire
mirātor	verētor	sequitor	patitor	largitor

INFINITIVES

mirārī	verērī	sequī	pati	largī
mirātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	passus esse	largītus esse
mirātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	passūrus esse	largītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

mirāns	verēns	sequēns	patiēns	largiēns
mirātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	passūrus	largītūrus
mirātus	veritus	secūtus	passus	largītus
mirandus	verendus	sequendus	patiendus	largiendus

GERUND

mirandi	verendi	sequendi	patiendi	largiendi
mirandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	patendō, etc.	largiendō, etc.

SUPINE

mirātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	passum, -sū	largitum, -tū
--------------	--------------	--------------	-------------	---------------

Semi-Deponent Verbs

Semi-deponents are verbs which have the present system in the active voice, but the perfect system in the passive, without change of meaning. They are as follows:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
 gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, *rejoice*
 soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be wont*
 fidō, fidere, fisus sum, *trust*,
 and their compounds

Periphrastic Conjugation

There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, the active and the passive. The active is formed by combining the future active participle, and the passive by combining the gerundive, with **sum**.

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amātūrus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I am about to love</i>
PAST	amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love</i>
FUT.	amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>
PERF.	amātūrus fui, <i>I have been (was) about to love</i>
PAST P.	amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>
FUT. P.	amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amātūrus sim
PAST	amātūrus essem
PERF.	amātūrus fuerim
PAST P.	amātūrus fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amātūrus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to be about to love</i>
PERF.	amātūrus (-a, -um) fuisse, <i>to have been about to love</i>

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I am to be loved, must be loved</i>
PAST	amandus eram, <i>I was to be loved</i>
FUT.	amandus erō, <i>I shall deserve to be loved</i>
PERF.	amandus fui, <i>I was to be loved</i>
PAST P.	amandus fueram, <i>I had deserved to be loved</i>
FUT. P.	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have deserved to be loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amandus sim
PAST	amandus essem
PERF.	amandus fuerim
PAST P.	amandus fuisset

INFINITIVES

PRES.	amandus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to deserve to be loved</i>
PERF.	amandus (-a, -um) fuisse, <i>to have deserved to be loved</i>

Irregular Verbs

A number of verbs are called *irregular*. The most important are **sum, possum, prōsum, ferō, volō, nōlō, mālō, eō, fiō**. The peculiarity of these verbs is that they add the personal endings in many forms directly to the stem, instead of employing a connecting vowel.

sum, *be*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fui

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>
es, <i>you are</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>
est, <i>he is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>

PAST

eram, I was
erās, thou wast
erat, he was

erāmus, we were
erātis, you were
erant, they were

FUTURE

erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be

erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fui, I have been, I was
fuisti, thou hast been, thou wast
fuit, he has been, he was

fuiamus, we have been, we were
fuistis, you have been, you were
fuērunt, } they have been, they
fuēre, } were

PAST PERFECT

fueram, I had been
fuerās, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been

fuerāmus, we had been
fuerātis, you had been
fuerant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, thou will have been
fuerit, he will have been

fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sim
sis
sit

simus
sitis
sint

PAST

*essem*¹
essēs
esset

essēmus
essētis
essent

¹ For *essem, essēs, esset, essent*, the forms *forem, forēs, foret, forent* are sometimes used.

PERFECT

fuërim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

PAST PERFECT

fuissem	fuissëmus
fuissës	fuissëtis
fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	es, be (thou)	este, be (ye)
FUT.	estô, thou shall be	estôte, ye shall be
	estô, he shall be	suntô, they shall be

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	esse, to be	
FUT.	futûrus (-a, -um)	FUT. futûrus (-a, -um),
	esse,¹ to be about to	about to be
	be	
PERF.	fuisse, to have been	

possum, be able, can

PRINCIPAL PARTS : possum, posse, potuî, —

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possîmus
	potes	potestis	possis	possîtis
	potest	possit	possit	possint
PAST	poteram	poterâmus	possem	possëmus
FUT.	poterô	poterimus		
PERF.	potuî	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PAST P.	potueram	potuerâmus	potuissem	potuissëmus
FUT. P.	potuerô	potuerimus		

¹ For futûrus esse the form fore is often used.

INFINITIVES

PRES. *posse*PERF. *potuisse*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. *potēns (-entis)**prōsum, benefit*PRINCIPAL PARTS : *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui*

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	<i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōsīmus</i>
	<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
	<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>
PAST	<i>prōderam</i>	<i>prōderāmus</i>	<i>prōdessem</i>	<i>prōdessēmus</i>
FUT.	<i>prōderō</i>	<i>prōderimus</i>		
PERF.	<i>prōfui</i>	<i>prōfuiimus</i>	<i>prōfuerim</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>
PAST P.	<i>prōfueram</i>	<i>prōfuerāmus</i>	<i>prōfuissem</i>	<i>prōfuissemus</i>
FUT. P.	<i>prōfuerō</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>		

IMPERATIVE

PRES. *prōdes, prōdeste*FUT. *prōdestō, prōdestōte*

INFINITIVE

PRES. *prōdesse*PERF. *prōfuisse*FUT. *prōfutūrus esse*

PARTICIPLE

FUT. *prōfutūrus*

The following are important compounds of **sum** :

absum	abesse	āfui	<i>be absent</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE, absēns (-enti), absent			
adsum	adesse	adfui	<i>be present</i>
dēsum	deesse	dēfui	<i>be lacking</i>
insum	inesse	infui	<i>be in</i>
intersum	interesse	interfui	<i>be among</i>
praesum	praeesse	praefui	<i>be in charge of</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE, praesēns (-enti), present			
obsum	obesse	obfui	<i>hinder</i>
subsum	subesse	subfui	<i>be underneath</i>
supersum	superesse	superfui	<i>be left, survive</i>

volō, nōlō, mālō

PRINCIPAL PARTS

volō, velle, volui, *be willing, wish*
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, *be unwilling*
mālō, mālle, mālui, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
PAST	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERF.	volui	nōlui	mālui
PAST P.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
PAST	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	mālles
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PAST P.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	—	nōlī	—
		nōlīte	
FUT.	—	nōlītō, etc.	—

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
--------------	--------	--------	---

*ferō, bear, carry*PRINCIPAL PARTS : *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRES.	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris or -re</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>
PAST	<i>ferēbam</i>		<i>ferēbar</i>	
FUT.	<i>feram</i>		<i>ferar</i>	
PERF.	<i>tuli</i>		<i>lātus sum</i>	
PAST P.	<i>tuleram</i>		<i>lātus eram</i>	
FUT. P.	<i>tulerō</i>		<i>lātus erō</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>
PAST	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferrer</i>
PERF.	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>
PAST P.	<i>tulissem</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	<i>fer¹</i>	<i>ferte</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
FUT.	<i>fertō</i>	<i>fertōte</i>	<i>fertor</i>	
	<i>fertō</i>	<i>feruntō</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>feruntor</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferri</i>
PERF.	<i>tulisse</i>	<i>lātus esse</i>
FUT.	<i>lātūrus esse</i>	<i>lātum iri</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	<i>ferēns</i>	PERF. <i>lātus</i>
FUT.	<i>lātūrus</i>	

¹ Note that -e is wanting.

GERUND

G. ferendi

D. ferendō

Ac. ferendum

Ab. ferendō

GERUNDIVE

ferendus

SUPINE

lātum

lātū

Compounds :

afferō	afferre	attuli	allātum	<i>bring toward</i>
auferō	auferre	abstuli	ablātum	<i>take away</i>
cōferō	cōferre	contuli	collātum	<i>compare</i>
differō	differre	distuli	dilātum	<i>put off</i>
efferō	efferre	extuli	ēlātum	<i>carry out</i>
inferō	inferre	intuli	illātum	<i>bring against</i>
offerō	offerre	obtuli	oblātum	<i>present</i>
referō	referre	rettuli	relātum	<i>bring back</i>

NOTE. — The forms **sustuli** and **sublātum** usually belong to **tollō**, *take away*, rarely to **sufferō**, *support*.

fiō, *become, be made*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : fiō, fieri, factus sum

INDICATIVE

PRES.	fiō, fis, fit	fimus, fitis, fiunt
PAST	fiēbam	fiēbāmus
FUT.	fiam	fiēmus
PERF.	factus sum	facti sumus
PAST P.	factus eram	facti erāmus
FUT. P.	factus erō	facti erimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	fiam	fiāmus
PAST.	fierem	fierēmus
PERF.	factus sim	facti sīmus
PAST P.	factus essem	facti essēmus

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fi	fite
-------	----	------

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	feri		
PERF.	factus esse	PERF.	factus
FUT.	factum iri	GER.	faciendus

NOTE. — A few forms of compounds of *fiō* occur; as, *dēfiō*, *lacks*; *infiō*, *begins*.

eō, go

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *eō, ire, iī or ivi, itum*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	eō	imus
	is	itis
	it	eunt
PAST	ibam	
FUT.	ibō	
PERF.	iī (ivi)	
PAST P.	ieram	
FUT. P.	ierō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	eam
PAST	irem
PERF.	ierim (iverim)
PAST P.	issem (ivissem, iissem)

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	i	ite
FUT.	itō	itōte
	itō	euntō

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ire
PERF.	isse (Ivisse, iisse)
FUT.	itūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	iōns (-euntis)
FUT.	itūrus

GERUND¹

G.	eundi	Ac.	eundum
D.	eundō	Ab.	eundō

SUPINE

itum	itū
------	-----

Defective Verbs

Defective verbs lack certain forms. The following are the most important :

coepi , <i>I have begun</i>	memini , <i>I remember</i>	ōdi , <i>I hate</i>
------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------

INDICATIVE

PERF.	coepī	meminī	ōdī
PAST P.	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
FUT. P.	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PERF.	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
PAST P.	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

IMPERATIVE

SING.	mementō	PLUR.	mementōte
-------	---------	-------	-----------

¹ The gerundive of *eō* occurs in the neuter, *eundum*.

INFINITIVE

PERF.	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
FUT.	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

PERF.	coeptus, begun	ōsus
FUT.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus

When *coepi* governs a passive infinitive it usually takes the form *coeptus est*; as, *amāri coeptus est, he began to be loved.*

Note that *memini* and *ōdi*, though perfect in form, are present in sense. Similarly the past perfect and future perfect have the force of the past and future; as, *memineram, I remembered*; *ōderō, I shall hate.*

Conjugation of *aiō, say*

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	aiō	—	—	—
	ais	—	aiās	—
	ait	aiunt	aiat	—
PAST	aiēbam	aiēbāmus		
	aiēbās	aiēbātis		
	aiēbat	aiēbant		
IMPERATIVE			PARTICIPLE	
ai (rare)			aiēns	

Conjugation of *inquam, say*

INDICATIVE				
PRES.	inquam	inquimus	FUT.	—
	inquis	inquitis		inquiēs
	inquit	inquiunt		inquiet
PAST	—	—	PERF.	inquiī
	—	—		inquistī
	inquiēbat	—		—
IMPERATIVE				
inque		inquitō		

Only *inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt* and the forms of the future are in common use.

RULES OF SYNTAX

1. **Subject.** — The *subject* of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

2. **Object.** — The *direct object* of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

3. **Agreement of Verb.** — A *finite verb* agrees with its subject in person and number.

4. **Predicate Noun.** — A *predicate noun* agrees with its subject in case.

5. **Appositive.** — An *appositive* agrees in case with the noun to which it refers.

6. **Genitive.** — A noun *limiting* another noun, and not meaning the same person or thing, is in the genitive case.

7. **Indirect Object.** — The *indirect object* of a verb is in the dative case.

8. **Separation.** — The *ablative* with or without a preposition is used to denote separation or privation.

9. **Means or Instrument.** — *Means* or *instrument* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

10. **Agent.** — The ablative with *ā* or *ab* is used with passive verbs to denote the *personal agent*.

11. **Place In Which and From Which.** — Except with names of cities, towns, small islands, *domus*, and *rūs*, place *in which* is expressed by the ablative with *in*, and place *from which* by the ablative with *ab*, *ex*, or *dē*. The preposition is sometimes omitted.

12. **Accompaniment.** — The ablative with *cum* is used to denote *accompaniment*. In *military movements* *cum* is often omitted.

13. **Vocative.** — The *vocative* is the case of direct address.

14. **Agreement of Adjectives.** — An adjective agrees with its noun in *gender, number, and case*.

15. **Dative of Possession.** — The dative with the verb *sum* is used to denote the *possessor*, the *thing possessed* being in the nominative, the subject of the verb.

16. **Ablative of Respect.** — The *ablative of respect* is used to denote that *in respect to which* something is or is done.

17. **Manner.** — The *ablative* with *cum* is used to denote *manner*. The preposition may be omitted when the ablative is modified by an adjective. A few special words are used without either preposition or adjective to express manner; as, *iūre, iniūriā, vī, fraude*, etc.

18. **Two Accusatives.** — Many verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing*, and the like, take two accusatives, one of the person or thing affected, the other a predicate accusative. In the passive the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative a predicate nominative.

Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching*, and *cēlō, conceal*, may take two accusatives, one of the *person*, and one of the *thing*. In the passive the *person* becomes the subject while the accusative of the *thing* is retained.

19. **Cause.** — The *ablative*, not necessarily with a preposition, is used to denote *cause*.

20. **Partitive Genitive.** — The *partitive genitive* denotes the whole; the word which it limits, a part.

21. **Dative of Purpose or Tendency.** — The *dative* is used to denote *purpose* or *tendency*, often with another dative of the person or thing affected.

22. **Locative.** — With names of *cities, towns, small islands, domus*, and *rūs*, the place *in which* or *at which* is expressed by the locative. This is an old case, whose form in the singular of the first and second declensions is the same as that of the genitive, and in the third declension and plural of all, the same as that of the dative or ablative.

23. Subjective Genitive. — The *subjective genitive* denotes the subject of a verbal idea contained in the word which it limits.

24. Objective Genitive. — The *objective genitive* denotes the object of a verbal idea contained in the word which it limits.

25. Prepositions with Accusative. — The following prepositions govern the *accusative* :

ad , to	contrā , against	praeter , past
adversus , against	ergā , towards	prope , near
adversum , toward,	extrā , outside of	propter , on account
against	infrā , below	of
ante , before	inter , among, be-	secundum , next to,
apud , with, near	tween	following
circā , around	intrā , within	super , over, above
circiter , about	iūxtā , close by, near	suprā , above
circum , around	ob , on account of	trāns , across
cis , this side of	per , through	ultrā , beyond
citrā , this side of	post , after	versus , toward

26. Prepositions with Ablative. — The following prepositions govern the *ablative* :

ā , ab , abs , from, by	ē , ex , out of, from	sine , without
cum , with	prae , in front of	tenu , up to, as
dē , down from, concerning	prō , in front of, in behalf of	far as

27. Prepositions with Accusative and Ablative. — Two prepositions, **in** and **sub**, are used with both the *accusative* and *ablative* ; with the *accusative* they denote *motion towards* a place, and with the *ablative*, *rest in a place*. Hence, **in** with the *accusative* means *into*, and with the *ablative*, *in* or *on*; while **sub** with both cases means *under*.

28. Prefixes. — The most common *prefixes* are the following :

ā, ab, abs, away from, from	extrā, outside of in (un), not	praeter, beyond prō, before
ad, to, towards	in (en), in, into, to, against	re, red, back
am, amb, around	infrā, below	retrō, backward
ante, before	inter, among, be- tween	sē, sēd, apart
bī, bis, two	intrā, within	sēmi, half
circum, around	intrō, within	sine, without
cis, on this side of	iūxtā, next to	sub, under
con, together with, with	nōn, not	subter, underneath
contrā, (counter), opposite, against	ob, in the way of	super (sur), over, above
dē, down from, con- cerning	per, through	suprā, above
dī, dis, apart	por, forth	trāns, across
ē, ex, out of, from	post, after	ultrā, beyond, ex- treme
	prae, in front of, before	

29. **Dative with Compounds.** — The *dative* is used with verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, super,* and sometimes *circum.*

30. **Descriptive Genitive.** — The *genitive, modified by an adjective,* may be used to describe a noun.

31. **Descriptive Ablative.** — The *ablative, modified by an adjective,* may be used to describe a noun or a pronoun.

32. **Genitive with Adjectives.** — The *genitive* is used with adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt,* and their opposites.

33. **Dative with Adjectives.** — The *dative* is used with adjectives denoting *fitness, nearness, likeness, inclination,* and their opposites.

34. **Complementary Infinitive.** — The *infinitive* is used with many verbs to *complete their meaning.*

35. **Relations of Time.** — *Time how long* is expressed by the accusative, *time when or within which* by the ablative.

36. **Extent of Space.** — *Extent of space* is expressed by the *accusative*.

37. **Possessive Genitive.** — The *genitive* is used to denote *possession* or *ownership*.

38. **Predicate Genitive.** — The *possessive genitive* is often used in the *predicate*, especially with **esse** (*to be*) and **fieri** (*to become*).

39. **Ablative Absolute.** — The *ablative absolute* consists of words in the *ablative case*, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It may be made up of a *noun* or *pronoun*, joined with (1) a *participle*, or (2) an *adjective* or another *noun*, with the idea of *being* understood.

40. **Subject Accusative.** — The *subject* of the *infinitive* is in the *accusative case*.

41. **Ablative of Price.** — The *price at which* anything is *bought* or *sold* is designated by the *ablative*. But indefinite value is usually denoted by the *genitive* of certain adjectives; as, **magni, parvi, multi, quanti, tanti**, *at a great price, at a low (small) price*, etc.

42. **Signs of Questions.** — In asking questions, **nōne** expects the answer *yes*, **num** expects the answer *no*, and the enclitic **-ne**, joined to the emphatic word, which is usually placed first, asks for *information*, without implying either *yes* or *no*.

43. **Agreement of Relatives.** — A *relative pronoun*, like a *noun*, has a *case of its own*, determined by its construction in the sentence; but in *gender, number, and person*, it *agrees with its antecedent*.

44. **Ablative after Comparatives.** — The *ablative* is often used with *comparatives* in the sense of *than*. This construction, as a rule, occurs as a substitute for **quam**, *than*, only with the *nominative* or *accusative*. In the other cases **quam** must be used.

45. **Ablative of Measure of Difference.** — With *compara-*

tives and words implying a comparison (as **post**, **ante**, etc.) the *measure* of the difference is expressed by the *ablative*.

46. **Ablative with Deponents.** — The *deponents* **ûtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vescor**, and their compounds take the *ablative* (of *means* or *instrument*).

47. **Genitive of Measure.** — The *genitive*, modified by a *numeral adjective*, is used to denote *measure* (length, breadth, etc.). This construction is a development of the descriptive *genitive*.

48. **Gerund.** — The *gerund* is a *verbal noun*, and has the constructions of a noun.

49. **Gerundive.** — Instead of the *gerund* with a *direct object* another construction usually occurs. The noun which would be the object of the *gerund* is put in the case of the *gerund*, and the *gerundive*, as an *adjective*, agrees with it. Thus the *gerundive* agrees with its apparent object. This is called the *gerundive construction*.

50. **Supine in -um.** — The *supine* in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

51. **Supine in -û.** — The *supine* in **-û** is used as an *ablative of respect* with certain adjectives.

52. **Indirect Discourse.** — When the words or thought of another are given without change, the construction is called *direct discourse* (**ôrâtîô rēcta**); as, *Caesar said*, "Of all these, the bravest are the Belgians." But when the words or thoughts of another are made to depend upon a verb of *saying*, *thinking*, or the like, we have the construction known as *indirect discourse* (**ôrâtîô obliqua**); as, *Caesar said that*, of all these, the bravest were the Belgians.

53. **Construction in Indirect Discourse.** — After verbs and other expressions of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, *seeing*, *hearing*, and the like, the main verb is put in the *infinitive with subject accusative*, and subordinate verbs are put in the *subjunctive*. In Latin no conjunction cor-

responding to the English *that* follows the verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc.

54. Primary and Secondary Tenses. — The *primary tenses* are as follows: Indicative, *present*, *two futures*, *perfect definite* or *present perfect*; Subjunctive, *present (continued action)*, *perfect (completed action)*; Imperative, *present* and *future*. The *secondary tenses* are: Indicative, *present historical (frequently)*, *past descriptive* (commonly called simply *past*), *perfect indefinite* or *past absolute (without have)*, *past perfect*; Subjunctive, *past (continued action)*, *past perfect (completed action)*.

55. Harmony of Tenses. — A *primary tense* in the *main clause* is followed by a *primary tense* in the *subordinate clause*, and a *secondary tense* in the *main clause* is followed by a *secondary tense* in the *subordinate clause*.

56. Indirect Question. — An *indirect question*, introduced by an *interrogative pronoun*, or other *interrogative word*, and depending on a verb of *asking*, or the like, takes its verb in the subjunctive.

57. Cum Temporal. — *Cum* meaning *when*, referring to the past, accompanies: (1) the *indicative (past, perfect indefinite, or past perfect)*, when it *fixes the time* at which something actually occurred; (2) the *subjunctive (past or past perfect)*, when it *describes the situation* at the time of some occurrence. When *cum* refers to the present or future, it is regularly used with the indicative.

58. Subjunctive of Command. — The *present subjunctive*, most frequently in the third person, is used to *express a command*.

59. Exhortation. — An *exhortation* is expressed by the first person, usually plural, of the *present subjunctive*. The negative is *nē*.

60. Wishes. — The subjunctive is used in expressions of *wishing*, usually introduced by *utinam*. The negative is *nē*.

A wish referring to the future, which *may be fulfilled*, is expressed by the *present subjunctive*.

A wish *unfulfilled in present time* is expressed by the *past subjunctive*.

A wish *unfulfilled in past time* is expressed by the *past perfect subjunctive*. **Utinam** may be omitted if the present subjunctive occurs, but is used with the past and past perfect. Unfulfilled wishes may also be conveniently designated as *contrary to fact*, *present* and *past*, like the conditional sentences so designated, to which they exactly correspond.

61. **Imperative.** — The *imperative* is used in *commands*, *admonitions*, and *entreaties*. The present is the tense most commonly used, but the future is employed in *laws*, *treaties*, *solemn injunctions*, etc.

62. **Prohibitions.** — A *prohibition* is a negative command. In the second person prohibitions are commonly expressed by **nōlī** (plural **nōlīte**) with the present infinitive; or more rarely by **cavē** or **cavē nē** with the present subjunctive.

A prohibition may also be expressed by **nē** with the *second and third person, singular and plural*, of the *present* or *perfect subjunctive*.

63. **Potential.** — The *potential subjunctive* denotes an action or state not as *real*, but as *possible*, often expressed in English by the words *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*.

64. **Dubitative.** — In questions implying *doubt*, *indignation*, *impossibility of a thing being done*, *obligation*, or *propriety*, the *present subjunctive* is used referring to present or future time, and the *past*, referring to the past. The negative is **nōn**.

65. **Cum Causal.** — **Cum** *causal*, meaning *since*, is regularly used with the subjunctive.

66. **Quod, Quia, and Quoniam Clauses.** — **Quod**, **quia**, *because*, and **quoniam**, *since*, are used with the indicative when introducing a reason given on the authority of the

writer or speaker; with the subjunctive, when introducing a reason given on the authority of some one else.

67. **Concessive Clauses.** — **Cum**, *although*, is regularly used with the subjunctive.

68. **Quamquam**, *although*, introduces an admitted fact, and so is used with the indicative.

69. **Etsi** and **tametsi**, *although*, are strictly speaking conditional particles. Hence, the construction is the same as in conditional clauses.

70. **Quamvis**, *as much as you please, although*, introduces a command, and hence takes the subjunctive.

71. **Licet**, *although*, is strictly speaking an impersonal verb in the present tense, meaning *it is allowed*. Hence, when it means *although*, it is followed by the *present* or *perfect subjunctive*.

72. **Postquam**, etc. — **Postquam**, **posteaquam**, **simul**, **simulac**, **simulatque**, **ubi**, **ut**, **ut primum**, **ut semel**, *when, as, or as soon as*, are regularly used with the *perfect indicative*, with the force in English of the *past perfect*.

73. **Antequam** and **Priusquam**. — **Antequam** and **priusquam** (often written **ante . . . quam**, **prius . . . quam**) take the *indicative* to denote an *actual fact*. When they denote *anticipation* or *expectancy*, or that the action *did not take place*, they are used with the subjunctive.

74. **Dum**, *while*. — **Dum**, *while*, takes the *present indicative*, with the force in English of the *past*.

75. **Dum**, etc., *as long as*. — **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *as long as*, are used with the indicative.

76. **Dum**, etc., *until*. — **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, take :

- (1) The indicative, to denote an *actual fact*.
- (2) The subjunctive, to denote *purpose*, *doubt*, or *expectancy*.

77. **Relations of Place.** — In expressing the *relations of place*, except with the names of cities, towns, small islands,

domus (*home*), and **rūs** (*country*), prepositions are required: The place *to which* is expressed by **ad** and **in** with the accusative; the place *from which* by **ab**, **ex**, and **dē** with the ablative; the place *in which* or *at which* by **in** with the ablative. But with names of cities, towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs** the prepositions are omitted; place *to which* is expressed by the accusative; place *from which*, by the ablative; and place *in which* or *at which* by the locative. (See 11 and 22.)

78. **Clauses of Purpose.** — *Clauses of purpose*, introduced by **ut**, **nē**, **quī**, **ubi**, **unde**, and **quō**, denote *purpose* or *design*, and answer the question *why*. They take the verb in the subjunctive. They are divided into three classes: *pure*, *relative*, and *substantive clauses of purpose*.

79. *Pure clauses of purpose*, introduced by **ut**, *that*, *in order that*, and negatively by **nē**, *in order that not*, *lest*, express simple purpose or design, and answer the question *why*. When there is a comparative in the sentence, we usually find **quō** instead of **ut**.

80. *Relative clauses of purpose* are commonly introduced by **quī**, which equals **ut** with the corresponding form of **is**, **ea**, **id**; **ubi** (*where*), which equals **ut ibi** (*there*); and **unde** (*whence*), which equals **ut inde** (*thence*).

81. *Substantive clauses of purpose*, introduced by **ut** and **nē**, are used to complete the meaning of verbs signifying *admonish*, *ask*, *bargain*, *command*, *decree*, *determine*, *permit*, *persuade*, *resolve*, *urge*, and *wish*.

82. **lubeō**, **vetō**, **patior**, and **cōgō** regularly take an *infinitive with subject accusative*, instead of a subjunctive clause. Verbs of *wishing*, as **volō**, **cupiō**, etc., often take the *infinitive with subject accusative*, especially if the subject of the infinitive and the verb of wishing is the same.

83. **With Verbs of Fearing.** — *Substantive clauses* with the verb in the *subjunctive* are used with *verbs of fearing*. Here **nē** means *that*, *lest*, and **ut**, *that not*. **Nē nōn** sometimes

occurs instead of **ut**, especially when the verb of fearing has a negative, or when the writer wishes to emphasize some particular word in the dependent clause.

84. **Clauses of Result.** — *Clauses of result*, introduced by **ut**, **quī**, **ubi**, **unde**, and negatively by **ut nōn**, etc. (not **nē**), express the *result of an action or state*, and take the verb in the subjunctive. They are divided into three classes: *pure*, *relative*, and *substantive clauses of result*.

85. *Pure clauses of result*, introduced by **ut**, *that*, *so that*, and negatively by **ut nōn** and **quīn**, express *simple result*.

86. *Relative clauses of result* are commonly introduced by **quī**, which equals **ut** and the corresponding form of **is**, **ea**, **id**; **ubi** (*where*), which equals **ut ibi** (*there*); and **unde**, *whence*, which equals **ut inde** (*thence*).

87. *Substantive clauses of result*, introduced by **ut** and **nōn**, are used (a) as the object of verbs denoting *the accomplishment of an effort*, especially of **faciō** and its compounds; and (b) as the subject of several impersonal verbs, meaning *it happens, it remains, it follows, it is necessary, it is added*, and the like.

88. **Descriptive Relative Clauses.** — A relative clause expressing a *quality or characteristic* of a *general or indefinite antecedent* usually has the subjunctive mood. The clause of characteristic often denotes *cause (since)*, or *concession (although)*. The clause may be introduced by **quīn**, which equals **quī** (**quae**, **quod**) **nōn**, or by **unde**, *whence*, and **ubi**, *where*.

89. **With Verbs of Preventing, etc.** — *Substantive clauses*, introduced by **nē**, **quōminus**, and **quīn** are used with verbs of *hindering, preventing*, etc., especially with **prohibeō**, **impediō**, and **deterreō**. **Quīn** is used only when the verb of hindering is negative, or stands in a question implying a negative. It is not necessarily used even then.

90. **Clauses with Quīn.** — Substantive clauses introduced by **quīn** are used after negative and interrogative expressions

of *doubt*, *omission*, and the like, especially after **nōn dubitō**, *I do not doubt*, and **non dubium est**, *there is no doubt*. The verb is in the subjunctive.

91. **Conditions.** — A conditional sentence comprises a *condition* and a *conclusion* (the former being often called a *protasis*, the latter an *apodosis*). The *condition* is regularly introduced by **sī**, *if*, **nisi**, *if not, unless*, and **sīn**, *but if*. Conditional sentences may be divided into present, past, and future conditions.

92. Conditions referring to *present time*, with *nothing implied* as to the truth or falsity of the supposition, take the *present indicative* in both condition and conclusion.

Sī adest, gaudeō. *If he is present, I am glad.*

93. Conditions referring to *present time*, but *contrary to fact*, take the *past subjunctive* in both condition and conclusion.

Sī adesset, gaudērem. *If he were present, I should be glad.*

94. Conditions referring to *past time*, with *nothing implied* as to the truth or falsity of the supposition, take some *secondary* tense of the *indicative* in both condition and conclusion.

Sī Rōmam iit, cōsulem vidit. *If he went to Rome, he saw the consul.*

95. Conditions referring to *past time*, but *contrary to fact*, take the *past perfect subjunctive* in both condition and conclusion.

Sī Rōmam isset, consulem vidisset. *If he had gone to Rome, he would have seen the consul.*

96. Conditions referring to *future time*, whose fulfillment is regarded as *probable* (known as *more vivid future conditions*), take the *future* or *future perfect indicative* in both condition and conclusion. The *future perfect* is common in the condition.

Sī Rōmam ibit (or ierit), cōsulem vidēbit. *If he goes (shall go, shall have gone) to Rome, he will see the consul.*

97. Conditions referring to *future time*, whose fulfillment is regarded as *possible* (known as *less vivid future conditions*), take the *present* or *perfect subjunctive* in both condition and conclusion. The perfect subjunctive is common in the condition.

Si Rōmam eat (or **ierit**), **cōnsulem videat**. *If he should go to Rome, he would see the consul.*

98. **Impersonal Verbs.** — *Impersonal verbs* are found in the third person singular. They have no personal subject, but may take an infinitive, a clause, or a neuter pronoun; as, **pluit**, *it rains*; **tonat**, *it thunders*; **rēfert**, *it concerns*, etc.

99. **Construction with Pudet, etc.** — The impersonals **pudet**, *it shames*; **paenitet**, *it makes one repentant*; **miseret**, *it makes one pitiful*; **taedet**, *it wearies*; **piget**, *it disgusts*, take the accusative of the person affected, and the genitive of the cause of the feeling.

100. **Construction with Interest and Rēfert.** — The impersonals **interest** and **rēfert**, *it concerns*, *it interests*, take the genitive of the person, rarely of the thing, affected. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, **mei**, **tui**, etc., the ablative feminine singular of the corresponding possessive is used.

101. **Verbs with the Dative.** — The following verbs are intransitive in Latin, and govern the dative:

adversor , <i>oppose</i>	invidēō , <i>envy</i>	placeō , <i>please</i>
crēdō , <i>believe (trust)</i>	irāscor , <i>be angry with</i>	resistō , <i>resist</i>
faveō , <i>favor</i>	noceō , <i>injure</i>	serviō , <i>serve</i>
fidō , <i>trust</i>	parcō , <i>spare</i>	studeō , <i>be eager</i>
ignōscō , <i>pardon</i>	pāreō , <i>obey</i>	<i>for</i>
imperō , <i>command</i>	persuādēō , <i>per-</i>	suādēō , <i>advise</i>
indulgeō , <i>indulge</i>	<i>suade.</i>	

In the passive voice the verbs are impersonal, and the dative is retained.

102. **Proviso.** — **Dum, modo, dummodo**, *provided, if only*, introducing a *proviso*, take the subjunctive. The negative is **nē**.

103. **Several Ways of Expressing Purpose.** — Purpose may be expressed in several different ways, as follows: by **ut** or **nē**, by a *relative* with the subjunctive, by the *supine* in **-um**, by the “*double dative*” construction, by **causā** or **ad** with the *gerund*, by **causā** or **ad** with the *gerundive*, and by the future active participle. **Causā** always follows the *gerund*, or noun and *gerundive*.

104. **Periphrastic Conjugations.** — The *active periphrastic conjugation* is formed by combining the *future active participle*, and the *passive periphrastic conjugation* by combining the *gerundive*, with the forms of **sum**.

105. **Dative of Agent.** — The *dative of agent* is used with the *gerundive* to denote the person on whom the necessity rests.

106. **Infinitive as Noun.** — The *infinitive*, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with **est** and similar verbs as the subject, in apposition with the subject, and as a predicate noun.

107. **Infinitive as Subject.** — The *infinitive without subject accusative* is used as the subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs, especially with **opus est**, **necesse est**, and **oportet**; and with **libet**, **licet**, and **placet**, with the dative.

108. **Changes in Indirect Discourse.** — In indirect discourse, after verbs of *saying, thinking*, and the like, the main verb of a declarative sentence is changed to the infinitive, with subject accusative, and all subordinate verbs are changed to, or retained in, the subjunctive. Leading verbs are changed as follows: the present indicative to the present infinitive, the past tenses of the indicative to the perfect infinitive, and the future and future perfect indicative to the future infinitive. The verb of the conclusion of a conditional sentence is a leading verb, and hence in indirect discourse is

changed to the infinitive, as follows: in *present* and *past conditions with nothing implied*, regularly to the present and perfect infinitive, respectively; in *future conditions*, both *more vivid* and *less vivid*, to the future infinitive; in *present* and *past conditions contrary to fact*, the past and past perfect subjunctive are changed to the *future active participles with fuisse*, if there is a supine stem, and if the verb is in the active voice; but if there is no supine stem, or if the verb is passive, to the form *futūrum fuisse*, followed by *ut* and the *past subjunctive*. Imperatives, exhortations, prohibitions, and subjunctives of command are changed to the present subjunctive, if the harmony of tenses is primary, and to the past if it is secondary. The negative is *nē*. *Nōlī* of a prohibition is regularly dropped.

109. **Subordinate Verbs in Indirect Discourse.** — In subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, indicatives are changed to the subjunctive, the tenses being employed according to the rule for *harmony of tenses*. (See 55.)

Subordinate verbs which are in the subjunctive in the direct, are retained in the subjunctive in the indirect. After secondary tenses, a present or perfect subjunctive of the direct is changed to the past or past perfect; but after primary tenses a past or past perfect subjunctive of the direct remains unchanged.

110. **Conditional Clauses of Comparison.** — *Conditional clauses of comparison*, introduced by *ac sī, ut sī, quasi, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī, ceu* (in poetry), *as if*, and *quam sī, than if*, take the verb in the subjunctive. For tenses, the principles of *harmony of tenses* are observed.

111. **Construction with Verbs of Remembering.** — In general, when verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* mean *be mindful of, be unmindful of*, they take the genitive; but when they mean *literally call back to memory, retain in the mind, or the opposite*, they take the accusative.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

- ā, ab, abs, prep.** *with abl., away from, from, by; usually ā before consonants, always ab before vowels or h.*
- abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum** (ab, dūcō), lead away, drive off.
- abeō, -ire, -iī, -itum** (ab, eō), go away, depart, be changed or transformed (into).
- abhorreō, -ēre, -uī** (ab, horreō), shrink back, shudder at, abhor.
- abiciō, -ere, abiēcī, abiectum** (ab, iacio), throw aside, throw down.
- abripio, -ere, -ripuī, abreptum** (ab, rapio), carry off (*with violence*), drag away, sweep away.
- abscēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum** (abs, cēdō), go away.
- absēns, absentis** (absum), absent.
- absorbeō, -ēre, -bui** (*also, rarely, absorpsī*), absorptum (ab, sorbeō, suck), swallow up, devour.
- abstrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum** (abs, trahō), drag away, draw away.
- absum, abesse, āfui** (ab, sum), be absent, lack, be distant.
- absurdus, -a, -um**, irrational, absurd.
- abundō, 1** (ab, unda), overflow, abound.
- abūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum** (ab, ūtor), abuse.
- ac** (atque), and (*joining with emphasis*).
- accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum** (ad, cēdō), go or come to or near, approach.
- accendō, -ere, accendī, accensum** (ad, candeō), set on fire, kindle.
- accidō, -ere, accidi** (ad, cadō), fall to, happen (*usually of bad fortune*).
- accingō, -ere, accinxī, accinctum** (ad, cingō), gird to or on, arm, furnish, equip.
- accipio, -ere, -cēpī, acceptum** (ad, capiō), take to, receive, accept.
- accūrātē, adv.** (accūrātus), carefully, exactly, accurately.

- accûrâtus**, -a, -um **accûrô**. *ad. cûrô, cûra*, careful, exact, accurate.
- accurrô**, -ere, -cucurrî and -currî, -cursum *ad. currô*. run to, run up.
- âcer**, âcris, âcre, sharp, keen.
- acerbus**, -a, -um (*âcer*), bitter, hard to bear, distressing.
- Achâtês**, -ae, m., Achates, squire and faithful friend of Aeneas.
- aciês**, -êi, f. (*cf. âcer*), edge, line of battle.
- âcriter**, *adv.* (*âcer*), sharply.
- âctum**, -i, n. (*agô*), transaction, deed, act.
- acuô**, -ere, -uî, **acûtum** (*cf. âcer*), sharpen, whet.
- acus**, -ûs, f. (*cf. âcer*), needle.
- acûtus**, -a, -um (*perf. part.* of *acuô*), sharpen, make pointed, *cf. âcer*, sharp, pointed, acute.
- ad**, *prep.* with *acc.*, to, towards, for, about.
- addicô**, -ere, -dixî, -dictum (*ad. dicô*), address to, give up, devote.
- addô**, -ere, -didî, **additum** (*ad. dô*), give to, add.
- addûcô**, -ere, **addûxî**, **adductum** (*ad. dûcô*), lead forward, bring.
- adeô**, -ire, -iî, -itum (*ad. eô*), go to, approach.
- adeô**, *adv.* *ad. eô*, *abl. of is*, ea, id. to that point, so, so much, so very.
- adferô**, -ferre, **adulî**, **adlâtum** *ad. ferô*. bring to, carry to.
- adficiô**, -ere, -fêci, **adfectum** *ad. faciô*. do to, affect.
- adhortor**, -hortârî, -hortâtus sum *ad. hortor*, encourage, cheer up, urge.
- adhûc**, *adv.* (*ad. hûc*), up to this time, till now, thus far.
- adiciô**, -ere, **adiêci**, **adiectum** (*ad. iaciô*), throw or cast to or upon, direct to or towards.
- adiûtor**, -tôris, m. (*ad. iuvô*), one who helps, helper.
- adiuvô**, -âre, **adiûvi**, **adiûtum** (*ad. iuvô*), bring help to, aid, assist.
- admiratiô**, -ônîs, f. (*admiror*), wonder, admiration, surprise.
- admiror**, *dep.*, 1 (*ad. miror*), wonder at, admire.
- admoveô**, -êre, **admôvi**, **admôtum** (*ad. moveô*), bring or move to, apply.
- adorior**, -orîrî, -ortus sum (*ad. orior*), rise up against, assail, attack.
- adpâreô**, -êre, -pârui (*ad. pâreô*), appear, become visible.

- adpellō, -ere, adpulī, adpulsum** (ad, pellō), drive to or upon, land, come to land.
adrēpō, -ere, rēpsī, adrēptum (ad, rēpō), crawl up to, creep slowly up to.
adripiō, -ere, adripiū, adreptum (ad, rapiō), snatch up, pick up.
adsequor, adsequi, adsecutus (ad, sequor), overtake, come upon.
adsum, adesse, adfui (ad, sum), be present.
adolēscēns (adolēscēns), -entis, m. (ad, olēscō, oleō, grow up), young man.
adolēscētulus, -i, m. (adolēscēns), a very young man; a (mere) boy.
adultus, -a, -um (adolēscō, -ere, -ēvi, adultum, grow up), grown up, adult.
advena, -ae, m., f., stranger.
adveniō, -ire, advēnī, adventum (ad, veniō), come to, arrive.
adventō, 1 (ad, veniō), come near, approach.
adventus, -ūs, m. (ad, veniō), arrival.
adversor, dep., 1 (ad, vertō), turn against, oppose.
adversum, prep. with acc. (adversus), against.
adversus, -a, -um (perf. part. of advertō; ad, vertō), turned towards, opposite, adverse; **rēs adversae**, adversity; **adversus, prep. with acc.**, against.
advesperāscit, -ere, impers. (ad, vesperāscit; vesper, evening), grow dark, get late.
advocātus, -i, m. (ad, vocō), counselor, lawyer.
aedēs, -is, f., temple (in the sing.), house (in the pl.).
aedificium, -i, n. (aedēs, faciō), building.
aegrē, adv. (aeger, sick), with difficulty or effort.
aequō, 1 (aequus), equal, come up to, resemble.
aequor, -oris, n. (aequus), a level surface, the sea.
aequus, -a, -um, even, level, fair, just.
āēr, āeris, m., air.
aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze, money; aes aliēnum, another's money, i.e. debt.
aestimō, 1 (aes; hence, put a money value upon), think, estimate.
aestuōsus, -a, -um (aestus), very hot, burning.
aestus, -ūs, m., boiling, heat, tide.
aetās, -tātis, f. (aevum), age, time of life.
aeternus, -a, -um (aevum), everlasting, eternal.

- aevum**, -i, *n.*, long period of time, age.
- affigō**, -ere, **affixi**, **affixum** (**ad**, **figō**), fix or fasten upon.
- agedum** (age, dum), come, then!
- ager**, -grī, *m.*, field.
- agitātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (**agitō**, **agō**), movement, agitation.
- agnōscō**, -ere, **agnōvī**, **agnitum** (**ad**, (**g**)**nōscō**), recognize, understand, realize.
- agō**, -ere, **ēgī**, **āctum**, drive, do, act, treat, plead; **grātiās agere**, render thanks; **age** (*impv.*), come; **āctum est**, it is all up (with); **āctus**, -a, -um (*perf. part.*), past (*of time*).
- agricola**, -ae, *m.* (**ager**, **colō**), farmer.
- aiō**, affirm, maintain, say yes; **ait**, said (*or says*) he; **ut aiunt**, as they say; **ain** (= **aisne**), say you (so)?
- alacer**, -cris, -cre, eager, lively.
- Albertus**, -ī, *m.*, Albert.
- albus**, -a, -um, white.
- ālea**, -ae, *f.*, a game with dice, die.
- alibī** (**alius**, **ibi**), *adv.*, in another place, elsewhere.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um (**alius**), belonging to another, strange, unfavorable, alien.
- aliquantō**, *adv.* (**alius**, **quantus**), somewhat, a little.
- aliquis**, **aliquid** (**aliqui**, **aliqua**, **aliquid**, *adj.*), some one, something, some, any.
- aliquot**, *indecl.*, some, several.
- aliter** (**alius**), *adv.*, otherwise.
- alius**, -a, -ud, *gen.*, **alterius**, another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **alii . . . alii**, some . . . others.
- almus**, -a, -um (**alō**), affording nourishment, kindly, bountiful.
- alō**, -ere, **alui**, **altum** or **alitum**, feed, nourish, support.
- alter**, **altera**, **alterum**, *gen.*, **alterius**, the other (*of two*), the second; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.
- altitūdō**, -dinis, *f.* (**altus**), height, depth.
- altus**, -a, -um, high, lofty, deep, loud.
- amābilis**, -e (**amō**), worthy of being loved, lovable.
- amanter**, *adv.* (**amāns**, **amō**), lovingly.
- ambō**, -ae, -ō, both.
- ambulō**, 1, take a walk, walk.
- āmēns**, -entis (**ab**, **mēns**), out of one's senses, mad.
- America**, -ae, *f.*, America (*Robinson Crusoe*).
- amicitia**, -ae, *f.* (**amicus**, **amō**), friendship.

amicus, -ī, *m.* (amō), friend.
āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum
 (ab, mittō), lose.
amō, 1, love.
amoenus, -a, -um, charming,
 delightful.
amor, -ōris, *m.* (amō), love.
āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mō-
 tum (ab, moveō), remove.
amplector, amplexi, amplexus
 sum (amb, plector), em-
 brace.
amplexus, -ūs, *m.* (amplec-
 tor), embrace.
amplius, *comp. of amplē*, more,
 further, besides.
amplus, -a, -um, spacious, ex-
 tensive, splendid.
an, *conj.*, or (*usually preceded*
by utrum or -ne).
Anglicē, *adv.* (Anglicus), in
 English (*Robinson Crusoe*).
Anglicus, -a, -um, English
 (*Robinson Crusoe*).
angō, -ere, choke, throttle,
 vex, torment.
angor, -ōris (angō), *m.*, a
 strangling, anguish, vexa-
 tion.
anguis, -is, *m.*, a snake.
angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* (an-
 gustus, angō), narrow pass;
 troubles.
angustus, -a, -um (angō),
 narrow.
anhēlō, 1 (*cf. hālō*, breathe),
 pant, gasp.

anilis, -e (anus, an old wom-
 an), belonging to an old
 woman, of a grown-up or
 old woman.
anima, -ae, *f.* (*cf. animus*),
 breath, soul, life, spirit.
animadvertō, -ere, -verti,
 -versum (animus, ad,
 vertō), direct the mind to,
 notice, observe.
animal, -ālis, *n.* (anima), ani-
 mal.
animus, -ī, *m.*, spirit, feeling,
 mind, courage.
annuō, -ere, annui, annūtum
 (ad, nuō), nod to, assent
 to.
annus, -ī, *m.*, year.
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before.
anteā, *adv.* (ante, eā), before,
 formerly.
anthrōpophagus, -ī, *m.* (ἀνθρω-
 πος, man, root φαγ-, in ἐφαγον,
 eat), man-eater, cannibal.
antiquus, -a, -um (ante), an-
 cient.
aperiō, -īre, aperui, apertum
 (ab, pariō), uncover, open.
apis, -is, *f.*, bee.
apparātus, -ūs, *m.* (ad, parō),
 preparing, getting ready,
 apparatus, equipment.
appāreō, -pārēre, -pāruī (ad,
 pārēō), appear, become visi-
 ble.
appellō, 1, call, call upon,
 name.

- aptus**, -a, -um (**apō**, join, fit), fitted to, fit, suitable.
apud, *prep.* with *acc.*, near, close by, in the presence of, at the house of.
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.
aquila, -ae, *m., f.*, eagle.
arbiter, -trī, *m.*, referee, umpire, arbiter.
arbitror, *dep.*, 1 (**arbiter**), *lit.*, serve as referee; consider, think.
arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.
arbustum, -ī, *n.* (**arbor**), a plantation of trees; *pl.*, trees, shrubs.
arca, -ae, *f.* (*cf.* **arceō**, **arx**, **arcānus**), chest, box.
arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow.
ardeō, -ēre, **ārsī**, **ārsūm**, blaze, burn.
arduus, -a, -um, lofty, steep, difficult.
ārea, -ae, *f.*, a vacant place, court, courtyard.
arēna, -ae, *f.* (**harēna**), sand, the place of combat in the amphitheater (*strewn with sand*), arena.
arēnōsus, -a, -um (**arēna**), sandy.
argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver, money.
argūmentum, -ī, *n.* (**arguō**), proof, argument.
arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, implements.
- armātus**, -a, -um (**arma**), armed, equipped.
ars, **artis**, *f.*, skill, art.
artē, *adv.* (**artus**, *root ar-*, fitted together), closely, firmly.
artus, -ūs, *m.* (*root ar-*, join), limb, joint.
ascendō, -ere, **ascendī**, **ascēsum** (**ad**, **scandō**), ascend, climb up.
asinus, -ī, *m.*, an ass, donkey, stupid fellow.
aspectus, -ūs, *m.* (**aspiciō**; **ad**, **speciō**), sight, appearance, aspect.
asper, -era, -erum, rough.
āspornor, *dep.*, 1 (**ab**, **spornor**), spurn, disdain, despise.
assiduitās, -tātis, *f.* (**assiduus**; **ad**, **sedeō**), diligence.
astrum, -ī, *n.*, star.
at, *conj.*, but, but yet, at least.
Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens.
Atlanticus, -a, -um, Atlantic.
atque (*before vowels and consonants, ac before consonants*) and (*joining with emphasis*).
ātrāmentum, -ī, *n.* (**āter**), (black) ink.
atrōciter, *adv.* (**atrōx**), cruelly, harshly.
atrōx, **atrōcis**, cruel, fierce, horrible.
attendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum (**ad**, **tendō**), stretch to,

- listen, notice; **attentus**, -a, -um, attentive.
- attingō**, -ere, **attigī**, **attāctum** (ad, **tangō**), attain to, reach, touch.
- attonō**, -āre, -uī, -itum (ad, **tonō**), thunder at; **attonitus**, -a, -um, thunderstruck, dazed, amazed.
- attribuō**, -ere, **attribuī**, **attribūtum** (ad, **tribuō**, assign; **tribus**, tribe; **trēs**), assign to.
- auctōritās**, -tātis, *f.* (auctor, **augeō**), influence, authority.
- audācia**, -ae, *f.* (**audeō**, **audāx**), boldness, effrontery.
- audācter**, *adv.*, boldly.
- audāx**, -ācis (**audeō**), bold, daring.
- audeō**, -ēre, **ausus sum**, dare.
- audiō**, -ire, -ivī or -ii, -itum, hear.
- auferō**, auferre, **abstulī**, **ablātum** (ab, **ferō**), carry off, carry away.
- aufugiō**, -ere, -fūgī (ab, **fugiō**), flee or run away.
- augeō**, -ēre, **auxī**, **auctum**, increase.
- augustus**, -a, -um, majestic, august, worthy of honor.
- Augustus**, -i, *m.*, Augustus, the first Roman Emperor.
- aura**, -ae, *f.*, air, upper air, sky, heavens.
- aureus**, -a, -um (**aurum**), made of gold, golden.
- auris**, -is, *f.* (**audiō**), an ear.
- aurum**, -i, *n.*, gold.
- auster**, -tri, *m.*, south wind, south.
- aut**, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.
- autem**, *conj.*, moreover, but, however (*always postpositive*).
- autumnālis**, -e (**autumnus**, **augeō**), of or pertaining to autumn, autumnal.
- auxilium**, -i, *n.* (**augeō**), aid, assistance.
- avāritia**, -ae, *f.* (**avārus**), avarice, covetousness.
- avārus**, -a, -um (**aveō**, **crave**), eagerly desirous, covetous, greedy.
- avellō**, -ere, **avellī** or **avulsī**, **āvulsum** (ab, **vellō**), tear off, pluck out.
- aveō**, -ēre, long for, crave; **avēre** (**havēre**), be or fare well; **Avē!** Hail! Farewell!
- avertō**, -ere, **avertī**, **aversum** (ab, **vertō**), turn away, avert.
- avidus**, -a, -um (**aveō**), eager, eager for, covetous.
- avis**, -is, *f.*, bird.
- avolō**, 1 (ab, **volō**), fly away, fly off.

B

Bacchus, -i, *m.*, Bacchus, god of wine.

baculum, -i, *n.*, stick, staff.

bālō, 1, bleat.

barba, -ae, *f.*, beard.

barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, rude, barbarous; **barbarus**, -i, *m.*, a barbarian.

beātus, -a, -um (*perf. part.* of *beō*, bless), blessed.

Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Belgians.

bellicus, -a, -um (*bellum*), of or pertaining to war; *tormentum bellicum*, cannon, gun (*Robinson Crusoe*).

bellum, -i, *n.*, war.

bellus, -a, -um (for *ben-lus*; cf. *bene*, bonus), pretty, charming, delightful.

bene, *adv.* (*bonus*), well; *comp.*, *melius*; *superl.*, *optimē*.

beneficium, -i, *n.* (*bene*, *faciō*), favor, benefit.

benignus, -a, -um (*bene*, *genus*), kindly, benignant.

bēstia, -ae, *f.*, beast, animal.

bibō, -ere, *bibī*, drink.

bis, *adv.* (*duo*), twice.

blanditia, -ae, *f.* (*blandus*), a caressing, flattering, caressing or flattering (words).

blandus, -a, -um, flattering, pleasant, bland, friendly.

bonus, -a, -um, good; *comp.*, *melior*, -ius, better; *superl.*, *optimus*, -a, -um, best.

bōs, *bovis*, *m.*, *f.*, ox, bull, cow; *pl.*, cattle.

brevis, -e, short, brief.

brevitās, -tātis, *f.* (*brevis*), shortness (*of time or stature*).

breviter, *adv.* (*brevis*), briefly.

Britanni, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Britons.

Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain, England.

Brūtus, -i, *m.*, Brutus.

būtyrum, -i, *n.*, butter.

C

cadāver, -veris, *n.* (*cadō*), dead body.

cadō, -ere, *cecidi*, *cāsum*, fall, be slain.

cadus, -i, *m.*, a large jar, cask.

caecus, -a, -um, blind, hidden, uncertain.

caedēs, -is, *f.* (*caedō*), murder, slaughter.

caedō, -ere, *cecidi*, *caesum* (*cadō*), cause to fall, cut down, kill.

caelum, -i, *n.*, sky, heavens.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Caesar.

calamus, -i, *m.*, reed, cane, pen.

calceus, -i, *m.* (*calx*), shoe.

calcō, 1 (*calx*), tread upon, kick.

calidus, -a, -um, warm, hot.

- callidior**, -ius, -ōris (*comp. of callidus*), more crafty, too crafty.
- callidus**, -a, -um, shrewd, skillful, crafty.
- calor**, -ōris, *m.* (*caleō*, be warm or hot), glow, heat.
- calx**, calcis, *f.*, heel.
- campus**, -i, *m.*, plain, field.
- candeō**, -ēre, *m.*, be white, glow.
- candidus**, -a, -um (*candeō*), white, shining.
- canis**, -is, *m.*, *f.*, dog.
- cannibālēs**, -ium, *m. pl.*, cannibals (*Robinson Crusoe*).
- canō**, -ere, cecini, sing, chant.
- capāx**, -ācis (*capiō*), wide, spacious, capable of, fitted for.
- caper**, -prī, *m.*, a goat.
- capillus**, -ī, *m.*, hair.
- capiō**, -ere, cēpi, captum, take, capture.
- captivus**, -i, *m.* (*capiō*), prisoner, captive.
- caput**, -itis, *n.*, head.
- carbasus**, -i, *f.*, canvas, sail.
- carcer**, -eris, *m.*, prison, jail.
- cārē**, *adv.*, dearly, *i.e.* at a high price.
- careō**, -ēre, carui, be without, be free from.
- carīna**, -ae, *f.*, keel of a ship, boat, ship.
- cārītās**, -tātis, *f.* (*cārus*), dear-ness, object of affection, love.
- carmen**, -inis, *n.* (*canō*), song, poem.
- carō**, carnis, *f.*, flesh.
- carpō**, -ere, carpsi, carptum, pluck, gather, seize, enjoy.
- Carthāgō**, -ginis, *f.*, Carthage, a city in northern Africa.
- cārus**, -a, -um, dear.
- cāseus**, -i, *m.*, cheese.
- castīgō**, 1 (*castum*, *agō*), make pure, chastise, punish.
- castra**, -trōrum, *n. pl.*, camp.
- castus**, -a, -um, pure, unde-filed, chaste.
- cāsus**, -ūs, *m.* (*cadō*), falling, misfortune, chance, adventure.
- catēna**, -ae, *f.*, chain.
- cathedra**, -ae, *f.*, chair; **ex cathedrā**, from the chair (*of the presiding officer*), *i.e.* with authority.
- Catilīna**, -ae, *m.*, Catiline.
- Caucasus**, -i, *m.*, Caucasus, a rough chain of mountains, inhabited by wild tribes, in Asia, between the Black and Caspian seas.
- cauda** (*cōda*), -ae, *f.*, tail.
- causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, case (*in court*), lawsuit; **causā** (*with the gen. preceding*), by reason of, for the sake of.
- cautē**, *adv.* (*cautus*), cautiously, carefully.

- cautus**, -a, -um (*perf. part. of caveō*), careful, cautious.
- cavea**, -ae, *f.* (*cavus*), a hollow, cavity, cage.
- caveō**, -ēre, *cāvi*, *cautum*, be on one's guard, beware.
- cavus**, -a, -um, hollow.
- cēdō**, -ere, *cessi*, *cessum*, go, go away, yield, retreat.
- celeber**, -bris, -bre, frequent, crowded, famous.
- celebrō**, 1 (*celeber*), frequent, honor, celebrate.
- celer**, *celeris*, *celere*, swift.
- celeritās**, -tātis, *f.* (*celer*), swiftness, speed.
- celeriter**, *adv.* (*celer*), swiftly.
- cēlō**, 1, hide, conceal.
- cēna**, -ae, *f.*, dinner.
- cēseō**, -ēre, *cēnsui*, *cēnsus*, estimate, determine, think.
- centum**, *indecl.*, hundred.
- centussis**, -is, *m.* (*centum*, as), hundred asses, dollar.
- cēra**, -ae, *f.*, wax, a (waxen) writing tablet.
- certāmen**, -inis, *n.* (*certō*), contest, struggle.
- certē**, *adv.* (*certus*), surely, assuredly.
- certior**, *certius* (*comp. of certus*), more certain; *certiōrem* (*certiōrēs*) *facere*, make more certain, inform.
- certius**, *adv.* (*comp. of certē*), more surely, more certainly.
- certō**, 1 (*certus*), make certain, decide by contest, fight, contend.
- certus**, -a, -um, fixed, sure, certain.
- cervix**, *cervicis*, *f.*, the neck.
- cēteri**, -ae, -a, the rest, remaining, the others; *cēterum*, *adv.*, in other respects, otherwise.
- charta**, -ae, *f.*, a leaf of the Egyptian papyrus, paper.
- chorus**, -ī, *m.*, dance, group of dancers, chorus.
- Christus**, -ī, *m.* (*Χριστός*), the anointed, Christ.
- cibus**, -ī, *m.*, food.
- Cicerō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero.
- cingō**, -ere, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, surround, gird.
- cinis**, -eris, *m.*, ashes.
- circā**, *prep. with acc.*, round, around.
- circiter**, *adv.*, *prep. with acc.*, about.
- circum**, *prep. with acc.*, around.
- circumdō**, *circumdare*, *circumdedi*, *circumdatum* (*circum*, *dō*), put or throw around, surround.
- circumeō**, -ire, -īvi or -iī, *circumitum* (*circum*, *eō*), go around, made a circuit.
- circumferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, move or carry around.

- circumfundō**, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour around, gather around.
- circumsiliō**, -ire (circum, saliō), leap or hop about.
- circumspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum (circum, speciō), look around.
- cis**, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of; *comp.*, cterior, -ius, nearer; *superl.*, citimus, -a, -um, nearest.
- cista**, -ae, *f.*, box.
- citō**, 1 (cieō), move rapidly, call upon, quote, cite; citātus, -a, -um (*perf. part.*), swift, rapid, quick.
- citō**, *adv.* (cieō), quickly, soon.
- citrā**, *prep. with acc.*, this side of; *comp. and superl.*, cterior, citimus. *See cis.*
- cīvis**, -is, *m.*, a citizen.
- civitās**, -tātis, *f.* (cīvis), citizenship, state.
- clāmō**, 1, cry out, shout.
- clāmor**, -ōris, *m.* (clāmō), outcry, shouting, shout.
- clārus**, -a, -um, clear, bright, famous.
- classis**, -is, *f.*, class, division, fleet.
- claudō**, -ere, clausī, clausum (-clūdō, *in compounds*), shut up, end, conclude.
- clāvis**, -is, *f.*, a key.
- clāvus**, -ī, *m.*, nail.
- clēmēns**, -entis, mild, merciful, lenient.
- cliēns**, -entis, *m., f.*, dependent, patient.
- coepī**, coepisse, coeptus, have begun, began (*present system supplied by forms of incipiō*).
- cōgitō**, 1 (con, agitō, agō), think, ponder, reflect.
- cognōscō**, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum (con, (g)nōscō), find out, learn, know well.
- cōgō**, -ere, coēgī, coāctum (com, agō), collect, compel.
- cohibeō**, -ēre, cohibuī, cohibitum (com, habeō), hold together, contain, restrain, hold in check.
- colligō**, 1 (con, ligō), bind or fasten together.
- colligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum (con, legō), gather together, collect.
- collineō**, 1 (con, lineō, linea), direct in straight line, aim.
- collis**, -is, *m.*, hill.
- collocō**, 1 (con, locō, locus), place together, place, put, station.
- colloquium**, -ī, *n.* (con, loquor), conference.
- collum**, -ī, *n.*, neck.
- colō**, -ere, colui, cultum, till, dwell in, cherish.
- colōnia**, -ae, *f.* (colōnus, colō), colony.

- colōnus**, -ī, *n.*, tiller, husbandman, settler, colonist.
color, -ōris, *m.*, color, hue, tint.
com (con, cō), *old form of cum used in composition, usually intensive, fully, completely.*
comes, -itis, *m.* (con, eō), companion.
comitor, *dep.*, 1 (comes), accompany, follow.
commercium, -ī, *n.* (con, merx), commerce.
committō, -ere, -misi, -missum (con, mittō), commit, engage in, intrust.
commodus, -a, -um (con, modus), with due measure, suitable, comfortable; **commodum**, -ī, *n.*, advantage.
communis, -e (con, mūnus), common, general.
compāctus, -a, -um (*perf. part. of compingō*, **compāctum**; con, pangō), fitted together.
comparō (con, parō), get ready, provide, compare.
comperiō, -ire, **comperi**, **compertum** (con, pariō), find out, learn, realize.
compēs, -pedis, *f.* (con, pēs), a (wooden) shackle or fetter for the feet (*usually in the pl.*).
complector, -plecti, **complexus** sum (con, plectō), embrace.
compleō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum (con, pleō), fill up, load.
complūrēs, -a, -ium, *pl.* (con, plūs), a considerable number, very many.
compōnō, -ere, **composui**, **compositum** (con, pōnō), bring together, arrange.
compos, **compotis** (con, potis), having mastery over or control of, master of.
concelebrō, 1 (con, celebrō, celebrer), resort to in great numbers, celebrate.
concerpō, -ere, -cerpsi, -cerptum (con, carpō), pluck, pull, pull up.
concha, -ae, *f.*, a shell fish, shell.
concilium, -ī, *n.*, council, meeting.
conciñnō, 1, join together, fit together, make.
concupiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (con, capiō), take or lay hold of, catch.
concurrō, -ere, -cucurri or curri, -cursum (con, currō), run together, rally.
concutiō, -ere, **concussi**, **concussum** (con, quatiō, shake), shake violently, shatter.
condemnō, 1 (con, damnō, damnum), condemn.
condiciō, -ōnis, *f.* (con, dicō), agreement, terms, condition, situation.
condō, -ere, -didi, -ditum (con, dō), put together, put away, store up, lay to rest.

- condūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-tum (con, dūcō), bring together, collect, hire.
- cōnferō**, cōnferre, contulī, cōnlātum (con, ferō), bring together, collect; **sē cōnferre**, betake oneself.
- cōnfestim**, *adv.*, immediately.
- cōnficiō**, -ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum (con, faciō), accomplish, finish, exhaust, "do up," make.
- cōnfirmō**, 1 (con, firmus), strengthen, assure, confirm, encourage.
- cōnfiteor**, -ēri, cōnfessus sum (con, fateor), confess, acknowledge, admit.
- cōnfugiō**, -ere, cōnfūgī (con, fugiō), flee for help, flee for refuge, take refuge in.
- coniungō**, -ere, coniūnxī, coniūctum (con, iungō), join together, unite.
- coniūrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (con, iūrō), a swearing together, conspiracy, mutiny.
- cōnor**, *dep.*, 1, try, endeavor, attempt.
- cōnscendō**, -ere, cōnscendī, cōnscēsum (con, scandō), climb up, mount, embark upon.
- cōnscius**, -a, -um (con, sciō), having complete knowledge of, conscious.
- cōnsecrō**, 1 (con, sacrō, sacer), dedicate, devote, consecrate; **cōnsecrātus**, -a, -um (*perf. part.*), consecrated, holy.
- cōnsentāneus**, -a, -um (con, sentiō), agreeing with, in accordance with, fit, proper.
- cōnsiderō**, 1 (con, sidus), look at closely, contemplate, consider.
- cōnsidō**, -ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum (con, sidō, sedeō), take a seat, sit down.
- cōnsilium**, -ī, *n.*, plan, design, purposes.
- cōnsistō**, -ere, cōnstītī (con, sistō, stō), stand still, halt.
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, *m.* (con, speciō), view, sight.
- cōnspiciō**, -ere, cōnspexi, cōnspectum (con, speciō), catch sight of, see.
- cōnstantia**, -ae, *f.* (con, stō), firmness, constancy.
- cōnstituō**, -ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum (con, statuō, status, stō), set up, establish, determine, decide.
- cōnstō**, -stāre, cōnstītī, cōnstātum, stand with, agree; *impers.*, constat, it is evident, it is plain.
- cōnstringō**, -ere, cōnstrīnxī, cōnstrictum (con, stringō), bind tightly.

- cōnstruō**, -ere, **cōnstrūxī**, **cōnstrūctum** (con, **struō**), build together, construct, build.
- cōnsuētūdō**, -dīnis, *f.* (**cōnsuēscō**), custom, habit.
- cōnsul**, -ulis, *m.*, consul.
- cōnsulō**, -ere, **cōnsulūi**, **cōnsultum**, ask one's advice (*with acc.*), consult (*for the interest of*), look out for (*with dat.*).
- cōnsūmō**, -ere, **cōnsūmpsī**, **cōnsūptum** (con, **sūmō**, sub, **emō**), consume, devour, waste.
- contendō**, -ere, **contendī**, **contentum** (con, **tendō**), struggle with, contend.
- contineō**, -ēre, **continui**, **contentum** (con, **teneō**), limit, restrain.
- contingō**, -ere, -**tigī**, **contāctum** (con, **tangō**), touch; **contigit**, *impers.*, it happens.
- continuō**, *adv.* (**continuus**), immediately.
- continuus**, -a, -um (**contineō**), unbroken, continuous.
- cōntiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (*contracted from conventiō*; con, **veniō**), meeting, assembly.
- contrā**, *adv., prep. with acc.*, opposite, against, opposed to; on the other hand.
- contrahō**, -ere, **contrāxī**, **contrāctum** (con, **trahō**), draw together, contract.
- contremiscō**, -ere, **contremui** (con, **tremiscō**, **tremō**), tremble all over, shake, quake.
- convertō**, -ere, **converti**, **conversum** (con, **vertō**), turn about, turn around, change, apply; *pass.*, turn oneself about, turn, face about.
- convivium**, -ī, *n.* (con, **vivō**), banquet, feast.
- convocō**, 1 (con, **vocō**), call together.
- cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; *pl.*, forces, troops, supplies.
- coquō**, -ere, **coxi**, **coctum**, cook.
- cor**, **cordis**, *n.*, heart.
- cōram**, *prep. with abl.* (con, **ōs**), in the presence of.
- Corinthus**, -ī, *f.*, Corinth.
- corniger**, -gera, -gerum (**cornū**, **gerō**), horned.
- cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (*of an army*).
- cornūtus**, -a, -um (**cornū**), horned.
- corōna**, -ae, *f.*, wreath, garland, crown.
- corōnō**, 1 (**corōna**), crown, wreath.
- corpus**, -oris, *n.*, body.
- corripio**, -ere, **corripui**, **correptum** (con, **rapio**), catch up, seize upon, hasten; **sē corripit**, starts up hastily.

crās, *adv.*, to-morrow.
crēbrēscō, -brēscere, **crēbrui** (crēber), become frequent, increase.
crēdō, -ere, **crēdidī**, **crēditum** (make a loan to), trust, believe.
crēdulus, -a, -um (**crēdō**), believing too easily, credulous.
creō, 1, create, elect.
crepō, -āre, **crepuī**, **crepitum**, creak, rattle, clatter.
crēscō, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētum** (creō), grow up, grow, increase.
crimen, **criminis**, *n.*, charge, crime.
crinis, -is, *m.*, hair.
cruciātus, -us, *m.* (**crux**), torturing, execution.
cruciō, 1 (**crux**), put to death on the cross, crucify, torture.
crūdēlis, -e (**crūdus**), cruel.
crūdus, -a, -um (**cruor**), bloody, raw, not cooked, crude.
cruentus, -a, -um (**cruor**), covered or stained with blood, bloody.
cruor, -ōris, *m.*, blood, gore.
crūs, **crūris**, *n.*, leg.
Crusoeus, -ī, *m.*, Crusoe (*Robinson Crusoe*).
crux, **crucis**, *f.*, cross (*an instrument of execution*).

cubiculum, -ī, *n.* (**cubō**), sleeping chamber, cabin.
cubile, -is, *n.*, couch, bed.
cubō (**cumbō** in compounds only), -āre, **cubui**, **cubitum**, lie down.
culinārius, -a, -um (**culina**, kitchen), pertaining to the kitchen, kitchen, culinary.
culpa, -ae, *f.*, guilt, fault, blame.
culpō, 1 (**culpa**), blame.
culter, -trī, *m.*, knife.
cultus, -ūs, *m.* (**colō**), civilization, culture, appearance.
cum, *prep.* with *abl.*, with; *conj.*, when, after, since, although; **cum primum**, as soon as.
cumulō, 1 (**cumulus**), heap or pile up.
cumulus, -ī, *m.*, heap, pile.
cūnctor, *dep.*, 1, delay, linger, hesitate.
cūnctus, -a, -um (**con**, **iūnctus**), all joined together, all, entire.
cūneus, -ī, *m.*, wedge.
cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* (**cupidus**, **cupiō**), eagerness, eager desire.
cupidō, -dinis, *f.* (**cupiō**), desire, longing; *personified*, *m.*, Cupid, the god of love.
cupidus, -a, -um (**cupiō**), eager for, desirous of.
cupiō, -ere, **cupivī**, **cupitum**, long for, be eager for, desire.

cuprinus, -a, -um (**cuprum**, copper), made of copper, copper.

cūr, *adv.*, why.

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, anxiety.

cūriōsus, -a, -um (**cūra**), careful, inquisitive, curious.

cūrō, 1 (**cūra**), take care, look out, cure.

currō, -ere, **cucurri**, **cursum**, run.

currus, -ūs, *m.* (**currō**), chariot.

cursus, -ūs, *m.* (**currō**), a running, course; **cursus maritimus**, voyage.

curvus, -a, -um, crooked, bent.

custōdiō, -ire, **custōdivi**, **custōditum** (**custōs**), guard, protect.

custōditē, *adv.* (**custōditus**, **custōdiō**, **custōs**), guardedly, carefully.

custōs, **custōdis**, *m.*, guard.

cutis, -is, *f.*, skin, hide.

cylindrus, -dri, *m.*, cylinder, roller.

cymba, -ae, *f.*, boat, skiff.

D

damnō, 1 (**damnum**), inflict loss, condemn.

damnum, -i, *n.* (**dō**), fine, loss.

Danaī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Greeks.

dapēs, -um, *f. pl.*, banquet, food.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, concerning; *comp.*, **dēterior**, -ius, lower, meaner; *superl.*, **dēterrīmus**, -a, -um, worst.

dea, -ae, *f.*, a goddess; *dat. and abl. pl.*, **deābus**. Cf. **filiābus**, from **filia**.

dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, **dēbitum** (**dē**, **habeō**), owe, ought.

dēbilitātus, -a, -um (**dēbilitō**, **dēbilis**, **dē**, **habilis**, **habeō**), weakened, disabled, debilitated.

decem, *indecl.*, ten.

dēcernō, -ere, **dēcrēvi**, **dēcrētum** (**dē**, **cernō**), decide, decree.

dēcērtō, 1 (**dē**, **certō**), fight (it out), contend.

dēcidō, -ere, **dēcidi** (**dē**, **cadō**), fall down, drop.

decimus, -a, -um, tenth.

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpi, **dēceptum**, catch, ensnare, deceive, cheat.

decōrus, -a, -um (**decet**), becoming, fitting, decorous.

dēcurrō, -ere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum (**dē**, **currō**), run down.

dēducō, -ere, **dēdūxi**, **dēductum** (**dē**, **dūcō**), draw or drag down, launch.

dēfendō, -ere, **dēfendi**, **dēfēnsus** (**dē**, **fendō**), strike down, defend.

- dēfēnsor**, -ōris, *m.* (dēfendō), defender, protector.
- dēferō**, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātum (dē, ferō), bring or carry down, bring, report.
- dēfigō**, -ere, dēfixī, dēfixum (dē, figō), fasten down, fasten, fix.
- dēflectō**, -ere, -flexī, -flexum (dē, flectō), turn aside.
- dēfungor**, -ī, dēfūctus sum (dē, fungor), perform to the end, die; dēfūctus, -a, -um, *as an adj.*, dead.
- dēgō**, -ere (dē, agō), pass, spend.
- dēhiscō**, -ere (dē, hīscō), gape open, split in two.
- dēiciō**, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectum, throw or cast down, bring down, drive away.
- dein** (deinde), then.
- deinceps**, *adv.*, in succession, one after another.
- deinde**, *adv.* (dē, inde), then, afterwards, next.
- dēlectō**, 1 (dē, laciō, entice), delight, charm.
- dēleō**, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, blot out, destroy utterly.
- dēliberō**, 1 (dē, libra), weigh in the mind, deliberate.
- dēliciae**, -ārum, *f., pl.*, delight, pet.
- dēligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum (dē, legō), choose, pick out, select.
- dēmentō**, -āre (dēmēns, dē, mēns), drive mad, make mad.
- dēmergō**, -ere, -mersī, -mersum (dē, mergō), sink, submerge, overwhelm.
- dēmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (dē, mittō), let down, lower, send down.
- dēmōnstrō**, 1 (dē, mōnstrō, moneō), point out, show, demonstrate.
- dēmulceō**, -ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum (dē, mulceō), stroke down, stroke caressingly.
- dēmum**, *adv.*, at last, finally, not until.
- dēnārius**, -a, -um (dēnī, decem), containing ten; dēnārius, -ī, *m.*, denarius, a silver coin worth about 17 cents.
- dēns**, dentis, *m.*, tooth.
- dēnsus**, -a, -um, thick, dense.
- dēnuō**, *adv.* (dē, novō), anew, again.
- dēpellō**, -ere, dēpulī, dēpulsum (dē, pellō), drive away, expel.
- dēpendeō**, -ēre (dē, pendeō), hang down, depend.
- dēportō**, 1 (dē, portō), carry or convey down, bring, place.
- dēprehendō**, -ere, -prehendī, -prehensum (dē,prehendō), catch suddenly, detect, discover.

- dēscendō, -ere, dēscendī, dēscēnsūm (dē, scandō), come down, descend.
- dēscēnsus, -ūs, *m.* (dēscendō), a way going down, descent.
- dēserō, -ere, dēseruī, dēsertum (dē, serō, join), disjoin, abandon, desert.
- dēsertum, -ī, *n.* (dēserō, dē, serō), desert, wilderness.
- dēsiderium, -ī, *n.* (dēsiderō), a longing (for something lost), desire.
- dēsiderō, 1, long for greatly, miss, be lacking or missing (*in the pass.*).
- dēsiliō, -ire, -siluī (dē, salio), leap down.
- dēspērō, 1 (dē, spērō, spēs), give up hope, despair of.
- dēstinō, 1 (stō), fasten, make fast, fix upon, appoint, destine, betroth.
- dēstituō, -ere, dēstitui, dēstitūtum (dē, statuō), set apart from, abandon, leave; dēstitūtus, -a, -um, destitute.
- dēsum, deesse, dēfui (dē, sum), be lacking, be wanting.
- dēterreō, -ēre, -ui, dēterritum (dē, terreō), frighten off, prevent, deter.
- dētonō, -āre, dētonui, dētonitum or dētonātum (dē, tonō), thunder, explode or go off (*Robinson Crusoe*).
- dētrūdō, -ere, dētrūsi, dētrūsum (dē, trūdō), thrust down, push down.
- dēturbō, 1 (dē, turbō), drive down, drive off.
- deus, dei, *m.*, a god; *pl., nom. and voc., dei, dii, di; dat. and abl., deis, diis, dis.*
- Deus, Dei, *m.*, God.
- dēvolō, -āre (dē, volō), fly down or away.
- dēvorō, 1 (dē, vorō), swallow down, gulp down, devour.
- dexter, -tra, -trum, right.
- dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum, say, speak.
- dictō, 1 (dicō), declare or speak repeatedly, dictate.
- dictum, -ī, *n.* (dicō), word.
- diēs, -ei, *m.* (*sometimes f., especially when it means time*), day; in diēs, from day to day, daily.
- differō, differre, distuli, dilātum (dis, ferō), bear apart, differ.
- difficilis, -e (dis, facilis), difficult, hard.
- difficultās, -tātis (difficilis), trouble, distress, difficulty.
- digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger; thumb (*with pollex*).
- dignus, -a, -um, worthy.
- dilābor, -lābi, -lāpsus sum (dis, lābor), glide away, vanish.

- diligēns**, -gentis (**diligō**), careful, diligent.
- diligenter**, *adv.* (**diligēns**), carefully, in a diligent manner.
- diligentia**, -ae, *f.* (**diligēns**), carefulness, diligence.
- diligō**, -ere, **dilēxi**, **dilēctum** (**dis**, **legō**, choose out), love (*with esteem*), be fond of.
- dilūcēscō**, -ere, **dilūxi** (**dis**, **lūcēō**, **lūx**), grow light, get light.
- dilūcūlum**, -ī, *n.* (**dis**, **lūcēō**, **lūx**), daybreak, dawn.
- dimidius**, -a, -um (**dis**, **medius**), half.
- dimittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum (**dis**, **mittō**), send away, dismiss, let go.
- dirigō**, -ere, **dirēxi**, **dirēctum** (**dis**, **regō**), arrange in a straight line, direct, aim; **dirēctus**, -a, -um (*perf. part.*), straight, direct.
- dirimō**, -ere, **dirēmī**, **dirēptum** (**dis**, **emō**), break up, put an end to.
- dirus**, -a, -um, fearful, awful, dire.
- discēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (**dis**, **cēdō**), go away, withdraw.
- discipulus**, -ī, *m.*, pupil.
- discō**, -ere, **didici**, learn, learn how.
- discrimen**, -crīminis, *n.* (**dis**, **cernō**), distance apart,
- decisive moment, crisis, risk.
- discurrō**, -ere, -cucurri or -curri, **discursum** (**dis**, **currō**), run apart, scatter in flight.
- disputō**, 1 (**dis**, **putō**), examine, dispute.
- dissimilis**, -e (**dis**, **similis**), unlike, dissimilar.
- distō**, -stāre (**dis**, **stō**), stand apart, be distant.
- dītō**, -āre, -āvi (**dīves**, rich), enrich.
- diū**, *adv.*, long, for a long time; *comp.*, **diūtius**; *superl.*, **diūtissimē**.
- diurnus**, -a, -um (**diēs**), belonging to the day, daily.
- dīves**, -itis, rich.
- dividō**, -ere, **divisi**, **divisum** (**dis**, *root vid-*, bereft; *as*, **vidua**, -ae, *f.*, widow), divide, separate.
- dō**, dare, **dedi**, **datum**, give.
- doceō**, -ēre, **docui**, **doctum**, teach, show.
- docilis**, -e (**doceō**), teachable, docile, skillful.
- doleō**, -ēre, **dolui**, **dolitum**, feel pain or grief, grieve.
- dolor**, -ōris, *m.* (**doleō**), pain, grief, sorrow.
- domesticus**, -a, -um (**domus**), of or pertaining to the house or home, domestic.

domicilium, -ī, *n.* (domus),
 habitation, abode, domicile.
domina, -ae, *f.* (domus), mis-
 tress, lady.
dominus, -ī, *m.* (domus),
 householder, master, lord.
domus, -ī or -ūs, *f.* (*irreg.*),
 house, home.
dō nec, *conj.*, until.
dōnō, 1 (dōnum), present, con-
 fer.
dōnum, -ī, *n.* (dō), gift, pres-
 ent.
dormiō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, dormi-
 tum, sleep.
dorsum, -ī, *n.*, back.
drāma, **drāmatis**, *n.*, play,
 drama.
dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (dubitō),
 uncertainty, doubt.
dubitō, 1 (dubius), doubt.
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful.
dūcō, -ere, **dūxī**, ductum,
 lead, draw.
dulcis, -e, sweet.
dum, *conj.*, while, until, so
 long as, provided that.
dūmētum, -ī, *n.*, thorn-
 bushes, thicket.
duo, -ae, -o, two.
duplex, **duplicis** (duo, plicō),
 twofold, double.
dūrō, 1 (dūrus), harden, be
 hardened, hold out.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, tough.
dux, **ducis**, *m.*, leader, guide,
 general.

E

ē, **ex**, *prep.* with *abl.*, out of,
 from (*ex* before vowels or *h*,
ē or *ex* before consonants).
ebur, -oris, *n.*, ivory.
ecce, *interj.*, lo! behold!
Ecclēsia, -ae, *f.* (ἐκκλησία,
 assembly), the Church.
edāx, -ācis (edō, eat), vorac-
 ious, devouring, destroy-
 ing.
ēditor, -ius, *comp.* of **ēditus**,
 more lofty, quite or rather
 lofty.
ēditus, -a, -um (*perf. part.* of
edō), high, lofty.
edō, -ere, **ēdī**, **ēsum**, eat.
ēdō, -ere, **ēdidi**, **ēditum** (*ex*,
dō), put forth, utter.
efferō, -ferre, **extuli**, **ēlātum**,
 bear out, carry forth; **ēlā-**
tus, -a, -um (*perf. part.*),
 carried away, puffed up,
 haughty.
effigiēs, -ēi, *f.* (*ex*, **figō**),
 shape, image, figure.
efflō, 1 (*ex*, **flō**), blow out,
 breathe out.
effluō, -ere, **efflūxī** (*ex*, **fluō**),
 flow out, pass by.
effodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus
 (*ex*, **fodiō**), dig out, dig up.
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum
 (*ex*, **fugiō**), escape.
egeō, -ēre, **egui**, be in need of,
 need, lack.

ego, mei, pers. pron., I.

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum (**ex, gradior, gradus**), depart, disembark, come out of.

ēgregius, -a, -um (**ex, grex**, out of the flock), out of the common, remarkable, excellent, superior; **ēgregiē, adv.**, remarkably, extremely well.

ēheu, interj., alas! ah!

ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum (**ex, iaciō**), cast out or forth, eject, shoot out, discharge.

eiulātus, -ūs, m. (eiulō), wailing.

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum (**ex, lābor**), slip by, elapse.

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, ēlēctum (**ex, legō**), pick out, choose, appoint.

ēloquor, ēloquī, ēlocūtus sum (**ex, loquor**), speak out, pronounce, utter.

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, stand out, be prominent or conspicuous.

ēminus, adv. (ex, manus), at a distance, afar.

ēmittō, -ere, ēmisī, ēmissum (**ex, mittō**), send out or forth, let go, emit; discharge, shoot (*Robinson Crusoe*).

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, take, buy.

ēmptor, -tōris, m., buyer, purchaser.

enim, conj. (postpositive), for.

ēnsis, -is, m., sword.

eō, ire, ii, itum, go.

epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle.

epulae, -ārum, f. pl., banquet, feast.

eques, -itis, m. (equus), horseman; **pl.**, cavalry.

equester, -tris, -tre (**eques**), equestrian.

equidem (quidem), indeed, certainly (*usually with the 1st pers.*).

equitātus, -ūs, m. (eques), cavalry.

equus, -ī, m., horse.

ergā, prep. with acc., toward.

ergō, adv., therefore.

ērigō, -ere, ērēxī, ērēctum (**ex, regō**), set up, erect; **sē ērigō**, get up, pick oneself up; **ērēctus, -a, -um** (*perf. part.*), upright, elevated, lofty, erect.

ēripiō, -ere, ēripiui, ēreptum (**ex, rapiō**), snatch away, take away.

ērogō, 1 (ex, rogō), pay out, appropriate, expend.

errō, 1, go astray, wander, err, make a mistake.

ēruditus, -a, -um, perf. part. of ērudiō (ex, rudis), well-informed, learned.

ēsuriō, -ire (edō), desire to eat, become hungry.

et, conj., and, also, even; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.

etenim, conj., for.

etiam (et, iam), also, even.

etsi (et, si), even if, although.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., Europe.

Eurōpaeus, -a, -um (Eurōpa), European; **Eurōpaeus, -i, m.,** a European.

evānescō, -ere, evānuī (ex, vānescō, vānus), vanish or pass away, disappear.

eveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum (ex, veniō), come out, happen.

ēvertō, -ere, ēvertī, ēversum (ex, vertō), upturn, overturn, overthrow.

exanimātus, -a, -um (ex, animus), made breathless, breathless, exhausted.

exanimis, -e (ex, anima), lifeless, dead.

exārdescō, -ere, -ārsī, -ārsus (ex, ārdeō), blaze out, blaze up.

excelsior, -ius (comp. of excelsus), higher, more lofty, more noble.

excelsus, -a, -um, high, lofty, elevated.

exceptiō, -ōnis, f. (ex, capiō), exception.

excipiō, -ere, excēpī, exceptum (ex, capiō), take out,

except, catch, capture, greet.

excitō, 1 (ex, citō, cieō), arouse, awaken, excite.

exclāmō, 1 (ex, clāmō), shout out, exclaim.

excruciō, 1 (ex, cruciō, crux), torture.

excūsō, 1 (ex, causa), excuse.

excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum (ex, quatiō), shake off, shake out.

exedō, -ere, -ēdī, -ēsum (ex, edō, eat), eat out, wear away.

exemplum, -i, n. (ex, emō), sample, example.

exeō, exire, exiī, exitum (ex, eō), go out.

exercitus, -ūs, m. (exerceō, train, exercise), army.

exhauriō, -ire, -hausī, -haustum (ex, hauriō), drain off, remove, exhaust.

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum (ex, agō), drive out, exact, pass, spend.

existimō, 1 (ex, aestimō, aes), think, believe.

exitus, -ūs, m. (exeō), a going out, outlet, end, result.

exorior, -oriri, exortus sum (ex, orior), spring up (suddenly or unexpectedly), rise up.

exorō, 1 (ex, orō, ōs), entreat, gain or obtain (by entreaty).

expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum (ex, pellō), drive out, expel.

expergēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (expergō, awaken, faciō), awaken, rouse.

experientia, -ae, f. (ex, perior), trial, experience.

experior, experiri, expertus sum (ex, perior, try), try out, test, experience; **expertus, -a, -um (perf. part.),** expert.

expleō, -ēre, explēvī, explētum (ex, pleō), fill out, satisfy, gratify.

explōrātor, -tōris, m. (explōrō), scout.

explōrō, 1 (ex, plōrō, cry out, cry aloud), lit., search for by calling out; *hence,* examine, explore.

expōnō, -ere, exposuī, expositum (ex, pōnō), set forth, expose, explain.

exprimō, -ere, expressī, expressum (ex, premō), press out, force.

exsecrātus, -a, -um (perf. part. of exsecrō, ex, sacer), accursed, execrable, detestable.

exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum (ex, sequor), follow after, carry out, execute.

exsiliō, -īre, exsiluī (ex, saliō), leap forward, start up.

expectātiō, -ōnis, f. (expectō), awaiting, expectation.

expectō, 1 (ex, spectō), wait for, expect, wait.

expirō, 1 (ex, spirō), breathe out, breathe one's last, expire.

exspuō, -ere, exspuī, exspūtum (ex, spuō), spit out, cast forth, throw up.

extinguō, -ere, extinxī, extinctum (ex, stinguō), put out, quench, kill, destroy, extinguish.

exultō, 1 (ex, saliō), leap for joy, exult, rejoice exceedingly.

extemplō (like ex tempore), adv., immediately, forthwith.

exterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territum (ex, terreo), strike with terror, frighten.

exterus, outer; comp., exterior, outer, exterior; superl., extrēmus and extimus, outermost, extreme, last.

extrā, prep. with acc., outside of, without, beyond.

extrēmus, -a, -um (superl. of exterus), last, extreme.

exuō, -ere, exuī, exūtum (cf. induō, put on), take off (*of a garment*).

F

faber, -bri, m., artisan, smith.

- fabricor**, *dep.*, 1 (*fabrica*, workshop, fabric, *faber*), construct, build.
- fābula**, -ae, *f.* (*for*), story, fable.
- fābulōsus**, -a, -um (*fābula*), celebrated in fable, fabulous.
- facilis**, -e (*faciō*), easy, ready, kindly; **facile**, *adv.*, easily.
- facinus**, -oris, *n.* (*faciō*), a misdeed, crime.
- faciō**, -ere, *fēci*, **factum**, do, make.
- factum**, -ī, *n.* (*faciō*), deed, act.
- falcō**, -cōnis, *m.*, falcon, bird of prey; **falcō marinus**, seagull.
- fallō**, -ere, *fefelī*, **falsum**, deceive, cheat; **falsus**, -a, -um (*perf. part.*), deceitful, false; **falsō**, *adv.*, falsely.
- fāma**, -ae, *f.* (*for*), report, rumor, reputation, fame.
- famēs**, -is, *f.*, hunger, famine.
- familia**, -ae, *f.* (*famulus*, household slave), family of slaves, family, household (*with pater and māter, old gen. familiās used*).
- farina**, -ae, *f.* (*far*, grain), meal, flour.
- fātālis**, -e (*fātum*), fated, fatal.
- fateor**, -ēri, **fassus sum**, admit, confess.
- fātum**, -ī, *n.* (*fāri*), fate, destiny.
- faucēs**, -ium, *f. pl.*, jaws, throat.
- faustissimus**, -a, -um (*superl. of faustus*), most fortunate.
- faustus**, -a, -um (*faveō*), favorable, fortunate, prosperous.
- faveō**, -ēre, *fāvī*, **fautum**, favor.
- fēlicissimus**, -a, -um (*superl. of fēlix*), most fortunate, most favorable, very favorable.
- fēlicitās**, -tātis, *f.* (*fēlix*), good luck, good fortune, happiness.
- fēliciter**, *adv.* (*fēlix*), luckily, happily, with good fortune.
- fēlix**, **fēlicis**, lucky, happy, fortunate.
- fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, woman.
- fera**, -ae, *f.* (*ferus*), wild beast.
- ferāx**, -ācis (*ferō*), fertile, productive.
- ferē**, *adv.*, almost, about.
- fēriae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, holidays, vacation, festival.
- feriō**, -ire, strike, smite.
- ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, bear, bring, carry.
- ferōx**, **ferōcis**, fierce, ferocious.
- ferreus**, -a, -um (*ferrum*), made of iron, iron.
- ferrum**, -ī, *n.*, iron.

- ferus**, -a, -um, wild, untamed.
- ferveō**, -ēre, **ferbui**, glow, be hot; **fervēns** (*pres. part.*), boiling hot, burning.
- fessus**, -a, -um, tired, weary.
- festinātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (**festinō**), speed, haste.
- festinō**, 1, hasten, make haste, hurry.
- fēstivus**, -a, -um (*cf. fēriae*), gay, festive, agreeable, pleasant.
- fidēlis**, -e (**fidēs**), faithful.
- fidēliter**, *adv.* (**fidēlis**), faithfully.
- fidēs**, -ei, *f.* (**fidō**), good faith, pledge, protection.
- fido**, -ere, **fisus sum**, confide in, trust; **fidens**, **fidentis** (*pres. part.*), confident, courageous.
- fidus**, -a, -um (**fido**), faithful, trusty.
- figō**, -ere, **fixi**, **fixum**, **fix**, fasten, pierce.
- figūra**, -ae, *f.* (**figō**), form, shape, figure.
- filia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter; *dat. and abl. pl.*, **filiabus**. *Cf. deabus*.
- filioles**, -i, *m.* (**filius**), a little son.
- filius**, -i, *m.*, son.
- filum**, -i, *n.*, thread.
- finō**, -ere, **finxi**, **fictum**, shape, invent, fashion.
- finiō**, -ire, -ivi or -iī, **finitum** (**finis**), set limits to, bound, finish.
- finis**, -is, *m.*, end, limit; *pl.*, territory.
- finitimus**, -a, -um (**finis**), neighboring; **finitimus**, -i, *m.*, a neighbor.
- fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, be made, become (*used as pass. of faciō*).
- firmus**, -a, -um, strong, firm; **firmiter**, *adv.*, firmly.
- flamma**, -ae (**flagrō**, burn), flame, fire.
- flātus**, -ūs, *m.* (**flō**), a blowing, blast.
- flectō**, -ere, **flexi**, **flexum**, bend, turn.
- fleō**, -ēre, **flēvi**, **flētum**, weep, cry.
- flō**, 1, blow.
- flōrēns**, -entis (**flōreō**), blooming, flourishing.
- flōreō**, -ēre, **flōrui** (**flōs**), bloom, flourish.
- flōs**, **flōris**, *m.*, blossom, flower.
- flūctus**, -ūs (**fluō**), *m.*, wave.
- flūmen**, -inis, *n.* (**fluō**), river.
- fluvius**, -i, *m.* (**fluō**), stream, river.
- focus**, -i, *m.*, fireplace, hearth.
- foedus**, -eris, *n.*, league, covenant, treaty.
- folium**, -i, *n.*, leaf.
- fōns**, **fontis**, *m.*, spring, fountain.

(for), <i>fāri</i> , <i>fātus sum</i> , speak, say.	<i>Venus</i> , <i>diēs</i> , Friday, <i>in Robinson Crusoe</i>).
<i>forās</i> , <i>adv.</i> (<i>cf. foris</i>), out through the door, forth.	<i>frigidus</i> , -a, -um (<i>frigeō</i> , be cold), cold, frigid.
<i>foris</i> , -is, <i>f.</i> , door, gate, doors, entrance.	<i>frigus</i> , -oris, <i>n.</i> (<i>cf. frigeō</i>), cold, coldness.
<i>foris</i> , <i>adv.</i> (<i>cf. foris</i>), out of doors, abroad.	<i>frōns</i> , <i>frondis</i> , <i>f.</i> , a leafy branch, leaf, foliage.
<i>fōrma</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , form, shape.	<i>frōns</i> , <i>frontis</i> , <i>f.</i> , forehead, brow, front.
<i>formidō</i> , -dinis, <i>f.</i> , dread, fear, apprehension.	<i>frūctus</i> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> (<i>fruor</i>), fruit.
<i>fōrmōsus</i> , -a, -um (<i>fōrma</i>), beautiful, handsome.	<i>frūmentārius</i> , -a, -um (<i>frūmentum</i> , <i>fruor</i>), of or pertaining to grain; <i>rēs frūmentāria</i> , grain supply.
<i>fortasse</i> (<i>cf. forte</i>), perhaps, perchance.	<i>frūmentum</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i> (<i>fruor</i>), grain.
<i>forte</i> , <i>adv.</i> , by chance.	<i>fruor</i> , <i>frui</i> , <i>fructus sum</i> , enjoy.
<i>fortis</i> , -e, brave, strong.	<i>frūstrā</i> , <i>adv.</i> , in vain.
<i>fortiter</i> , <i>adv.</i> (<i>fortis</i>), bravely, vigorously.	<i>fuga</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , flight.
<i>fortitūdō</i> , -dinis, <i>f.</i> (<i>fortis</i>), bravery.	<i>fugiō</i> , -ere, <i>fūgi</i> , <i>fugitum</i> , flee.
<i>fortūna</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , fortune.	<i>fugitivus</i> , -ī, <i>m.</i> (<i>fugiō</i>), fugitive, deserter.
<i>forum</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , market-place, forum; <i>in forō</i> , in court.	<i>fulciō</i> , -īre, <i>fulsī</i> , <i>fultum</i> , prop up, support.
<i>fossa</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> (<i>fodiō</i> , dig), ditch.	<i>fulgeō</i> , -ēre, <i>fulsī</i> , flash, gleam, glare.
<i>fragor</i> , -ōris, <i>m.</i> (<i>frangō</i>), breaking, crash, clap.	<i>fulmen</i> , <i>fulminis</i> , <i>n.</i> (<i>fulgeō</i>), thunderbolt, lightning.
<i>frango</i> , -ere, <i>frēgi</i> , <i>frāctum</i> (<i>root frag-</i>), break, shatter.	<i>fūmus</i> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , smoke.
<i>frāter</i> , <i>frātris</i> , <i>m.</i> , brother.	<i>Fundānus</i> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Fundanus.
<i>fraus</i> , <i>fraudis</i> , <i>f.</i> , cheating, fraud.	<i>fundō</i> , 1 (<i>fundus</i> , bottom), lay the bottom or foundation, found.
<i>fretum</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , strait, sound, channel.	<i>fundō</i> , -ere, <i>fūdi</i> , <i>fūsum</i> , pour, scatter, rout.
<i>Fridaius</i> , <i>Fridai</i> , <i>m.</i> , Friday (<i>a translation of Venerdius</i> ,	

fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, perform, fulfill.
fūnis, -is, m., rope; **fūnis incendiarius**, slow match (*Robinson Crusoe*).
fūnus, -eris, n., death, funeral.
furō, -ere, be mad, rage.
furor, -ōris, m. (**furō, rage**), a raging, madness, fury, frenzy.
fūrtim, adv. (**fūrtum**), stealthily.
fūrtum, -ī, n., theft.
Fuscus, -ī, m., Fuscus, a friend of Horace.
fuscus, -a, -um, dark, swarthy.

G

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul.
Gallicus, -a, -um, of or pertaining to Gaul, Gallic.
Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvisus sum, rejoice.
gaudium, -ī, n. (**gaudeō**), delight, joy, pleasure.
gelidus, -a, -um (gelū), very cold, icy.
gelō, 1, cause to freeze, freeze.
gelū, -ūs, n., icy coldness, cold.
gemma, -ae, f., a precious stone, gem.
genae, -ārum, f. pl., cheeks.

genū, -ūs, n., knee.
genus, -eris, n. (*root gen-*, as in **gigno, -ere, genui, genitum**, bring forth, bear), birth, tribe, sort, kind, race.
Germānus, -a, -um, German;
Germānus, -ī, m., a German.
gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, bear, carry on, or wage (war), manage; **rēs gestae**, exploits.
gestiō, -īre, -ivī or -īi, gesti-tum (gestus), make gestures, desire eagerly, be eager.
gestus, -ūs, m. (**gerō**), attitude, motion, gesture.
glaciēs, -ēī, f., ice.
gladius, -ī, m., sword.
glāns, glandis, f., acorn, ball; **glāns plumbea**, bullet (*Robinson Crusoe*).
Glaucus, -ī, m., Glaucus.
globus, -ī, m., ball; **globus plumbeus**, lead bullet, ball (*Robinson Crusoe*).
glomerō, 1 (glomus), wind or form into a ball, roll, collect or gather together.
glomus, -ī, m., ball.
glōria, -ae, f., glory, renown.
gracilis, -e, slender.
gradus, -ūs, m. (*cf. gradior, gradi, gressus, walk, go*), step, grade, rank, advance.

Graecus, -a, -um, Grecian, Greek; Graecus, -i, <i>m.</i> , a Greek.	habitō, 1 (habeō), dwell, inhabit, reside.
grānum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , grain, seed, small kernel.	haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesum, stick, remain, stand still.
grātia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , favor, good will, influence, thanks, grace; grātiā habēre, be grateful; grātiās agere, return or render thanks.	Hannibal, Hannibalis, <i>m.</i> , Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.
grātor, <i>dep.</i> , 1 (grātus), rejoice, congratulate.	hasta, -ae, <i>f.</i> , lance, spear.
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, grateful, agreeable.	hauriō, -ire, hausī, haustum, draw off, drain, swallow up.
gravidus, -a, -um (gravis), laden, full.	herba, -ae, <i>f.</i> , herb, plant, grass.
gravis, -e, heavy, burdensome, serious.	hērēs, -ēdis, <i>m.</i> , <i>f.</i> , an heir, heiress.
gravitās, -tātis, <i>f.</i> (gravis), heaviness, weight (<i>especially of character</i>), dignity, seriousness.	hesternus, -a, -um (heri, yesterday), of or pertaining to yesterday, yesterday's.
graviter, <i>adv.</i> (gravis), heavily, severely.	heu, <i>interj.</i> , alas!
gremium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , lap, bosom.	heus, <i>interj.</i> , hallo!
grex, gregis, <i>m.</i> , flock.	hiātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> (hiō, stand with open mouth, gape), opening, yawning, gap.
gubernātor, -tōris, <i>m.</i> (gubernō), steersman, pilot.	hic, haec, hoc, <i>demonstr. pron.</i> , this (of mine or near me);
gubernō, 1, steer (a ship).	hic, <i>adv.</i> , here, in this place.
gustus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , taste.	hilaris, -e (hilarus, -a, -um), cheerful, gay, glad.
gymnasium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , a public school, gymnasium, college.	hinc, <i>adv.</i> (hic), from this place, from here, hence.
	Hispānia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Spain.
	Hispāniēnsis, -e (Hispānia), Spanish; Hispāniēnsis, -is, <i>m.</i> , a Spaniard.
	hodiē, <i>adv.</i> (hōc diē), on this day, to-day.
	homō, hominis, <i>m.</i> , <i>f.</i> , a human being, man.

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, habitum, have, hold, consider.

honestus, -a, -um (honor), honorable.

honor, -ōris, *m.*, honor.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.

horreō, -ēre, horruī, bristle, tremble, shudder at; **horrens**, -entis (*pres. part.*), bristling; **horrendus**, -a, -um (*gerundive*), fearful, dreadful, terrible; **horrendum**, *adv.*, fearfully, dreadfully.

horrēscō, -ere, horruī (horreō), grow rough, bristle, tremble, shudder.

horribilis, -e (horreō), dreadful, horrible.

horridus, -a, -um (horreō), standing on end, rough, shaggy.

horror, -ōris, *m.* (horreō), bristling, terror, horror.

hortor, *dep.*, 1, urge, exhort.

hortus, -i, *m.*, garden.

hospes, hospitis, *m.*, host, guest, friend.

hospitium, -i, *n.* (hospes), friendship, hospitality, inn.

hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy.

hūc, *adv.* (*hic*), to this place, hither.

hūmānus, -a, -um (*homō*), of or belonging to man, human.

humilis, -e (*humus*), *lit.*, on the ground; *hence*, low, obscure, humble.

humus, -i, *f.*, the ground, soil; **humī**, *loc.*, on the ground.

Hydaspēs, -is, *m.*, Hydaspes, a river in India.

I

iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, lie, lie prostrate, be situated.

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw.

iactus, -ūs, *m.* (iaciō), throwing, cast.

iaculum, -i, *n.* (iaciō), dart, javelin.

iam, *adv.*, already, now; *with the fut.*, soon, presently; *with a neg.*, no longer.

iam diū, **iam dūdum**, **iam pridem**, now for a long time (*with the pres. and past, having the force of the perf. and past perf., respectively*).

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place.

ibidem (**ibi**, **idem**), in the same place.

icō, **icere**, **icī**, **ictum**, smite, strike.

ictus, -ūs, *m.* (icō), a striking, blow, stroke.

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, same.

idōlon (**um**), -i, *n.*, specter, apparition, ghost.

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit.

igitur, *conj.* (*postpositive*), therefore, accordingly.

ignārus, -ā, -um (*in*, not, *gnārus*, (*g*)nōscō), not knowing, ignorant.

ignāvus , -a, -um, lazy, idle.	impedimenta , -ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i> (impediō), baggage, military train.
ignis , -is, <i>m.</i> , fire.	impediō , -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītum (in, pēs), hinder, impede.
ignōrantia , -ae, <i>f.</i> (in, not, (g)nōscō), lack of knowledge, ignorance.	impendō , -ere, -pendī, -pēnsūm (in, pendō), lay out, expend, devote.
ignōscō , -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum (in, not, (g)nōscō), pardon.	imperātor , -tōris, <i>m.</i> (imperō), commander in chief, general, emperor.
ignōtus , -a, -um (in, not, (g)nōscō), unknown.	imperium , -ī, <i>n.</i> (imperō), chief command, empire.
ille , illa, illud, <i>demonstr. pron.</i> , that (yonder), the well-known, famous.	imperitus , -a, -um (in, perītus), inexperienced, ignorant.
illūc , <i>adv.</i> (ille), to that place, there.	imperō , 1, command, impose commands upon.
imāgō , -inis, <i>f.</i> , copy, image, ghost.	impetrō , 1, obtain (<i>a request</i>), procure, get.
imitor , <i>dep.</i> , 1, imitate.	impetus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> (in, petō), charge, attack, rush.
immānis , -e, immense, monstrous, frightful, savage, wild.	impingō , -ere, -pēgī, -pāctum (in, pango), strike upon, dash against.
immemor , -oris (in, not, memor), unmindful, regardless.	impleō , -ēre, -ēvī, implētum (in, pleō), fill up, cover, complete.
immēnsus , -a, -um (in, not, mētior, mētiri, mēnsus, measure), immeasurable, boundless, immense.	implicō , 1, <i>also</i> , implicuī, implicitum (in, plico), fold into, entangle, entwine.
immineō , -ēre, project over, overhang.	implōrō , 1 (in, plōrō), call to one's assistance or aid, entreat, implore.
immittō , -ere, -misi, -missum (in, mittō), throw into, plunge.	impōnō , -ere, imposuī, impositum (in, pōnō), place in or upon, impose.
immō , nay, nay rather, on the contrary.	
immortalitās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> (immortālis, in, not, mortālis, mors), immortality.	

- imprimō, -ere, impressī, impressum** (in, **premō**), press in or upon, impress, imprint.
- imprūdēns** (in, **prūdēns**), not foreseeing, without knowing, off one's guard; **imprūdentē, adv.**, without foresight, imprudently.
- impūne, adv.** (**impūnis**, in, not, **poena**), without punishment, safely, with impunity.
- in, prep.** with *acc.*, into, to, against; with *abl.*, in, on.
- inānis, -e**, empty, useless.
- incautus, -a, -um** (in, not, **caveō, cautum**), incautious, off one's guard.
- incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum** (in, **cēdō**), walk into, move on, walk (with dignity).
- incendiārius, -a, -um** (**incendium, incendō**), causing a fire; **fūnis incendiārius**, slow match (*Robinson Crusoe*).
- incertus, -a, -um** (in, not, **certus**), uncertain, unsteady.
- incidō, -ere, incidī, incāsum** (in, **cadō**), fall into, fall upon, happen.
- incipiō, -ere, incēpi, inceptum** (in, **capiō**), begin.
- incognitus, -a, -um** (in, not, **con, (g)nōscō**), not known, unknown.
- incola, -ae, m., f.** (in, **colō**), inhabitant.
- incolō, -ere, incolui** (in, **colō**), dwell in, inhabit (*with acc.*).
- incolumis, -e**, uninjured, safe, sound.
- inconditus, -a, -um** (in, not, **condō, con, dō**), without order, confused, rude, uncouth.
- incrēdibilis, -e** (in, not, **crēdō**), unbelievable, incredible.
- incubō, -āre, -cubui, incubitum** (in, **cubo**), lie or sit in or upon, brood.
- incumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum** (in, **cumbō**), lie upon, lean over, bend to.
- indāgō, 1**, trace out, track, explore, hunt for.
- inde**, thence, from there, then.
- indignus, -a, -um** (in, not, **dignus**), unworthy, intolerable.
- indulgeō, -ēre, indulsī, indulge**.
- induō, -ere, indui, indūtum** (*cf.* **exuō**), put on, clothe, equip.
- industria, -ae, f.** (**industrius**), diligence, industry.
- ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum** (in, **eō**), go in, enter upon, begin.
- inerrō, inerrāre** (in, **errō**), wander about, flit (before).
- infāmis, -e** (in, not, **fāma**), of bad reputation, notorious.

inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātum (in, ferō), bear in or against; bellum inferre , begin war.	iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (in, iaciō), throw in or on, inspire, infuse.
inferus, -a, -um , low; <i>comp.</i> , inferior, -ius, lower; <i>superl.</i> , infimus, -a, -um , imus, -ā, -um , lowest.	inimicus, -a, -um (in, not, amicus), unfriendly; inimicus, -ī, m. , a (personal) enemy.
infinitus, -a, -um (in, not, finis), without limit, vast, infinite.	iniquus, -a, -um (in, aequus), uneven, unfair, unjust.
infrā, prep. with acc. , below.	initium, -ī, n. (in, eō), an entering, beginning.
infringō, -ere, infrēgī, infrāctum (in, frangō), break, shatter, break down.	iniūria, -ae, f. (in, not, iūs), wrong, injury.
ingēns, ingentis (<i>perhaps</i> in, not, gēns, not of its kind), large, huge.	innumerus, -a, -um (in, not, numerus), numberless, innumerable.
ingenuus, -a, -um (in, gignō, genitum, be born), free-born, noble, frank.	innuō, -ere, innuī (in, nuō, nod), nod, beckon, give a sign.
ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum (in, gradior, gradus), enter into, proceed, advance.	inops, inopis (in, not, ops), without resources, weak, without control (over).
inhabitō, ī (in, habitō, habeo), dwell in, inhabit; inhabitāns, -antis, m. , an inhabitant, inmate.	inquam , said I; inquit , said he.
inhaereō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesum (in, haereō), stick to, cling to.	inrētiō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, inrētītum (in, rēte, net), catch in a net, ensnare.
inhospitālis, -e (in, not, hospitālis, hospes), inhospitable.	insequor, -quī, -secūtus sum (in, sequor), pursue.
inhūmānus, -a, -um (in, not, hūmānus), inhuman, barbarous.	inserō, -ere, -seruī, insertum (in, serō, join), insert, fasten in, mingle with.
	insideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum (in, sedeō), sit in or upon, perch.
	insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. (in, sedeō), ambush, ambuscade, treachery.

- insonō**, -āre, -sonūi (in, sonō), sound, resound, rattle (over).
- instar**, *n.*, *indecl.*, image; **instar montis**, as big as a mountain.
- instaurō**, 1, renew, repeat, celebrate anew.
- instillō**, 1 (in, stilla, drop), pour in by drops, drop in, instill.
- instituō**, -ere, **institui**, **institutum** (in, statuō, status, stō), set up, decide upon, establish, institute.
- instō**, -stāre, **institi** (in, stō), stand to or on, press on, be at hand.
- instrūmentum**, -ī, *n.* (instruō), implement, tool, instrument.
- instruō**, -ere, **instrūxi**, **instrūctum** (in, struō), arrange in order, draw up, furnish, prepare.
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island.
- insusurrō**, 1 (in, susurrō, hum, buzz), whisper into, suggest.
- intāctus**, -a, -um (in, not, tangō), untouched, uninjured, intact.
- integer**, **integra**, **integrum** (in, not, tangō), untouched, whole, blameless; **dē integrō**, anew, afresh.
- intellegenter**, *adv.* (intellegēs, intellegō), intelligently.
- intellegō** (intelligō), -ere, **intellēxi**, **intellēctum** (inter, legō, pick out from between), understand, realize.
- intendō**, -ere, **intendi**, **intantum** (in, tendō), stretch, strain, be intent or absorbed, bring (*of a law suit*).
- inter**, *prep. with acc.*, among, between.
- interclūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum (inter, clūdō, claudio), hinder, intercept.
- interdiū**, *adv.* (inter, diū, diēs), in the daytime.
- interea** (inter, eā), in the meantime, meanwhile.
- interest**, **interesse**, **interfuit** (inter, sum), it concerns, interests.
- interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (inter, faciō), kill, put to death.
- intericiō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (inter, iaciō), throw in between, interweave.
- interim**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
- interior**, -ius (*comp. of intrā*), inner, interior of.
- interrogō**, 1 (inter, rogō), ask, question, inquire.
- intervallum**, -ī, *n.* (inter, val-lum), the space between the two ramparts, space between, interval.

intorqueō, -ēre, intorsī, intortum (in, torqueō), twist around or at, brandish, hurl, shoot.	irradiō (inradiō), -āre (in, radiō, radius), illumine.
intrā, <i>prep. with acc.</i> , within; <i>comp.</i> , interior, -ius, inner; <i>superl.</i> , intimus, -a, -um, innermost.	is, ea, id, <i>demons. pron.</i> , that, he, she, it.
intrō, 1, go into, enter.	iste, ista, istud, <i>demons. pron.</i> , that (of yours).
intueor, -ērī, intuitus sum (in, tueor), look at, gaze upon.	ita, <i>adv.</i> , so, thus.
inūsītātus, -a, -um (in, not, ūsitor, ūtor), unusual, uncommon, very rare.	Italia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Italy.
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, invāsum (in, vādō), go into, go against, attack, invade.	itaque, <i>adv.</i> , and so, therefore.
inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, inventum (in, veniō), come upon, find.	item, <i>adv.</i> , likewise.
invictus, -a, -um (in, not, vincō), unconquered, invincible.	iter, itineris, <i>n.</i> (eō, itum), journey, route; iter facit, he makes a march, marches.
invideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum (in, videō, look at askance), envy.	iterō, 1, do a thing a second time, repeat.
invidia, -ae, <i>f.</i> (invideō), envy, jealousy, hatred.	iterum, <i>adv.</i> , again, a second time.
invitō, 1, invite, summon.	itur (3d <i>sing. pres. pass. of eō</i> , go), it "is gone," one goes.
iō, <i>interj.</i> , ah! oh!	iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, order.
iocōsus, -a, -um (iocus, joke), witty, fond of jokes.	iūbilō, 1 (iūbilum, shout), shout, shout for joy.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, <i>intensive demons. pron.</i> , self, himself, herself, etc.	iūcundus, -a, -um (iuvō), pleasing, agreeable, pleasant.
ira, -ae, <i>f.</i> , anger, wrath.	iūdex, iūdicis, <i>m.</i> (iūs, dīcō), judge.
irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum (ira), be angry with.	iūdicō, 1 (iūdex), judge, decide.
	iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum (root iug-), join.
	Iuppiter, Iovis, <i>m.</i> , Jupiter, king of the gods.
	iūrō, 1 (iūs), take oath, swear.

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, (human) law.

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, *n.*, oath.

iūstītia, -ae, *f.* (iūstus), justice, fairness.

iūstus, -a, -um (iūs), right, fair, just.

iuvenis, -is, young, a young man; *comp.*, iūnior (minor nātū), younger; *superl.*, minimus (nātū), youngest.

iuventūs, -tūtis, *f.* (iuvenis), the age of youth, youth.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, aid, assist.

iuxtā (*cf.* iungō), *adv.*, *prep.* with the *acc.*, close by, near.

L

labia, -ae, *f.*, and labium, -ī, *n.* (*cf.* lambō), lip.

Labienus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, slip.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, work, toil, labor.

labōriōsus, -a, -um (labor), toilsome, industrious.

labōrō, 1 (labor), take pains, labor, work.

lac, lactis, *n.*, milk.

lacerātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (lacerō -tear), tearing, laceration.

laccessō, -ere, laccessivī, laccessitum, provoke, challenge, attack.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear (*old spelling*, lacruma).

lacrimō, 1 (lacrima), shed tears, weep.

laedō, -ere, laesi, laesum, injure by striking, hurt.

laesus, -a, -um (*perf. part.* of laedō), injured, hurt.

laetitia, -ae, *f.* (laetus), joy, gladness.

laetor, *dep.*, 1 (laetus), rejoice greatly.

laetus, -a, -um, glad, joyful.

lama, -ae, *f.*, the lama (or llama), a kind of camel, but smaller, without the hump, and woolly-haired (Robinson Crusoe).

lambō, -ere, lick, lap.

lāna, -ae, *f.*, wool.

lāneus, -a, -um (lāna), woolen, woolly.

laniō, 1 (*cf.* lanius, a butcher), lacerate, mutilate.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone.

lāpsus, -ūs, *m.* (lābor), a slipping, slip.

laqueus, -ī, *m.*, noose, snare.

largus, -a, -um, copious, lavish, unstinted; largiter, *adv.*, copiously, plentifully.

lassitūdō, -dinis, *f.* (lassus), exhaustion, fatigue.

lassus, -a, -um, faint, tired.

lātē, *adv.*, widely, far and wide.

lateō, -ēre, latuī, lie hidden or concealed.

Latinus, -a, -um, Latin.

lātitudō, -dinis, *f.* (lātus), length.

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad.

latus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.

laudātor, -tōris, *m.* (laudō), one who praises.

laudō, 1, praise.

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise.

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautum or lōtum, wash, sprinkle (*cf.* luō, wash).

lēcītō, 1 (legō), read often, read.

lectus, -ī, *m.*, couch, bed.

légātus, -ī, *m.* (lēgō, 1, appoint, commission), delegate, envoy, ambassador, lieutenant.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.

legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctum, gather, choose, read.

lēniō, -ire, -ivī or iī, lēnitum (lēnis), soften, make smooth, soothe.

lēnis, -e, smooth, gentle.

lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* (lēnis), gentleness, mildness.

lēniter, *adv.* (lēnis), softly, mildly, gently.

lentus, -a, -um (lēnis), sluggish, slow; **lentē**, *adv.*, slowly, leisurely.

leō, -ōnis, *m., f.*, lion, lioness.

lētum, -ī, *n.*, death, ruin.

levis, -e, light; **leviter**, *adv.*, lightly.

levō, 1 (levis), lift up, lighten, relieve.

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.

libēns, -entis, willing, with pleasure; **libenter**, *adv.*, gladly.

liber, -brī, *m.*, book.

liber, -era, -erum, free.

liberātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (liberō, liber), a freeing or becoming free, deliverance, liberation.

liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* (liber), children (*of free parents*).

liberō, 1 (liber), make free, free, liberate.

libertās, -tātis, *f.* (liber), freedom, liberty.

libet, -ēre, libuit (libitum est), it pleases; **ad libitum**, at one's pleasure.

libīdō, -dinis, *f.*, desire, passion, lust.

libra, -ae, *f.*, a Roman pound, a balance or pair of scales.

librō, 1 (libra), balance, poise.

licentia, -ae, *f.* (licet), freedom, license.

licet, -ēre, licuit, it is allowed; with the primary tenses of the subj., as a conj., although.

ligneus, -a, -um (lignum), made of wood, wooden.

lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood.

ligō, 1, bind.

limen, -inis, *n.*, threshold (*cf.* limes).

- limes**, -itis, *m.*, cross-path, path, limit.
limus, -ī, *m.*, mud, slime.
linea, -ae, *f.*, (linen) thread, line.
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
lintheum, -ī, *n.* (linum, linen), linen cloth.
liquidus, -a, -um, liquid, fluid, clear.
lis, litis, *f.*, dispute, suit at law.
littera (litera), -ae, *f.* (linō, -ere, lēvi, litum, daub, besmear), a letter of the alphabet; *pl.*, a letter, an epistle, literature.
litus, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach.
locus, -ī, *m.*, place; *pl.*, loca (places), loci (passages or topics), -ōrum.
Londinium (Lund-), -ī, *n.*, London.
longē, *adv.* (longus), far, distant, far off, far and wide.
longinquus, -a, -um (longus), far removed, far off, distant; ē longinquō, from afar, at a distance.
longitūdō, -dinis, *f.* (longus), length.
longius, *adv.*, *comp.* of longē, rather far off, too far, farther.
longus, -a, -um, long (of space or time), far.
- loquor**, loqui, locūtus sum, speak, talk.
lūbricus, -a, -um, slippery.
lucrum, -ī, *n.*, gain, profit, wealth.
lūdō, -ere, lūsi, lūsum, play, make sport of.
lūdus, -ī, *m.*, play, game.
lūgeō, -ēre, lūxi, mourn, lament.
lūmen, -inis, *n.* (lūx), light.
lūna, -ae, *f.* (lūx), moon.
lupus, -ī, *m.*, wolf.
lūstrō, 1, look at, survey.
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight.
- M**
- māchina**, -ae, *f.*, machine, structure.
maciēs, -ēi, *f.* (macer, lean), leanness, emaciation.
mactō, 1, sacrifice, kill, slaughter.
macula, -ae, *f.*, spot, stain.
maculō, 1 (macula), spot, tinge, stain.
Maecēnās, -ātis, *m.*, Maecenas, the patron of Vergil and Horace, and friend of Augustus; a patron (of literature).
maeror, -rōris, *m.* (maereō, mourn), grief, sadness, sorrow.
magis, *comp.* of magnopere, more, rather.
magister, -tri (magis), master, teacher.

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* (magister), an office, official, magistrate.

magnitūdō, -dinis, *f.* (magnus), greatness, size.

magnopere, *adv.* (magnus, opus), greatly; *comp.*, **magis**, rather; *superl.*, **maxime**, especially.

magnus, -a, -um, large, great; *comp.*, **maior**, -ius, greater; *superl.*, **maximus**, -a, -um, greatest.

maior, -ius, *comp.* of **magnus**, greater; **maior nātū** (senior), *comp.* of **senex**, older.

maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.* (magnus, maior), elders, ancestors.

male, *adv.* (malus), badly, ill; *comp.*, **peius**, *superl.*, **pessimē**.

malleus, -ī, *m.*, a hammer, mallet.

mālō, **mālle**, **mālui** (magis, volō), prefer.

malus, -a, -um, bad; **malum**, -ī, *n.*, evil, misfortune; *comp.*, **peior**, -ius, worse; *superl.*, **pessimus**, -a, -um, worst.

mandō, 1 (manus, dō), hand over, intrust.

mane, *indecl.*, *n.*, morning; *adv.*, in the morning.

maneō, -ēre, **mānsi**, **mānsu**, remain, abide.

mānēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, spirits of the dead, ghost, shade.

mānō, 1, flow, drop, trickle.

mānsuētus, -a, -um (*perf. part.* of **mānsuēscō**, -ere, -ēvi, **mānsuētum**, tame, manus, suēscō, accustom), tame, mild, gentle.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, band.

Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus, Mark.

mare, -is, *n.*, sea.

margaritum, -ī, *n.*, **margarita**, -ae, *f.*, a pearl.

marinus, -a, -um (mare), of or pertaining to the sea, marine.

maritimus, -a, -um (mare), of or pertaining to the sea, sea, maritime; **cursus maritimus**, voyage.

Mārs, **Mārtis**, *m.*, Mars, the god of war.

māssa, -ae, *f.*, lump, mass, block.

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.

māteria, -ae, *f.* (māter), stuff, matter, wood, timber.

mātrōnālis, -e (mātrōna, matron, māter), of a matron, a matron's.

mātūrē, *adv.* (mātūrus), seasonably, at the proper time.

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature, early.

Maurus, -a, -um, Moorish, African.

- maximē**, *adv.* (*superl. of magnopere, magis*), most, especially.
- maximus** (*superl. of magnus, maior*), greatest; **maximus** (*nātū*) (*superl. of senex, senior, maior nātū*), oldest.
- medeor, medērī** (*cf. medicus*), cure.
- medicina**, -ae, *f.* (*medicus*), medicine, the healing art.
- medicus**, -ī, *m.*, a physician.
- mediocris**, -e (*medius*), middling, moderate, mediocre, not very large.
- mediocritās, -tātis**, *f.* (*mediocris*), middle state, mean, moderation, mediocrity.
- mediocriter**, *adv.* (*mediocris*), moderately, in a moderate degree.
- medius**, -a, -um, middle, middle of.
- mel, mellis**, *n.*, honey, sweetness.
- mellitus**, -a, -um (*mel*), honey-sweet, dear.
- membrum**, -brī, *n.*, limb.
- meminī, meminisse** (*memor*), remember, recollect (*impv. mementō, mementōte*).
- memor, memoris**, mindful.
- memorābilis**, -e (*memorō, memor*), worthy of mention, memorable.
- memorandus**, -a, -um (*gerun-*
- dive of* **memorō, memor**), worthy of being remembered, memorable.
- memoria**, -ae, *f.*, memory, remembrance.
- mēns, mentis**, *f.*, mind.
- mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table.
- mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month.
- mentum**, -ī, *n.*, chin.
- mercātor, -tōris**, *m.* (*mercor, merx*, merchandise), trader, merchant.
- mercātūra**, -ae, *f.* (*mercor*), trade, traffic, commerce.
- mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritum**, earn by merit, acquire, serve, deserve.
- mergō, -ere, mersi, mersum**, sink, immerse, drown, overwhelm.
- meridiēs, -ēī**, *m.* (*medius, diēs*), midday, noon.
- meritum**, -ī, *n.* (*mereō*), merit, service, reward.
- mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum**, measure or mete out.
- metuō, -ere, metuī (metus)**, fear, apprehend.
- metus**, -ūs, *m.*, fear, dread.
- meus**, -a, -um, my (*voc. sing. masc., mī*).
- micō, -āre, micuī**, twinkle, glitter, dart.
- Midās, -ae**, *m.*, Midas.
- migrō, 1**, move from one place to another, migrate.
- mīles, -itis**, *m.*, soldier.

- militāris**, -e (*miles*), military, warlike, martial.
- mille**, *indecl.*, thousand; *milia*, -ium, *n. pl.*, thousands.
- minimē**, *adv. (superl. of parum, minus)*, least, in the smallest degree, not at all.
- minimus**, -a, -um (*superl. of parvus, minor*), smallest, least; **minimus** (*nātū*) (*superl. of iuvenis, iūnior, minor nātū*), youngest.
- minister**, -trī, *m.* (*minus*), an underofficial, assistant.
- ministrō**, 1 (*minister*), wait upon, serve, minister unto.
- minitāns**, -tantis (*pres. part. of minitor, threaten*), threatening.
- minor**, -us (*comp. of parvus*), less, smaller; **minor** (*nātū*) (*iūnior*), *comp. of iuvenis*, younger.
- minuō**, -ere, **minuī**, **minūtum** (*minus*), make smaller, abate, ebb.
- minus**, *adv. (comp. of parum)*, less.
- mirābilis**, -e (*miror*), worthy of being wondered at, wonderful, marvelous.
- mirificē**, *adv. (mirificus, mirus, faciō)*, wonderfully, exceedingly.
- miror**, *dep.*, 1, wonder at, admire.
- mirus**, -a, -um, wonderful, astonishing.
- misceō**, -ēre, **miscuī**, **mixtum**, mix, mingle.
- misellus**, -a, -um (*miser*), poor little.
- miser**, -era, -erum, wretched, unhappy.
- miserābilis**, -e (*misereor, pity, miser*), worthy of pity, miserable, wretched.
- miserābiliter**, *adv. (miserābilis)*, miserably, pitifully, sadly.
- miseret**, -ēre, **miseruit** (*miser*), it causes pity.
- mitis**, -e, mild, mellow, gentle.
- mittō**, -ere, **misi**, **missum**, send, let go.
- modernus**, -a, -um (*modus*), of the present manner, modern.
- moderor**, *dep.*, 1 (*modus*), keep within bounds, restrain, control.
- modestē**, *adv. (modestus)*, modestly.
- modestus**, -a, -um (*modus*), within due measure, modest, discreet.
- modo**, *adv.*, just now, now only; *conj.*, provided, if only; *nōn modo . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also.
- modus**, -ī, *m.*, due measure, manner, kind, way, limit.

moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, fortifications, walls.
 molestus, -a, -um (*mōlēs*, massive structure, trouble), troublesome, annoying.
 mollis, -e, soft, tender, pliant.
 moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, advise, warn.
 mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.
 mōnstrum, -ī, *n.* (*moneō*), a warning, omen, portent, monster.
 montānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* (*mōns*), mountaineers.
 monumentum, -ī, *n.* (*moneō*), monument, memorial.
 mora, -ae, *f.*, delay.
 morbus, -ī, *m.* (*cf.* *mors*, *mortis*), sickness, disease.
 mordāx, -ācis (*mordeō*), biting, stinging.
 mordeō, -ēre, momordi, morsum, bite.
 morior, mori or moriri, mortuus sum, die.
 moror, *dep.*, 1, delay.
 mors, mortis, *f.* (*morior*), death.
 morsus, -ūs, *m.* (*mordeō*), a biting, bite, sting.
 mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, habit; *pl.*, morals, character.
 moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move.
 mox, *adv.*, soon, presently.
 mulceō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsum, stroke, caress.

mulier, mulieris, *f.*, woman.
 multa (*mulcta*), -ae, *f.*, penalty, fine.
 multitūdō, -dinis, *f.* (*multus*), great number, multitude.
 multus, -a, -um, much, many; *comp.*, plūs, plūris, more; *superl.*, plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much.
 mundus, -ī, *m.*, world, universe.
 mūnicipium, -ī, *n.* (*mūnus*, *capiō*), free town, municipal town, municipality.
 mūniō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum (*moenia*), build, fortify.
 mūnus, -eris, *n.*, task, function, gift, offering.
 mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.
 mūtō, 1 (*moveō*), change.
 mūtus, -a, -um, dumb; mute, silent.
 mūtuus, -a, -um (*mūtō*), exchanged, reciprocal, mutual.

N

nam, *conj.*, for.
 nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus or nāntus sum, get, come upon, obtain.
 nārrō, 1, tell, narrate.
 nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born.
 nāsus, -ī, *m.*, nose.
 nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*nāscor*), race, tribe, nation.

- natō**, 1 (nō, nāre, nāvī, swim), swim, float.
- nātūra**, -ae, *f.* (nāscor), nature.
- nātus**, -ī, *m.* (nāscor), son.
- nausea**, -ae, *f.* (naŭs, ship; *Lat.*, nāvis), seasickness, sickness at the stomach, nausea.
- nauta**, -ae, *m.*, sailor.
- nauticus**, -a, -um (nauta), belonging to or pertaining to ships or sailors, nautical; pānis nauticus, ship biscuit.
- nāvis**, -is, *f.*, ship.
- nē**, in order that not, lest; not (*in early Latin*); **ne-** (*only as a prefix*), not; **nē** . . . quidem, not even.
- ne**, nōnne, num, *signs of questions*: -ne asks for information, nōnne implies the answer yes, and num the answer no.
- nec** (neque), nor, and not; **nec** . . . **nec**, neither . . . nor.
- necessārius**, -a, -um, needful, necessary.
- necesse**, *indecl. adj.*, necessary; **necesse est**, it is necessary.
- necessitās**, -tātis, *f.* (necesse), necessity.
- necō**, 1, kill, slay.
- nefārius**, -a, -um (nefās), wicked.
- nefās**, *n.*, *indecl.* (ne-, fās), a crime (*against the gods*).
- neglēgō**, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum (nec, legō, not collect or gather), neglect.
- negō** (nec, aiō), 1, say no, deny.
- negōtium**, -ī, *n.* (nec, ōtium), activity, employment, business.
- nēmō** (ne-, homō), *gen.*, nūllius, *dat.*, nēminī, *acc.*, nēminem, *abl.*, nūllō (*fem.*, nūlla), no one, nobody.
- nēquāquam**, *adv.*, in no way, by no means.
- neque** (nec), and not; **neque** . . . **neque**, neither . . . nor.
- Nervii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Nervii.
- nervus**, -ī, *m.*, sinew, string.
- neuter**, -tra, -trum, *gen.*, neutrius, *dat.*, neutri, neither (of two).
- nēve** (neu), and not (*introducing a command, prohibition, etc.*); **nēve** . . . **nēve**, neither . . . nor.
- nex**, necis, *f.*, violent death, murder.
- nī**, *conj.* (= nisi), if not, unless.
- nidus**, -ī, *m.*, a nest.
- niger**, -gra, -grum, black.
- nihil** or **nīl** (ne-, hīlum, a trifle), *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing.
- nihilum**, -ī, *n.*, nothing; **nihilō**, as an *adv.*, by nothing, no.

- nīmīrum**, *adv.* (nē, mīrum), without doubt, to be sure.
nimis, *adv.*, too, too much.
nisi (ne-, si), if not, unless, except.
niteō, -ēre, nitui, shine, glisten.
nitidus, -a, -um (niteō), shining, bright, clear.
nitratūs, -a, -um (nitrum, soda), mixed with soda; **pulvis nitratūs**, gunpowder (*Robinson Crusoe*).
nōbilis, -e (nōscō), famous, of high birth, noble.
noceō, -ēre, nocui, nocitum, harm, injure.
noctū, *adv.* (nox), at night, by night.
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui (nē, volō), not wish, be unwilling.
nōmen, -inis, *n.* (nōscō), name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nōndum, not yet.
nōnne, *sign of question*, implying the answer yes.
nōnnūlli, -ae, -a (nōn, nūllus), not a few, some.
nōnnunquam, *adv.* (nōn, nunquam), sometimes, from time to time.
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.
norma, -ae, *f.* (a carpenter's square), pattern, rule, precept.
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum (*root gnō-*), know.
noster, -tra, -trum, our.
notō (nota, mark, note, nōscō), mark, note.
novem, *indecl.*, nine.
novissimus, -a, -um (*superl. of novus*), newest, last, recent.
novus, -a, -um, new; **rēs novae**, *pl.*, revolutions.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
noxius, -a, -um (noceō), harmful, injurious.
nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsi, nūptum (nūbēs), veil herself for the bridegroom; hence, marry.
nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked.
nūgae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, jokes, trifles, nonsense.
nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, nullius, *dat.*, nūlli, not any, no one, no.
num, *conj.*, whether; *sign of question*, implying the answer no.
nūmen, -inis, *n.* (nuō, nod), divine will, power, divine protection.
numerō, 1 (numerus), count, count out, reckon.
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, amount.
nummus, -ī, *m.*, sum of money, shilling.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nunquam, *adv.*, never.
nūntiō, 1 (nūntius), announce, report.

nūntius, -ī, *m.* (**novus**), messenger, news, message.

nūper, *adv.* (**novus**), recently; *comp. wanting, superl.*, **nūperrimē**.

nūptiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* (**nūbō**), wedding, marriage.

nūsquā, *adv.*, nowhere, in no place.

nūtriō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, nourish, feed.

nūtrīx, -trīcis, *f.* (**nūtriō**), nurse.

O

O, *interj.*, oh! ah! O!

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

obdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, overspread, cover.

obēdientia, -ae, *f.* (**oboediō**, **ob**, **audiō**), obedience.

obeō, -īre, -īi, **obitum** (**ob**, **eō**), go to meet, die.

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, **obiectum** (**ob**, **iaciō**), throw in the way of, present, bring up to, expose.

obiter, *adv.* (**ob**, **iter**, **eō**), by the way, in passing, incidentally.

obliviscor, **oblivisci**, **oblītus sum**, forget.

obruō, -ere, **obruī**, **obrutum** (**ob**, **ruō**), overwhelm, overthrow.

obscūrō, 1 (**obscūrus**, dark), darken, hide, conceal.

obscūrum, -ī, *n.* (**obscūrus**), dark, darkness.

obsequor, **obsequi**, **obsecūtus sum** (**ob**, **sequor**), be submissive to, yield to, submit, comply.

observō, 1 (**ob**, **servō**), watch, guard, observe.

obstō, **obstāre**, **obstīti**, **obstātum** (**ob**, **stō**), stand in the way of, block the way.

obstupēscō (**obstipēscō**), -ere, **obstupui** (**ob**, **stupeō**), be amazed, dazed.

obtestor, *dep.*, 1 (**ob**, **testor**, **testis**), call to witness, entreat.

obversor, *dep.*, 1 (**ob**, **versor**, **vertō**), take a position opposite, appear to.

obviam, *adv.* (**ob**, **viam**), in one's way, towards, to meet.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.* (**ob**, **cadō**), falling down, setting (*of the sun*).

occidō, -ere, **occidī**, **occisum** (**ob**, **caedō**), cut down, kill.

occumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum (**ob**, **cumbō**), fall, sink down, fall a prey to.

occupō, 1 (*cf.* **capiō**), seize, occupy.

occurrō, -ere, **occurri** or **occurri**, **occursum** (**ob**, **currō**), run to meet, occur, appear.

oceanus, -ī, *m.*, ocean.

- ocellus, -ī, *m.* (oculus), little eye, pretty eye.
- Octāvia, -ae, *f.*, Octavia.
- octāvus, -a, -um (octō), eighth.
- octō, *indecl.*, eight.
- oculus, -ī, *m.*, the eye.
- ōdi, ōdisse, hate.
- odium, -ī, *n.* (ōdī), hatred, grudge.
- odor, -ōris, *m.* (root *od-*; cf. oleō, smell), smell, perfume, spices.
- offerō (obferō), -ferre, obtulī, oblātum (ob, ferō), present, offer, show.
- officium, -ī, *n.* (ops, faciō), duty, service, office.
- offirmō, 1 (ob, firmō, firmus), render firm, keep fixed.
- ōlim, *adv.*, once, once upon a time.
- ōmen, -inis, *n.*, omen, portent.
- ōminor, *dep.*, 1 (ōmen), forebode, predict, presage.
- omnīnō, *adv.* (omnis), altogether, wholly, at all, entirely.
- omnis, -e, all, every.
- onerō, 1 (onus), load, burden, freight.
- onus, oneris, *n.*, load, burden.
- opera, -ae, *f.* (opus), work, attention, agency, means.
- operor, *dep.*, 1 (opus), work, labor, toil.
- oportet, -ēre, oportuit, it behooves, it is best, ought.
- opportūnus, -a, -um (ob, portus), seasonable, favorable, opportune; *opportūnē, adv.*, favorably, opportunely, at the right moment.
- oppressus, -a, -um (*perf. part. of* opprimō, -ere, *oppressi, oppressum, ob, premō*), oppressed, overwhelmed.
- oppugnō, 1 (ob, pugnō), attack.
- (ops), opis, *f.*, assistance, aid; *pl.*, resources, wealth.
- optimē, *adv.* (*superl. of* bene, melius), in the best way, very well.
- optimus, -a, -um (*superl. of* bonus, melior), best.
- optō, 1, choose, wish for, desire.
- opulentus, -a, -um (ops), wealthy, rich.
- opus, operis, *n.*, work.
- ōra, -ae, *f.*, edge, coast, shore.
- ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (ōrō), speech, oration.
- orbis, -is, *m.*, disk, orb, circle; orbis terrarum, circle of the lands, the whole world.
- orbita, -ae, *f.* (orbis), track of a wheel, rut.
- Orcus, -ī, *m.*, Orcus, the god of death.

ōrdō, -dinis, *m.*, row, rank, order.

oriēns, -entis, *pres. part. as noun (orior)*, rising sun, east.

origō, -ginis, *f.* (orior), origin, source.

orior, oriri, ortus sum (*pres. system, except infin., of the 3d conjugation*), arise, come forth, proceed.

ōrnō, 1, fit out, equip, adorn.

ōrō, 1 (ōs), speak, pray, beg.

ortus, -ūs, *m.* (orior), rising.

oryza, -ae, *f.*, rice.

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth.

os, ossis, *n.*, bone.

ōsculor, dep., 1 (ōsculum, ōs), kiss.

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum (obs, tendō), show, exhibit.

ostrea, -ae, *f.*, oyster.

ōtium, -ī, rest, leisure, peace.

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg.

P

pābulum, -ī, *n.* (pāscō), food, fodder.

paciscor, paciscī, pactus sum (pangō), arrange, agree upon.

paedagōgus, -ī, *m.* (a slave to attend children, παις, δῆμος), an attendant, preceptor.

paenitet, -ēre, paenituit, it repents.

pallēscō, -ere, pallui (palleō), turn pale, grow pale.

palma, -ae, *f.*, the palm of the hand, palm tree, palm (of victory).

pangō, -ere, pepigī, pēgī or pānxi, pactum (*cf. paciscor*), fasten, fix, agree upon.

pānis, -is, *m.*, bread.

pār, paris, equal, same kind of.

parcē, *adv.* (parcus, parcō), sparingly.

parcō, -ere, peperci or parsi, parsum, spare, be sparing of.

parēns, -entis (pariō, bring forth, bear), *m., f.*, parent.

pāreō, -ēre, pārui, pāritum, (appear for), obey.

parō, 1, get ready, prepare.

pars, partis, *f.*, part, portion, direction.

particeps, participis (pars, capiō), partaking, sharing, implicated.

partim, *adv.* (pars), in part, partly.

parum, *adv.*, too little, but little; *comp.*, minus, less; *superl.*, minimē, least.

parumper, *adv.*, for a short time, for a time.

parvulus, -a, -um (parvus), little, small, tiny.

parvus, -a, -um, little, small; *comp.*, minor, -us, less;

- superl.*, minimus, -a, -um, least, smallest.
- pāscō**, -ere, pāvi, pāstum, feed, pasture, be the shepherd of.
- passer**, -eris, *m.*, a sparrow.
- passus**, -ūs, *m.* (pandō, -ere, pandi, pāsum or passum, spread out), pace (*five Roman feet*); mille passuum, duo milia passuum, a Roman mile, etc.
- pāstor**, -tōris, *m.* (pāscō), shepherd.
- pateō**, -ēre, patui, stand open, lie open, stretch out.
- pater**, patris, *m.*, father.
- paternus**, -a, -um (pater), of or pertaining to a father, paternal.
- patienter**, *adv.* (patiēns, patior), patiently.
- patientia**, -ae, *f.* (patior), endurance, patience.
- patina**, -ae, *f.* (pateō), a shallow dish, pan.
- patior**, pati, passus sum, suffer, permit, allow.
- patria**, -ae, *f.* (patrius), native land.
- patrius**, -a, -um (pater), of or pertaining to a father, paternal.
- pauci**, -ae, -a, *pl.*, few, only a few.
- paululum**, *adv.* (paulus), a very little, a little.
- paulum**, paulō, *adv.* (paulus, little), a little.
- pauper**, pauperis, of small means, not wealthy, poor.
- pavitō**, -āre (paveō, tremble), quake or tremble with fear.
- pāx**, pācis, *f.* (paciscor), peace.
- peccō**, 1, commit a fault, offend.
- pectus**, pectoris, *n.*, breast.
- pecūnia**, -ae, *f.* (pecus, flock), money.
- pedes**, -itis, *m.* (pēs), foot-soldier; *pl.*, cavalry.
- pellis**, -is, *f.*, skin, hide.
- pellō**, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, strike, beat, drive.
- penātēs**, -ium, *m. pl.*, household gods, home.
- pendeō**, -ēre, pependi, hang, be suspended.
- pendō**, -ere, pependi, pēsum (pendeō), cause to hang, suspend, weigh, pay.
- penetrō**, 1, enter, penetrate.
- pēninsula** (paeninsula), -ae, *f.* (paene, almost, insula), peninsula.
- penna**, -ae, *f.*, wing, feather.
- per**, *prep. with acc.*, through, over.
- peragō**, -ere, -ēgi, peractum (per, agō), carry through, finish.
- peragrō**, 1 (per, ager), wander over, pass through, traverse.

- percitus**, -a, -um (*perf. part. of percio*, *per, cio*), greatly moved, excited.
- percontor**, *dep.*, 1, inquire, make inquiries.
- percussus**, -a, -um (*percellō*), struck, overpowered, overwhelmed.
- percurrō**, -ere, -curri or -curri, -cursum, run through or over.
- percutiō**, -ere, -cussi, -cussus (*per, quatiō*), strike through and through, smite, pierce.
- perdō**, -ere, *perdidī*, *perditum* (*per, dō*), destroy, ruin.
- perducō**, -ere, *perdūxi*, *perductum* (*per, dūcō*), lead through, construct.
- perennis**, -e (*per, annus*), lasting through the year, lasting, perennial.
- pereō**, -ire, -iī, -itum (*per, eō*), go through, perish, be lost.
- pererrō**, 1 (*per, errō*), wander over, wander through.
- perficiō**, -ere, *perfēcī*, *perfectum* (*per, faciō*), carry through, finish, bring about.
- perfidia**, -ae, *f.* (*perfidus*, treacherous, *per, fidēs*), violation of faith, perfidy, treachery.
- periculōsus**, -a, -um (*periculum, perior*), dangerous.
- periculum**, -ī, *n.* (*perior, try*), danger, peril.
- perlustrō**, 1 (*per, lustrō, lustrum, luō*, wash), wander through.
- permagnus**, -a, -um (*per, magnus*), very large, very great.
- pernoctō**, -āre, -āvi (*per, nox*), pass the night, spend the night.
- perpetuus**, -a, -um (*per, petō*), continuing throughout, perpetual.
- persequor, persequi, persecutus sum** (*per, sequor*), follow up, prosecute, pursue, continue.
- persolvō**, -ere, -solvi, -solutum, pay, give.
- persōna**, -ae, *f.* (*per, sonō, sonus*), mask, person.
- perspicuē**, *adv.* (*perspicuus, per, speciō*), clearly.
- persuadeō**, -ēre, *persuāsi, persuasum* (*per, suādeō*), prevail upon, persuade.
- perterreō**, -ēre, *perterrui, perterritum* (*per, terreō*), frighten greatly.
- perturbō**, 1 (*per, turbō*), throw into confusion, disturb greatly.
- pervenio**, -ire, *pervēni, perventum* (*per, veniō*), arrive, go to.
- pēs, pedis**, *m.*, foot; *as measure of length = 11.65 English inches.*

- pestilēns**, -lētis (pestis), un-healthy, pestilential.
- pestis**, -is, *f.*, a deadly disease, pestilence.
- petō**, -ere, petīvī, petitum, try to get; seek, ask for.
- pharetra**, -ae, *f.*, quiver (*for holding arrows*).
- philosophus**, -ī, *m.*, a philosopher.
- Phrygia**, -ae, *f.*, Phrygia.
- pictūra**, -ae, *f.* (pingō), painting, picture.
- pietās**, -tātis, *f.* (pius, devoted, pious), dutiful conduct, piety, devotion.
- pīlum**, -ī, *n.*, javelin, dart, spear.
- pingō**, -ere, pinxi, pictum, paint, color, embroider, adorn.
- pīpiō**, -āre, peep, chirp.
- pīrāta**, -ae, *m.* (πειρατής, adventurer, *πειράω*, try), a sea-robber, pirate.
- piscis**, -is, *m.*, a fish.
- placeō**, -ēre, -uī, placitum, please.
- placidus**, -a, -um (placeō), peaceful, quiet, calm.
- placō**, 1 (placeō), reconcile, quiet, calm, appease.
- plānus**, -a, -um, flat, level, even; **plānē**, *adv.*, flatly, clearly, utterly.
- platea**, -ae, *f.*, street.
- plēbs**, plēbis, *f.*, the common people, the masses.
- plēnus**, -a, -um, full.
- plērumque**, *adv.*, often, frequently, generally.
- plumbeus**, -a, -um (plumbum, lead), made of lead, leaden, lead; **globus plumbeus**, lead ball (*Robinson Crusoe*).
- plūrimus**, -a, -um (*superl.* of **multus**, **plūs**), very much, very many, most.
- plūs**, plūris, *comp.* of **multus**, more; **plūrēs**, -a, -ium, *pl.*, a great many, many.
- pōculum**, -ī, *n.*, a drinking vessel, cup.
- poena**, -ae, *f.*, punishment.
- poēta**, -ae, *m.*, poet.
- pōnō**, -ere, posuī, positum, put, place; **castra pōnere**, pitch camp.
- pōns**, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
- populus**, -ī, *m.*, people.
- porrigō**, -ere, porrēxi, porrēctum (**por** = **prō**, **regō**), stretch out, reach forward, extend.
- porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate.
- portō**, 1, carry (*a load*).
- portus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port.
- poscō**, -ere, poposci, demand, order.
- possum**, posse, potuī (potis, sum), be able, can.
- post**, *adv.*, *prep.* with *acc.*, afterwards, after, behind, in the rear of.

postea, *adv.*, afterwards.
posterus, -a, -um (*post*), following, ensuing; *comp.*, posterior, -ius, later; *superl.*, **postrēmus**, latest, last, and **postumus**, late-born, posthumous; **posterī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, descendants.
postquam, *conj.*, as soon as, when.
postrēmō, *adv.* (**postrēmus**), finally, at last.
postridiē, *adv.* (**posterus**, **diēs**), on the following day, the next day.
postulō, 1, demand.
potēns, **potentis** (**possum**), powerful.
potentia, -ae, *f.* (**potēns**), power.
potior, -irī, **potitus sum** (**potis**), gain possession of.
potis, -e, able; *comp.*, **potior**, -ius, preferable; *superl.*, **potissimus**, -a, -um, most able, powerful.
potius, *adv.*, *comp.* (**potis**), rather; *superl.*, **potissimum**, especially.
prae, *prep. with abl.*, in front of, in comparison with, for; *comp.*, **prior**, -ius, former; *superl.*, **primus**, -a, -um, first.
praebeō, -ēre, **praeui**, **praebitum** (**prae**, **habeō**), show, exhibit, furnish.

praeceps, -cipitis (**prae**, **caput**), headfirst, headlong.
praeceptor, -tōris, *m.* (**prae**, **capiō**), an instructor, teacher.
praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**prae**, **capiō**), take beforehand, anticipate, order, direct.
praecīlārus, -a, -um (**prae**, **clārus**), noted.
praeda, -ae, *f.*, plunder, booty, prey.
praedor, *dep.*, 1 (**praeda**), rob, plunder.
praefectus, -ī, *m.* (**praeficiō**, **prae**, **faciō**), commander, superintendent, captain (*of a ship*).
praeparō, 1 (**prae**, **parō**), get ready beforehand, prepare.
praeruptus, -a, -um (*perf. part. of* **praerumpō**, **prae**, **rumpō**), broken or torn off, steep, rugged.
praesideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sesum (**prae**, **sedeō**), preside over, watch over.
praesidium, -ī, *n.* (**praesideō**), garrison, guard, protection.
praestāns, -stantis (*pres. part. of* **praestō**, **prae**, **stō**), standing in front, excellent.
praesum, **praesesse**, **praefui** (**prae**, **sum**), be over, at the head of, in command of.

- praetendō, -ere, -tendī, -tētum** (*prae, tendō*), stretch out, hold before, pretend.
- praeter, prep. with acc.**, along, past, besides, except, contrary to.
- praetereā, adv.** (*praeter, eā*), besides.
- praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum** (*praeter, eō*), go by or past, pass by.
- praevalēō, -ēre, -uī** (*prae, valēō*), have the superiority, prevail.
- prātum, -ī, n.**, meadow.
- precor, dep.**, 1, pray, supplicate, invoke.
- premō, -ere, pressi, pressum**, press, press hard, pursue.
- pretium, -ī, n.**, price, value.
- prex, precis, f.** (*precor*), prayer, entreaty.
- primus, -a, -um** (*superl. of prae or prō, prior*), first; **primō, adv.**, at first; **primum, adv.**, first; **cum primum**, as soon as.
- princeps, -cipis, m.** (*primus, capiō*), chief, leader.
- prius, comp. of prae or prō**, before, first.
- priusquam, conj.**, earlier than, before.
- prō, prep. with abl.**, in front of, in behalf of, for, in proportion to; **comp.**, prior, -ius, former; *superl.*, **primus, -a, -um**, first. See *prae*.
- probō, 1** (*probus*), approve, test, prove.
- probus, -a, -um**, upright, honorable.
- prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessī, prōcessum** (*prō, cēdō*), go forward, advance.
- procella, -ae, f.**, a violent wind, storm, hurricane.
- prōcidō, -ere, prōcidī** (*prō, cadō*), fall forward, fall prostrate or flat, fall.
- procul, adv.**, in the distance, afar, far.
- prōcurrō, -ere, -curri and -cucurri, prōcursum**, run forward, extend, project.
- prōdō, -ere, prōdidī, prōditum** (*prō, dō*), give forth, utter, betray.
- proelium, -ī, n.**, battle.
- profectiō, -ōnis, f.** (*proficiscor*), departure.
- prōferō, -ferre, prōtulī, prōlātum** (*prō, ferō*), carry or bring forward.
- proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum** (*prō, faciō*), go forward, set out, depart.
- profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum** (*prō, fugiō*), flee, run away, escape.
- prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum** (*prō, fundō*), pour forth.

- profundus**, -a, -um (prō, fundus, bottom), deep, profound.
- prōgredior**, prōgredi, prōgressus sum (prō, gradior, gradus), step forward, proceed, advance.
- prōgressus**, -ūs, m. (prōgredior), going forward, advance, progress.
- prohibeō**, -ēre, prohibuī, prohibitum (prō, habeō), hold off, hinder, check.
- prōiciō**, -ere, prōiēcī, prōiectum (prō, iaciō), throw or cast before or in front of, cast forward.
- prōlixus**, -a, -um (prō, laxus, loose), stretched far out, long.
- prōmineō**, -ēre, -uī (cf. ēmineō), stand or jut out or forward, extend.
- prōmittō**, -ere, -misi, prōmissum (prō, mittō), let go forth, permit to grow, promise, agree; **prōmissus**, -a, -um (perf. part.), long flowing.
- prōnus**, -a, -um, bending forward, sloping.
- prōpāgō**, 1 (prō, pangō), enlarge, extend, increase.
- prope**, propior, proximus, near, nearer, nearest, last; *adv.*, *prep. with acc.*, prope, propius, proximē.
- properō**, 1, hasten.
- propius**, *adv.* (comp. of prope), nearer.
- proprius**, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar, special, proper.
- propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
- prōrēpō**, -ere, -rēpsi, -rēptum (prō, rēpō), crawl or creep forward.
- prōrumpō**, -ere, prōrūpi, prōruptum (prō, rumpō), burst forth, rush forward.
- prōscribō**, -ere, prōscripsi, prōscriptum (prō, scribō), advertise, publish, proscribe.
- prōsequor**, -i, -secūtus sum (prō, sequor), pursue, follow after.
- prōsiliō**, -ire, prōsiluī (prō, saliō), leap or spring forward.
- prōsperus** (prōsper), -era, -erum (prō, spērō, spēs), according to hope, favorable, prosperous.
- prōsternō**, -ere, -strāvī, -stratum, (prō, sternō), strew in front of, throw to the ground, bring down (*Robinson Crusoe*).
- prōsum**, prōdesse, prōfui (prō, sum), be profitable, help.
- prōtegō**, -ere, prōtēxi, prōtēctum (prō, tegō), cover over, protect.

- prōtinus**, *adv.*, forthwith, at once.
- prōvidentia**, -ae, *f.* (prō, vidēns, videō), foresight; **Prōvidentia**, -ae, *f.*, Providence.
- prōvincia**, -ae, *f.*, province.
- prōvocō**, 1 (prō, vocō), call forth, challenge, provoke, incite.
- prōvolō**, 1 (prō, volō), fly or rush forward, rush out.
- proximus**, -a, -um (*superl.* of **prope**, **propior**), nearest, next, last; **proximē**, *adv.*, nearest, next.
- prūdēns**, -dētis (prō, vidēns, videō), seeing beforehand, wise, prudent.
- prūder**, *adv.* (prūdēns), wisely, prudently; **prūdentius**, *adv.*, *comp.*, with rare good judgment.
- prudentia**, -ae, *f.* (prūdēns), good sense, prudence.
- psittacus**, -ī, *m.*, a parrot.
- pūblicē**, *adv.* (pūblicus), publicly, in the name of the state.
- pūblicus**, -a, -um (*cf.* **populus**), public.
- pudet**, -ēre, **puduit**, it shames, it makes ashamed.
- pudor**, -ōris, *m.* (pudet), shame, modesty, sense of honor.
- puella**, -ae, *f.*, girl.
- puellāris**, -e (puella), of or pertaining to a girl.
- puer**, -erī, *m.*, boy.
- pugillārēs**, -ium, *m. pl.* (*understood*, **libelli**, little books), writing tablets.
- pugna**, -ae, *f.*, a fight, battle, combat.
- pugnō**, 1, fight.
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, handsome.
- pullus**, -ī, *m.*, a young animal, chick, young.
- pulvis**, -eris, *m.*, powder, dust; **pulvis nitrātus**, gunpowder (*Robinson Crusoe*).
- pūnctum**, -ī, *n.* (pungō), a point.
- pungō**, -ere, **pupugī**, **pūnctum**, prick, puncture.
- Pūnicus**, -a, -um (Poenī), Carthaginian, Punic.
- pūniō**, -īre, -īvi or -īi, **pūnitum** (poena), punish, avenge.
- pūrgō**, 1 (pūrus, agō), cleanse, purify.
- pūrus**, -a, -um, clear, pure.
- putō**, 1 (cut), hence, reckon, think.
- putrefaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (putreō, faciō), make rotten, cause to putrefy, putrefy.
- putridus**, -a, -um (putreō), decayed, rotten.

Q

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, ask, inquire, search for.

quālis, -e, of what kind, of what sort; *correlative with tālis*.

quam, adv., how; *with a comparative, than; with the superl., as . . . as possible*.

quam ob rem, on account of what thing, why.

quamquam, conj., although.

quamvis (quam, vis, volō), as much as you please, although.

quantus, -a, -um, how great, as great.

quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quasi, conj., as if.

quatiō, -ere, quassī, quassum, shake.

quattuor, indecl., four.

quattuordecim, indecl., fourteen.

-que, enclitic (*joined to the second word*), and; **-que . . . -que**, both . . . and.

queror, queri, questus sum, complain.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that; *interr. adj.*, what, what kind of.

quia, conj., because.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whichever, whatever.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), a certain, a certain one.

quidem, adv., at least, to be sure.

quiēs, -ētis, f., rest, quiet, sleep.

quiēscō, -ere, quiēvi, quiētum (quiēs), go to rest, keep quiet, sleep.

quīnque, indecl., five.

quintus, -a, -um, fifth.

quis, quid, interr., who? which? what? *indef.*, one, any one, anything, some one, something (*especially when following sī, etc.*).

quisnam, quidnam, who, pray? what, pray?

quisquam, quidquam (quicquam), any one, anything, any.

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), each, each one, every.

quō (abl. of quī, quae, quod), where, whither; **quō . . . eō (with comparatives)**, the . . . the; *with the subj. (a comparative being in the clause)*, in order that.

quod, conj., because.

quondam, adv., formerly, once upon a time.

quoniam, conj., since, whereas.

quot, indecl., how many.

R

- radius**, -ī, *m.*, spoke of a wheel, rod, ray.
- rādix**, -icis, root, foot-hill, spur (*of a mountain*).
- rādō**, -ere, *rāsī*, *rāsum*, scrape, shave, graze; **tabula rāsā**, a clean slate.
- rādula**, -ae *f.* (*rādō*), scraper, scraping-iron.
- rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, branch.
- rapiō**, -ere, *rapui*, *raptum*, snatch, seize, carry off.
- rārus**, -a, -um, thin, scattered, rare; *rārō*, *adv.*, rarely.
- ratio**, -ōnis, *f.* (*reor*), account, reason, plan, way.
- ratis**, *f.*, raft, vessel.
- ratus**, -a, -um (*perf. part. of reor*), thought out, calculated; **prō ratā** (*parte*), in proportion, proportionally.
- recēdō**, -ere, *recēdī*, *recesum* (*re*, *cēdō*), fall back, recede, withdraw.
- recēns**, -entis, fresh, new, recent.
- recipiō**, -ere, *recēpī*, *receptum* (*re*, *capiō*), take back, get back, receive, recover; **sē recipere**, withdraw, retreat.
- reciprocō**, 1 (*reciprocus*, -a, -um, returning, receding), move backwards *or* back and forth, recede.
- recreō**, 1 (*re*, *creō*), make *or* create anew, restore, revive.
- rēctus**, -a, -um (*perf. part. of regō*), direct, straight, right.
- recumbō**, -ere, *recubui* (*re*, *cumbō*), lay oneself back, lie down, rest, sleep.
- reddō**, -ere, *reddidī*, *redditum* (*re*, *dō*), give back, return.
- redeō**, -īre, -iī, *reditum* (*re*, *eō*), go back, return.
- reductiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (*re*, *dūcō*), a leading back, reduction.
- redux**, *reducis* (*re*, *dūcō*), returning, coming back.
- referō**, -ferre, *rettulī*, *relātum* (*re*, *ferō*), bear *or* bring back, report, refer; **pedem referre**, fall back.
- reflō**, 1 (*re*, *flō*), blow back, blow contrary.
- rēgina**, -ae, *f.* (*regō*), queen.
- regiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (*regō*), district, region.
- rēgius**, -a, -um (*rēx*), of a king, royal.
- rēgnō**, 1 (*rēgnum*), be king, reign.
- rēgnum**, -ī, *n.* (*rēx*), kingly government, reign.
- regō**, -ere, *rēxi*, *rēctum*, make straight, guide, rule.
- regredior**, *regredī*, *regressus sum* (*re*, *gradior*, *gradus*), go back, move back, retreat.

- rēgula**, -ae *f.* (regō), rule.
reiciō, -ere, reiēcī, reiectum (re, iaciō), cast back, cast aside, reject.
religō, 1 (re, ligō), bind back or behind, bind fast.
relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictum (re, linquō, leave), leave behind.
reliquiae, -arum, *f. pl.* (relinquō), the leavings, relics, remnants, remainder (*of anything*).
reliquus, -a, -um (relinquō), remaining, rest of.
reluctor, *dep.*, 1, struggle against, oppose, be reluctant.
remedium, -ī, *n.* (re, medeor), cure, remedy.
reminiscor, -ī (re, memini), call back to mind, remember, recollect.
remittō, -ere, -misi, -missum (re, mittō), send or let go back, relax, cease to use.
rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar.
reor, rēri, ratus sum, reckon, calculate, think.
repente, *adv.*, suddenly.
repetō, -ere, repetivī, repetitum (re, petō), strike again, attack again or anew, repeat.
repleō, -ēre, replēvī, replētum (re, pleō), fill again, fill up, reload (*Robinson Crusoe*).
rēpō, -ere, rēpsi, crawl, creep, move slowly.
reprehendō, -ere, reprehendi, reprehensum (re,prehendō, or prēndō), seize or hold back, restrain, blame.
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, requiētum (re, quiēscō, quiēs), rest, repose.
rēs, rei, *f.*, thing; rēs adversae, unfavorable things, adversity.
resistō, -ere, restiti (re, sistō, stō), resist.
respiciō, -ere, respexī, respectum (re, specio), look back, see behind (one), consider, look at.
respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōnsum (re, spondeō), reply.
respōnsum, -ī, *n.* (respondeō), answer, advice.
rēs publica, rei publicae, commonwealth, state, republic.
restituō, -ere, restitui, restitūtum (re, statuō, status, stō), put back, restore.
resurgō, -ere, resurrēxi, resurrēctum (re, surgō), rise again.
retineō, -ēre, retinui, retentum (re, teneō), hold or keep back, retain.
retrahō, -ere, retrāxi, retrāctum (re, trahō), draw back.
retrō, *adv.*, back, backwards.

reus, -ī, *m.*, defendant, culprit.

revertō, -ere, reverti, reversum (re, vertō), turn back, return (*generally deponent, except in the perf., which is usually reverti*).

revisō, -ere (re, visō, videō), see again, revisit.

rēx, rēgis, *m.* (regō), king.

rideō, -ēre, risi, risum, laugh, laugh at.

rigidus, -a, -um (rigeō, be stiff), stiff, rigid.

rīmula, -ae, *f.* (rīma, crack, chink), a small crack or fissure, touchhole (*Robinson Crusoe*).

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank.

risus, -ūs, *m.* (rideō), laugh, laughter.

rīte, *adv.* (ritus, rite), in due form, duly.

rīvulus, -ī, *m.* (rīvus), a small brook, rivulet.

rīvus, -ī, *m.*, brook, rivulet.

Robinson, -sōnis, *m.*, Robinson (*Robinson Crusoe*).

rōbur, -oris, *m.*, a very hard kind of oak, oak.

rōbustus, -a, -um (rōbur), oaken, hard, firm, robust.

rōdō, -ere, rōsi, rōsum, gnaw. rogō, 1, ask, request.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman;

Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman.

rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose.

Rōscius, -ī, *m.*, Roscius.

rōstrum, -ī, *n.* (rōdō), beak.

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel.

rotō, 1 (rota), whirl round.

rotundus, -a, -um (rota), wheel-shaped, round, circular.

rubeō, -ēre, rubui (ruber), be red or ruddy.

ruber, -bra, -brum, red, ruddy.

rudis, -e, unformed, rough, rude.

rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptum, break, break asunder, burst.

runcina, -ae, *f.*, a plane.

ruō, -ere, rui, rutum, fall, fall in ruin, hurry, rush (forward).

rūrsus, *adv.* (re, versus), back again, again, in turn.

rūs, rūris, *n.*, country (*as opposed to the city*); rūri, *loc.*, in the country.

rūsticus, -a, -um (rūs), of the country; rūsticus, -ī, *m.*, a countryman.

S

sacer, -cra, -crum, holy, consecrated, sacred; *also*, accursed, *i.e.* consecrated to the gods below.

saeculum (*also written sēculum and sēclum*), -ī, *n.*, age, generation.

- saepe**, *adv.*, often; *comp.*,
saepius, *superl.*, **saepissimē**.
saeviō, -īre, -iī, -itum (**saevus**), be fierce, rage, vent one's rage.
saevus, -a, -um, savage, fierce, cruel.
sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow.
sāl, **salis**, *m.*, salt.
saliō, -īre, **salui**, leap.
saltem, *adv.*, at least.
saltō, 1 (**saliō**), dance.
salūs, **salūtis**, *f.*, health, safety.
salūtatiō, -ōnis, *f.* (**salūtō**), greeting, salutation.
salūtō, 1 (**salūs**), wish health, greet, salute.
salvus, -a, -um (*cf.* **salūs**), safe.
sanciō, -īre, **sānxi**, **sānctum**, make sacred, sanction, ratify.
sānctus, -a, -um (*perf. part. of sanciō*), holy, inviolate, sacred.
sānē, *adv.* (**sānus**), healthily, to be sure, in fact.
sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood.
sānitās, -tātis, *f.* (**sānus**), soundness of body, health.
sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy.
sapiēns, -entis (**sapiō**, have taste, be wise), wise, discreet, sensible.
sapientia, -ae, *f.* (**sapiēns**), wisdom.
- satis** (**sat**), *adv. and adj.*, enough, sufficient, quite.
scāla, -ae, *f.* (*mostly pl.*), flight of steps or stairs, ladder.
scandō, -ere, climb, approach.
scapha, -ae *f.*, a light boat, skiff.
scelus, -eris, *n.*, a crime (*against society*).
scēptrum, -tri, *n.*, a royal staff, scepter.
scientia, -ae, *f.* (**sciō**), knowledge, skill, science.
scilicet (*perhaps sci, imperative of sciō, licet*), naturally, without doubt, clearly, forsooth, namely, to wit.
scintillula, -ae, *f.* (**scintilla**, spark), a little spark, sparklet.
sciō, **scire**, **scīvi**, **scītum**, know.
sclopētum, -ī, *n.*, musket, gun (*Robinson Crusoe*).
scopulus, -ī, *m.*, rock, cliff, ledge.
scribō, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, write.
scriptor, -tōris, *m.* (**scribō**), writer.
scriptōrius, -a, -um (**scribō**), of or pertaining to writing, writing; **charta scriptōria**, writing paper.
scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield.
sēclum: *see saeculum.*

- secō**, -āre, **secuī**, **sectum**, cut off, cut.
- secundus**, -a, -um (**sequor**), following, second, favorable; **secundae rēs**, favorable things, prosperity.
- secūris**, -is, *f.* (**secō**), axe, hatchet.
- secus**, *adv.*, otherwise; *comp.*, **sētius**, less.
- sed**, *conj.*, but.
- sedeō**, -ēre, **sēdī**, **sessum**, sit, be fixed, take a position.
- sēdēs**, -is, *f.* (**sedeō**), abode, habitation.
- sēdō**, 1 (**sedeō**), allay, stop, quiet.
- sēdulus**, -a, -um, diligent, zealous.
- sēligō**, -ere, **sēlēgī**, **sēlēctum** (**sē**, **legō**), choose out, select.
- sēmen**, -inis, *n.* (**serō**), seed.
- sēmivivus**, -a, -um (**sēmi**, **vivus**), half dead.
- semper**, *adv.*, always.
- senātus**, -ūs, *m.* (**senex**), senate.
- senectūs**, -tūtis, *f.* (**senex**), old age.
- senex**, **senis**, old; *comp.*, **senior**, -ius (**maior nātū**); *superl.*, **maximus** (**nātū**); **senex**, **senis**, *m.*, an old man.
- sententia**, -ae, *f.* (**sentiō**), feeling, opinion.
- sentiō**, -ire, **sēnsī**, **sēnsum**, perceive by the senses, feel, perceive, think.
- sepeliō**, -ire, -ivī or -iī, **sepul-tum**, bury.
- septem**, *indecl.*, seven.
- septimus**, -a, -um, seventh.
- sequor**, **sequī**, **secūsus sum**, follow.
- serēnus**, -a, -um, clear, bright, serene.
- seriēs**, -ēī, *f.* (**serō**), series, row, chain.
- sermō**, -mōnis, *m.* (**serō**), connected discourse, conversation.
- serō**, -ere, **sēvī**, **satum**, sow, plant.
- serra**, -ae, *f.*, saw.
- serva**, -ae, *f.*, female servant, slave.
- serviō**, -ire, -ivī or -iī, **servī-tum** (**servus**), be a slave to, serve.
- servō**, 1, keep, preserve, save.
- servus**, -ī, *m.*, servant, slave.
- seu**, or if. *See sive.*
- sex**, *indecl.*, six.
- sextus**, -a, -um, sixth.
- sī**, *conj.*, if.
- sic**, *adv.*, thus, so.
- siccus**, -a, -um, dry; in **siccō**, on dry land.
- sicut**, *adv.* (**sic**, **ut**), just as, as.
- sīdus**, -eris, *n.*, constellation, star.

significō , 1 (signum , faciō), make a sign, signify, indicate.	socius , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a companion, ally, confederate.
signum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , mark, sign, (military) standard.	sōl , sōlis , <i>m.</i> , the sun.
silentium , -ī, <i>n.</i> (sileō , be or keep silent), stillness, silence.	soleō , -ēre, solutus sum , be accustomed.
silex , silicis , <i>m.</i> , a hard stone, flint.	sōlitūdō , -dinis, <i>f.</i> (sōlus), loneliness, solitude.
silva , -ae, <i>f.</i> , forest, woods.	sollemnis , -e (sollus , every, annus), yearly, solemn.
silvestris (silvester -tris), -tre (silva), wooded, covered with woods.	sollers , -ertis, skillful, clever, intelligent.
similis , -e, similar, like; similiter , <i>adv.</i> , in a similar manner.	sollerter , <i>adv.</i> (sollers), cleverly, ingeniously.
simplex , simplicis (sim- , meaning one, plicō , fold), simple.	sollertissimē , <i>superl.</i> of sollerter , very skillfully or ingeniously.
simulācrum , -ī, <i>n.</i> (similis), image, likeness, phantom.	sollicitūdō (sōlicitūdō), -dinis, <i>f.</i> , anxiety, solicitude.
sine , <i>prep.</i> with <i>abl.</i> , without.	solum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , soil, ground.
singulī , -ae, -a, one to each, separate, single.	sōlus , -a, -um, <i>gen.</i> , sōlius , <i>dat.</i> , sōli , alone, only.
sinister , -tra, -trum, left, on the left side.	solvō , -ere, solvi , solūtum , loosen; nāvem solvere , put to sea.
sistō , sistere , stiti , statum (stō), place, stop, stand.	somnium , -ī, <i>n.</i> (somnus), a dream.
sitis , -is, <i>f.</i> , thirst.	somnus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , sleep.
sive (seu), <i>conj.</i> (sī , ve), if either, or if; sive (seu) . . . or, sive (seu), either . . . or, whether . . . or.	sonitus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> (sonō), noise, sound, din.
societās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> (socius), fellowship, association, society.	sonō , -āre, sonui , sonāturus , make a sound, sound, resound.
	sonus , -ī, <i>m.</i> (sonō), sound, noise,
	sopor , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , sleep.
	soror , -ōris, <i>f.</i> , sister.
	sors , sortis , <i>f.</i> , drawing of lots, share, lot.

- spargō, -ere, sparsi, sparsum,** scatter, sprinkle.
- spatiōsus, -a, -um (spatium),** large, spacious.
- spatium, -i, n.,** space.
- speciēs, -ēi, f. (speciō),** sight, view, appearance.
- speciō, -ere, spexi, spectrum,** catch sight of, behold, see.
- spectāculum, -i, n. (spectō, speciō),** show, sight, spectacle.
- spectō, 1 (speciō),** gaze at, look at, watch; **spectāns, -antis (pres. part.),** looking, *i.e.* a spectator.
- specular, dep. (specula, watch-tower, speciō),** spy out, watch.
- spelunca, -ae, f.,** cave, den.
- spērō, 1, hope, expect.**
- spēs, spei, f.,** hope.
- spiritus, -ūs, m. (spīrō),** breath, breathing, soul, spirit.
- spīro, 1, breathe, blow.**
- splendeō, -ēre, splendui,** shine, gleam, glitter.
- splendidus, -a, -um (splendeō),** splendid, magnificent.
- splendor, -dōris, m. (splendeō),** brightness, splendor.
- spoliō, 1, despoil, rob.**
- spolium, -i, n. (spoliō),** arms or armor stripped from a defeated enemy, spoil, booty.
- spondeō, -ēre, spopondi, spōnsum,** promise solemnly, pledge.
- spūma, -ae, f. (spuō),** foam, froth, scum.
- spūmō, 1 (spūma),** foam, froth.
- spuō, -ere, spit, spit out.**
- spūtum, -i (spuō), n.,** spit, sputum.
- squālor, -ōris, m. (squāleō),** be rough, foul, neglected, foulness, filth, squalor.
- stabilis, -e (stō),** firm, steadfast, stable.
- stanneus, -a, -um (stannum, tin),** made of tin, tin.
- statim, adv. (stō),** at once, immediately.
- status, -ūs, m. (stō),** station, position, state.
- stega, -ae, f.,** deck.
- stella, -ae, f.,** star.
- sterilis, -e, unfruitful, barren, sterile.**
- sternō, -ere, strāvi, strātum,** spread out, strew.
- stilus (stylus), -i, m.,** a pointed instrument for writing on wax tablets, pen, style.
- stimulō, 1 (stimulus),** goad or spur on, stimulate.
- stimulus, -i, m.,** goad, spur, prick.
- stipendium, -i, n.,** tax, pay.
- stō, stāre, steti, statum,** stand.

- strāgulum**, -ī, *n.* (sternō), covering, rug.
- strātum**, -ī, *n.* (sternō), bed.
- strēnuē**, *adv.* (strēnuus), vigorously, strenuously.
- strēnuus**, -a, -um, brisk, active, vigorous, strenuous.
- strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* (strepō, strepitum, make a noise), noise, din, rattling, rustling.
- stringō**, -ere, strīnxī, stric-tum, draw tightly, bind, touch lightly, graze.
- studeō**, -ēre, studuī, be eager or zealous for, study.
- studiōsē**, *adv.* (studiōsus), zealously, eagerly.
- studiōsus**, -a, -um (studium), full of zeal, eager.
- studium**, -ī, *n.* (studeō), eagerness, zeal.
- stultus**, -a, -um, foolish, simple.
- stupefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum (stupeō, faciō), stupefy, daze; stupefactus, -a, -um, *perf. part.*, stupefied, dazed.
- stupeō**, -ēre, stupuī, be stunned, dazed, confounded.
- suādeō**, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum (suāvis), advise.
- suāvītās**, -tātis, *f.* (suāvis, -e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable), attractiveness, pleasantness, sweetness.
- suāviter**, *adv.* (suāvis), agreeably, pleasantly.
- sub**, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under, close to (*with the acc.*, containing the idea of motion, *with the abl.*, the idea of rest in).
- subitus**, -a, -um (*perf. part. of subeō*), sudden, unexpected; **subitō**, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly.
- submergō**, -ere, -mersī, -mersum (sub, mergō), dip under, sink, submerge.
- submitus**, -a, -um (*perf. part. of submitto*), low, lowered.
- subsequor**, subsequī, subsequētus sum (sub, sequor), follow up or after, follow closely.
- subsistō**, -ere, substitī (sub, sistō, stō), halt, stop, stay behind.
- subvertō**, -ere, -vertī, subversum (sub, vertō), turn upside down, overturn.
- succurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursum (sub, currō), run under, hasten to the assistance of, aid.
- suī**, sibi, sē (sēsē), *pl. the same*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.
- sum**, esse, fui, be, exist.
- summus**, -a, -um (*superl. of superus*, superior, **suprēmus**, **summus**), top of, greatest, highest.

- sūmō**, -ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum** (sub, emō), take up, assume.
- supellex**, **supellectilis**, *f.* (super, legō), household utensils, goods, implements.
- superbiō**, -īre (superbus), be haughty or proud, take pride in.
- superbus**, -a, -um (super), haughty, proud.
- superō**, 1 (super), get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, outstrip.
- supersum**, esse, **superfui** (super, sum), be over, survive, remain.
- superus**, -a, -um, upper, higher; *comp.*, **superior**, -ius, higher, superior; *superl.*, **suprēmus**, -a, -um, highest, last; **summus**, -a, -um, top of, highest, chief.
- supplex**, **supplicis** (sub, plicō), bending the knees under one, beseeching, suppliant.
- suprā**, *adv. and prep.* (superus), on the upper side, above.
- suprēmus**, -a, -um (*superl. of superus*, superior, **suprēmus** or **summus**), highest, supreme.
- surgō**, -ere, **surrēxī**, **surrēctum** (sub, regō), rise, arise.
- suscipiō**, -ere, **suscēpī**, **susceptum** (sub, capiō), take up, undertake, beget, bring up.
- suspendō**, -ere, -pendī, **suspēsum** (sub, pendō), hang up, suspend; **suspēsus**, -a, -um (*perf. part.*), touching lightly, light; **pede suspēnsō**, on tiptoe.
- suspiciō**, -ere, **suspexī**, **suspectum** (sub, speciō), look up at, look askance at, suspect.
- suspicor**, *dep.*, 1 (**suspiciō**), mistrust, suspect.
- sustineō**, -ēre, -uī, **sustentum** (sub, teneō), hold up, sustain.
- suus**, -a, -um (**suī**), his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).
- Syrtēs**, -ium, *f. pl.*, Syrtes (*sand banks on the northern coast of Africa*).

T

- taberna**, -ae, *f.*, booth, shop.
- tabula**, -ae, *f.*, board, plank, writing tablet; **tabula rāsa**, a clean slate.
- taceō**, -ēre, **tacui**, **tacitum**, be silent.
- tacitē**, *adv.* (**tacitus**), silently.
- tacitus**, -a, -um (**taceō**), silent.
- taeda**, -ae, *f.*, a pitch-pine torch, torch.

tālis , -e, of such a kind, such ; <i>correlative with quālis.</i>	tendō , -ere, tetendī, tentum, tēnsūm (<i>cf. teneō</i>), stretch, extend, direct one's course.
tam , <i>adv.</i> , so.	tenebrae , -ārum, <i>f. pl.</i> , dark- ness, gloom, shades.
tamen , <i>adv.</i> , nevertheless, yet.	tanebricōsus , -a, -um (<i>tene- brae</i>), dark, gloomy.
tametsī , <i>conj.</i> (<i>tamen, etsī</i>), even if, although.	teneō , -ēre, tenuī, tentum (<i>cf. tendō</i>), hold.
tamquam , tamquam sī, as if.	tener , -era, -erum (<i>cf. tendō</i>), tender, delicate.
tandem , <i>adv.</i> , at last, finally ; <i>in impatient questions</i> , pray, pray tell me, <i>etc.</i>	tenuis , -e (<i>teneō</i>), thin.
tangō , -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch.	tenuitās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> (<i>tenuis</i>), thinness.
tantus , -a, -um, so great, so much ; tantum , <i>adv.</i> , only, merely.	terebra , -ae, <i>f.</i> , auger, gimlet.
tardō , 1 (<i>tardus</i>), make slow, check, retard.	tergum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , back ; ā <i>tergo</i> , in the rear, from behind.
tardus , -a, -um, slow, late, tardy.	terminō , 1 (<i>terminus</i>), set bounds to, limit, end.
taurus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , bull.	terminus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , boundary line, limit.
tēctum , -ī, <i>n.</i> (<i>tegō</i>), roof, house.	terra , -ae, <i>f.</i> , land, earth.
tegō , -ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover, conceal.	terreō , -ēre, terrui, territum, frighten, terrify.
tēlum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , spear, javelin, weapon.	terribilis , -e (<i>terreō</i>), fearful, frightful, terrible.
temere , <i>adv.</i> , rashly.	terror , terrōris, <i>m.</i> (<i>terreō</i>), fear, fright.
temeritās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> (<i>temere</i>), rashness.	tertius , -a, -um, third.
temperantia , -ae, <i>f.</i> (<i>temperō</i> , regulate, restrain, tempus), self-restraint, moderation.	testis , -is, <i>m.</i> , witness.
tempestās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> (<i>tempus</i>), a period of time, weather, storm.	testūdō , -dinis, <i>f.</i> , tortoise, a covered column (<i>made by lapping the shields of one column over those of another</i>).
tempus , -oris, <i>n.</i> , time.	texō , -ere, texui, textum, weave.
	thalamus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , chamber.

- thēsauros**, -ī, *m.*, anything stored up, hoard, treasure.
- tibiāle**, -is, *n.* (tibia, shin-bone), stocking.
- timeō**, -ēre, timui, fear.
- timidē**, *adv.* (timidus), timidly.
- timidus**, -a, -um (timeō), fearful, timid, cowardly.
- timor**, -ōris, *m.* (timeō), fear.
- titulus**, -ī, *m.*, an inscription, placard, notice.
- Titus**, -ī, *m.*, Titus.
- toga**, -ae, *f.* (tegō), toga (*the robe of civil life, as opposed to war*).
- tolerō**, I (tollō), bear, endure, sustain.
- tollō**, -ere, sustulī, sublātum (*cf.* tolerō), lift up, raise, remove.
- tondeō**, -ēre, tondī or totondī, tōnsum, shear, shave.
- tonitrus**, -ūs, *m.* (tonō), thunder.
- tonō**, -āre, tonui, thunder.
- tōnsor**, -sōris, *m.*, shearer, barber.
- tormentum**, -ī, *n.* (torqueō), an engine for hurling missiles; **tormentum bellicum**, cannon (*Robinson Crusoe*).
- torpor**, -ōris, *m.* (torpeō, be numb), numbness, torpor.
- torqueō**, -ēre, torsī, tortum, twist, brandish, hurl.
- tot**, *indecl.*, so many.
- tōtus**, -a, -um, *gen.*, tōtius, *dat.*, tōtī, whole, entire.
- trādō**, -ere, trādidī, trāditum (trāns, dō), give over, surrender, intrust.
- trahō**, -ere, trāxī, trāctum, draw, drag.
- trānō**, I (trāns, nō), swim over or across.
- tranquillus**, -a, -um, quiet, still, peaceful.
- trāns**, *prep. with acc.*, across.
- trānseō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, go across, cross, pass away.
- trānsferō**, trānsferre, trāns-tulī, trānslātum, carry over, transfer, put off.
- trānsfigō**, -ere, -fixī, -fixum (trāns, figō), thrust or pierce through, transfix.
- tremō**, -ere, tremui, shake, tremble, tremble at, quake; **tremendus**, -a, -um, *gerundive*, fearful, frightful.
- trepidō**, I (trepidus), hurry about with alarm, tremble.
- trepidus**, -a, -um, disturbed, agitated, alarmed.
- trēs**, tria, *gen. trium*, three.
- triduum**, -ī, *n.* (trēs, diēs), space of three days, three days.
- trigintā**, *indecl.*, thirty.
- tristis**, -e, sad, solemn, serious.
- tritū**, -a, -um (*perf. part. of* terō, terere, trīvi, tritum,

rub), well-worn, oft-trodden.

triumphō, 1 (**triumphus**), hold or celebrate a triumph, triumph.

triumphus, -ī, *m.*, a triumphal procession, a triumph.

Troia, -ae, *f.*, Troy, a city in Asia Minor, captured and destroyed by the Greeks.

trūdō, -ere, **trūsi**, **trūsum**, thrust, push.

trux, **trucis**, wild, savage, fierce.

tū, **tuī**, *pers. pron.*, you.

tuba, -ae, *f.*, a trumpet.

tubus, -ī, *m.*, a pipe, tube.

tueor, -ērī, **tātus sum**, look at, protect.

tum, *adv.*, then.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* (**tumēō**, swell), commotion, uprising, tumult.

tunc (**tum**), then, at that time.

turba, -ae, *f.*, tumult, crowd, throng.

Turcae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Turks (*Robinson Crusoe*).

turgidulus, -a, -um (**turgidus**), swollen.

turgidus, -a, -um (**turgeo**, swell), swollen, turgid.

turpis, -e, ugly, disgraceful.

turpitūdō, -dinis, *f.* (**turpis**), ugliness, disgrace, shamefulness.

tūs, **tūris**, *n.*, incense.

tūtō, *adv.* (**tātus**), safely, in safety, without danger.

tātus, -a, -um (*perf. part. of tueor*), looked at, found to be safe, safe.

tuus, -a, -um, your (*of one person*).

tyrannus, -ī, *m.*, a monarch, a cruel or despotic ruler, tyrant, despot.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when, as soon as; **ubi primum**, as soon as.

ubique, *adv.*, everywhere.

ulcus, **ulceris**, *n.*, sore, ulcer.

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ūllius**, *dat.*, **ūllī**, any.

ultimus, -a, -um (*superl. of ultrā*, **ulterior**), last, extreme.

ultrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, beyond; *comp.*, **ulterior**, -ius, farther; *superl.*, **ultimus**, -a, -um, farthest, last, extreme.

ultrō, *adv.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily, without being asked.

ululō, 1 (**ulula**, screech-owl), yell, howl.

umbella, -ae, *f.* (**umbra**), umbrella.

umbra, -ae, *f.*, shadow, shade, ghost.

umerus (**humerus**), -ī, *m.*, shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever.
unda, -ae, *f.*, wave.
unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence.
undique, *adv.*, on all sides.
unguentum, -i, *n.* (unguō, -ere, ūnxi, ūnctum, besmear, anoint), ointment, perfume.
unguis, -is, *m.*, a nail, finger nail.
ūnicus, -a, -um (ūnus), one only, sole, single.
ūnitās, -tātis, *f.* (ūnus), oneness, unity.
ūniversus, -a, -um (ūnus, vertō, all turned into one), all together, general, universal.
ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.*, ūnius, *dat.*, ūnī, one; ūnā, *as an adv.*, together, at the same time.
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.
urgeō, -ēre, ursi, press forward, urge, pursue.
ūrō, -ere, ussi, ūstum, burn.
usque, *adv.*, even to, to that degree, even till.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.* (ūtōr), use, experience.
ut (utī), in order that, so that, how, as, as soon as, as (if); **ut primum**, as soon as.
uter, -tra, -trum, *gen.*, utrius, *dat.*, utri, which (of two).

uterque, **utraq̃ue**, **utrumque**, *gen.* -iusque, *dat.*, -ique, each, both, either; **utrāque ex parte**, on both sides.
ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* (ūtilis, useful, ūtor), advantage, usefulness, utility.
utinam, would that! oh! that (*introducing wishes*).
ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, use, enjoy.
utrum, *conj.*, whether; **utrum . . . an** (*in double questions*), whether . . . or.
uxor, uxōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacō, 1, be empty, open, or unoccupied.
vacuō, 1 (vacuus), make empty; **vacuātus**, -a, -um (*perf. part.*), discharged (of a gun; *Robinson Crusoe*).
vacuus, -a, -um, empty.
vādō, -ere, go, make one's way, advance.
vae, *interj.*, alas! woe!
vagor, *dep.*, 1, wander.
valdē, *adv.* (valeō), strongly, vigorously, very much.
valeō, -ēre, valui, valitūrus, be strong, have power; **valē** (*impv.*), be well, good-by.
valētūdō, -dinis, *f.* (valeō), health; *also*, ill-health, illness, sickness.

- validus**, -a, -um (*valeō*), strong, vigorous, robust.
- vallum**, -ī, *n.*, palisade, rampart, wall.
- valor**, **valoris**, *m.* (*valeō*), value.
- vānitās**, -tātis, *f.* (*vānus*), emptiness, nothingness, vanity.
- vānus**, -a, -um (*cf. vacuus*), vain, empty, groundless.
- varius**, -a, -um, different, various.
- vāsa**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, utensils, dishes.
- vāstō**, 1, lay waste, devastate.
- vectigal**, -gālis, *n.*, tribute, tax.
- vehemēns**, -mentis, very eager, impetuous, violent.
- vehementer** (*vehemēns*), *adv.*, very eagerly, vehemently, severely, seriously.
- vehō**, -ere, **vexī**, **vectum**, bear, carry, convey; *pass.*, be carried, sail.
- vel** (*impv. of volō*), or, *implying choice, with superl.*, the very, the utmost; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or.
- vēlōcitās**, -tātis, *f.* (*vēlōx*), speed, velocity.
- vēlōciter**, *adv.* (*vēlōx*), swiftly, quickly.
- vēlōx**, **vēlōcis**, swift, fleet.
- vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil, sail.
- velut**, **velutī**, just as, just like, as if.
- vēnāticus**, -a, -um (*vēnor*), of or pertaining to hunting, hunting.
- vēnātor**, -tōris, *m.*, hunter.
- vēndō**, -ere, **vēndidī**, **vēnditum**, sell.
- venēnō**, 1, poison.
- venēnum**, -ī, *n.*, poison.
- Venerdīus**, -ī, *m.* (*Venus, diēs*) *Venerdīus* (day of Venus, *i.e.* Friday; *Robinson Crusoe*).
- venia**, -ae, *f.*, kindness, forgiveness, pardon.
- veniō**, -ire, **vēnī**, **ventum**, come.
- vēnor**, *dep.* 1, hunt, go hunting.
- venter**, -tris, *m.*, the belly, stomach.
- ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind.
- Venus**, -eris, *f.*, Venus, the goddess of love.
- venustus**, -a, -um (*Venus*), lovely, charming.
- verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word.
- verēcundia**, -ae, *f.* (*verēcundus, vereor*), modesty, sense of shame.
- vereor**, -eri, **veritus sum**, stand in awe of, fear, dread.
- Vergilius**, -ī, *m.*, Vergil (*or, as commonly spelled, Virgil*), the Roman poet.

- vērisimilis**, -e (= *vērī similis*), like the truth, probable, likely.
- vērītās**, -tātis, *f.* (*vērus*), truth.
- vermis**, -is, *m.*, worm.
- versor**, *dep.*, 1 (*vertō*), move about, dwell, be.
- versus**, *prep. with acc.* (*vertō*), towards, facing (*following its case*).
- vertō**, -ere, *verti*, *versum*, turn, change.
- vērus**, -a, -um, true; *vērō*, *adv.*, in truth, but; *vērum*, *conj.*, but.
- vescor**, *vescī*, feed upon, eat.
- vesper**, *vesperis and vesperī*, *m.*, the evening.
- vester**, -tra, -trum, your (*of more than one*).
- vēstīgium**, *i. n.* (*vēstīgō*), foot-print, track, trace.
- vēstīgō**, -āre, track, trace out, search.
- vestimentum**, -ī, *n.* (*vestis*), clothing, garments.
- vestis**, -is, *f.*, garment, robe, clothing.
- vetō**, -āre, *vetuī*, *vetitum*, forbid.
- vetus**, -eris, old; *comp.*, *vetustior*, -ius, *superl.*, *veterrimus*, -a, -um.
- via**, -ae, *f.*, way, road.
- vibrō**, 1, shake, brandish.
- vicārius**, -a, -um (*vicis*), substituted, vicarious.
- vicēsīmus**, -a, -um (*vigintī*), twentieth.
- vicīnus**, -ī, *m.* (*vicus*, village), neighbor.
- vicis** (*gen.*), *f.*, change, interchange; **vice versā** (*abl. abs.*), order reversed.
- vicissim**, *adv.* (*vicis*), in exchange, in turn.
- victor**, -tōris, *m.* (*vincō*), conqueror, victor.
- victōria**, -ae, *f.* (*vincō*), victory.
- victus**, -ūs, *m.* (*vivō*), food, provisions, victuals.
- videō**, -ēre, *vidī*, *vīsum*, see; as a *deponent in the pass.*, seem, appear.
- vigeō**, -ēre, *vigui*, thrive, flourish.
- vigilia**, -ae, *f.* (*vigil*, -ilis, awake, watchful), wakefulness, sleeplessness, watch (*a fourth part of the night*), guard.
- vigilō**, 1 (*vigil*), be awake, watchful, pass without sleep, be vigilant.
- vigintī**, *indecl.*, twenty.
- vigor**, -ōris, *m.* (*vigeō*), strength, vigor.
- vilis**, -e, of small price or value, cheap.
- vilitās**, -tātis, *f.* (*vilis*), cheapness.

villōsus , -a, -um (villus, shaggy hair), hairy, shaggy.	vīta , -ae, f., life.
vīmen , -inis, n. (vieō, bend or twist together), twig or branch, switch, withe.	vītium , -ī, n., fault, defect, vice.
vinciō , -ire, vīxi , vīctum , bind, fetter.	vītō , 1, avoid, shun.
vincō , -ere, vīci , victum , conquer.	vituperō , 1, censure, blame.
vinculum , -ī, n. (vinciō), bond, fetter, tie.	vīvidus , -a, -um (vivō), full of life, vigorous, vivid.
vindex , vindicis , m. (vindicō), defender, avenger.	vivō , -ere, vīxi , vīctum , live, subsist.
vindicō , 1, lay claim to, defend, punish.	vīvus , -a, -um (vivō), alive, living; vivā vōce , by word of mouth.
vīnum , -ī, n., wine.	vix , adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.
violentus , -a, -um (vis), vehement, violent.	vocō , 1 (vōx), call, name, invite.
vir , virī , m., man (as opposed to a woman), husband, a man of courage or honor, hero.	volō , 1, fly.
virginālis , -e (virgō), of or pertaining to a girl.	volō , velle, volui , wish.
virgō , virginis , f., girl, maiden.	voluntās , -tātis, f. (volō), good will, wish, desire.
virgulta , -ōrum, n. pl., bushes, shrubbery, shoots (of trees).	volvō , volvere , volvi , volūtum , roll, roll up or along; in caput volvere , pitch head foremost; in animō volvere , reflect.
viridis , -e (vireō, be green), green.	vorō , 1, swallow greedily, devour.
virilis , -e (vir), of or pertaining to a man, manly, virile.	voveō , -ēre, vōvi , vōtum , promise solemnly, vow.
virtūs , -tūtis, f. (vir), manliness, courage, valor, virtue.	vōx , vōcis , f., voice, utterance, word.
vis , vim , vī , f., force, power, violence, quantity; pl., virēs , virium , strength, forces, troops.	vulgō , adv. (vulgus), commonly, generally.
	vulgus , -ī, n., the crowd, common people, rabble.
	vulnerō , 1 (vulnus), wound.
	vulnus , -eris, n., a wound.
	vultus , -ūs, m., look, face, aspect.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abode, sēdēs, -is, *f.*
about, circiter, *adv.* (*with numerals*); *ad*, *with acc.* (*also with numerals*).
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
abuse, abūtor, abūtī, abūsus sum.
accomplish, cōnficiō, -ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.
act, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum;
act as shepherd, pāscō, -ere, pāvi, pāstum.
add, addō, -ere, addidī, additum.
admire, mīror, *dep.*, 1.
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; suadeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum.
after, post, *with acc.*
age, aevum, -ī, *n.*; aetās, -tātis, *f.*
agree upon, pangō, -ere, pēgī, pepigī or pānxī, pāctum.
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*; *verb*, iuvō, -āre, iūvi, iūtum.
air, āer, āeris, *m.*
alien, aliēnus, -a, -um.

alike, similis, -e.
alive, vīvus, -a, -um.
all, omnis, -e.
allow (suffer), patior, pati, passus sum; **it is allowed**, licet, -ēre, licuit.
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
also, quoque (*following the word it affects*); etiam.
although, quamquam, etsī, tametsī, quamvis, licet, cum.
always, semper.
ambuscade, insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
ambush, insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
ancestors, maiōrēs, maiōrum, *m. pl.*
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um.
and, et; -que (*enclitic, joining more closely than et*); atque (ac), (*usually joining with emphasis*); **and not**, neque (nec); (*with prohibitions, etc.*), nēve (neu); **and so (therefore)**, itaque.
anger, ira, -ae, *f.*

animal, animal, -mālis, *n.* ;
(wild), bēstia, -ae, *f.*
announce, nūntiō, *l.*
anxiety, cūra, -ae, *f.*
any, ūllus, -a, -um ; aliquis,
 aliqua, aliquid (aliquod) ;
any one, any thing, quis-
 quam, quidquam.
arise, orior, -īrī, ortus sum.
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arouse, stimulō, *l.*
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, -īre, pervēnī,
 perventum.
art, ars, artis, *f.*
artisan, faber, -brī, *m.*
as great (as), quantus, -a,
 -um (*correlative with tantus*).
ashes, cinis, -eris, *m.*
ask, quaerō, -ere, quaesivī,
 quaesitum ; rogō, *l.*
as possible, quam *with the*
superl.
assign, attribuō, -ere, attribui,
 attribūtum.
assist, iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum.
assistance, auxilium, -ī, *n.* ;
 (ops), opis, *f.*
assistant, minister, -trī, *m.*
assume, sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī,
 sūmptum.
as they say, ut aiunt.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
at once, statim, *adv.*
attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attempt, cōnor, *dep.*, *l.*

Augustus, Augustus, -ī, *m.*
authority, auctōritās, -tātis,
f.
auxiliary forces, auxilia,
 -ōrum, *n. pl.*
avarice, avāritia, -ae, *f.*
avaricious, avārus, -a, -um.
avenge, vindicō, *l.*
avenger, vindex, vindicis, *m.*
avoid, vitō, *l.*

B

back, tergum, -ī, *n.*
bad, malus, -a, -um.
baggage (baggage train), im-
 pedimenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
ball, glomus, -ī, *m.* ; globus,
 -ī, *m.*
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
bank, ripa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -a, -um ;
 (*noun*), barbarus, -ī, *m.*
bare, nūdus, -a, -um.
battle, pugna, -ae, *f.* ; proe-
 lium, -ī, *n.*
be, sum, esse, fui.
be able, possum, posse, potui.
be absent, absum, abesse,
 āfui.
be angry with, irāscor, irāscī,
 irātus sum.
bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum ;
 (*convey*), vehō, -ere, vexī,
 vectum.
beast, bēstia, -ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, -chra,
 -chrum.

- be born**, nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.
- because**, quod, quia.
- become**, fiō, fierī, factus sum.
- bed**, cubile, -is, *n.*
- be done**, fiō, fierī, factus sum.
- be empty**, vacō, 1.
- began**, coepī, coepisse, coep-tus (*pres. system supplied by incipiō, -ere*).
- begin**, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; **begin war**, bellum inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum.
- be in command of**, praesum, praesse, praefui.
- be lacking**, dēsum, deesse, dēfui.
- Belgians**, Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*
- believe**, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum; (*think*), exis-timō, 1.
- bend**, flectō, -ere, flexi, flexum.
- be necessary**, necesse est, esse, fuit; oportet, -ēre, oportuit.
- be on one's guard (against)**, caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum.
- be pained**, doleō, -ēre, dolui.
- be pleasing (it pleases)**, libet, -ēre, libuit; placet, -ēre, placuit.
- be present**, adsum, -esse, -fui.
- be profitable**, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui.
- be shepherd of**, pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum.
- be silent**, taceō, -ēre, tacui, tacitum.
- be situated**, iaceō, -ēre, iacui.
- be strong**, valeō, -ēre, -ui.
- betake (oneself)**, sē cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātum (collātum).
- be unwilling**, nōlō, nōlle, nō-lui.
- beware**, caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum.
- be white**, candeō, -ēre.
- bid**, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum.
- bind**, ligō, 1.
- bird**, avis, -is, *f.*
- bite**, mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsum.
- biting (stinging)**, mordāx, -ācis; (*noun*), morsus, -ūs, *m.*
- blame**, culpō, 1; reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum; vituperō, 1.
- blast (blowing)**, flātus, -ūs, *m.*
- blood (when spilled)**, cruor, -ōris, *m.*; (*in the veins, also sometimes, bloodshed*), sanguis, -inis, *m.*
- blooming**, flōrēns, -entis.
- blot out**, dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum.
- blow (breathe)**, spirō, 1; fiō, 1.
- body**, corpus, -oris, *n.*
- bold**, audāx, -ācis.
- boldness**, audācia, -ae, *f.*
- bone**, os, ossis, *n.*
- book**, liber, -brī, *m.*

booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
 both, uterque, utraque, utrum-
 que; both . . . and, et
 . . . et.
 boy, puer, -erī, *m.*
 branch, rāmus, -ī, *m.*
 brave, fortis, -e.
 bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
 bravery, fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
 bread, pānis, -is, *m.*
 break, rumpō, -ere, rūpī, rup-
 tum; (*shatter*), frangō, -ere,
 frēgi, frāctum.
 breast, pectus, -oris, *n.*
 breathe, spirō, *l.*
 bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
 brief, brevis, -e.
 briefly, breviter, *adv.*
 bring, portō, *l.*; (*bear*), ferō,
 ferre, tulī, lātum; bring in
 or upon, inferō; bring to,
 adferō (*afferō*); bring about
 (*cause*), perficiō, -ere, per-
 fēcī, perfectum.
 bristle, horreō, -ēre, horruī.
 broad, lātus, -a, -um.
 bronze, aes, aeris, *n.*
 brook, rīvus, -ī, *m.*
 brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
 Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*
 building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*
 burden, onus, oneris, *n.*
 burn, ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstum;
 (*blaze, be hot*), ardeō, -ēre,
 ārsī, ārsūm.
 burst, rumpō, -ere, rūpī, rup-
 tur.

bury, sepeliō, -īre, -ivī or -ii,
 sepultum.
 business, negōtium, -ī, *n.*
 but, sed.
 buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum.
 by, ā, ab, *with abl.*; by chance,
 forte, *adv.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
 call, vocō, *l.*; call together,
 convocō, *l.*; call upon, ap-
 pellō, *l.*
 calm, tranquillus, -a, -um.
 camp, castra, -trōrum, *n. pl.*
 can, possum, posse, potui.
 care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
 carefulness, diligentia, -ae, *f.*
 carry (*bear*), portō, *l.*; carry
 on (*manage*), gerō, -ere,
 gessī, gestum; carry to,
 adferō, -ferre, adtulī, ad-
 lātum (*allātum*); vehō,
 -ere, vexī, vectum; carry off
 (*snatch*), rapiō, -ere, rapuī,
 raptum.
 catch sight of, cōspiciō, -ere,
 cōspexī, cōnspectum.
 Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
 cattle, bovēs, boum, bōbus or
 būbus, *m. pl.*
 cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
 cautious, prūdēns, -dentis.
 cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
 censure, vituperō, *l.*
 certain (*sure*), certus, -a,
 -um; a certain, quīdam,

- quaedam, quiddam (quoddam).
- change**, mūtō, 1.
- charge**, impetus, -ūs, *m*.
- chariot**, currus, -ūs, *m*.
- chaste**, cāstus, -a, -um.
- chastise**, castīgō, 1.
- cheat**, fallō, -ere, fefelli, fallsum.
- check**, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
- cherish** (*cultivate*), colō, -ere, coluī, cultum.
- children**, liberī, -ōrum, *m*. *pl*.
- choose** (*pick out*), legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum; optō, 1.
- Cicero**, Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m*.
- circle**, orbis, -is, *f*.
- citizen**, cīvis, -is, *m*.
- citizenship**, cīvitās, -tātis, *f*.
- city**, urbs, urbis, *f*.
- civilization**, cultus, -ūs, *m*.
- class** (*in general*), classis, -is, *f*.; (*sort*), genus, generis, *n*.
- cleanse**, pūrgō, 1.
- clear**, clārus, -a, -um; (*pure*), pūrus, -a, -um; (*liquid*), liquidus, -a, -um.
- climb**, scandō, -ere.
- cling to**, haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesum.
- close**, claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum.
- clothing**, vestis, -is, *f*.
- cloud**, nūbēs, -is, *f*.
- cold** (*coldness*), frīgus, -oris, *n*.; (*adj.*), frigidus, -a, -um.
- collect**, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum; cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātum (collātum).
- colonist**, colōnus, -ī, *m*.
- colony**, colōnia, -ae, *f*.
- come**, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum; **come down**, dēscendō, -ere, dēscendī, dēscēsum.
- command**, imperō, 1.
- commander** (*in chief*), imperātor, -tōris, *m*.
- common people**, vulgus, -ī, *n*.; plēbs, plēbis, *f*.
- companion**, comes, -itis, *m*.; socius, -ī, *m*.
- compel**, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
- complain**, queror, querī, questus sum.
- conceal** (*cover*), tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum; cēlō, 1.
- concern** (*it concerns*), interest, interesse, interfuit.
- concerning**, dē, *with abl*.
- condemn**, condemnō, 1.
- conference**, colloquium, -ī, *n*.
- confess**, cōnfiteor, -ēri, cōnfessus sum; fateor, -ēri, fassus sum.
- confirm**, cōnfirmō, 1.
- conquer**, vincō, -ere, vicī, victum; (*get the upper hand of*), superō, 1.

conqueror, victor, -tōris, *m.*
consider, habeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum; arbitrator, *dep.*, 1; cōnsiderō, 1.
constellation, sidus, -eris, *n.*
consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m.*
contain, contineō, -ēre, -ui, contentum.
contend, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum; certō, 1.
contest, certāmen, -inis, *n.*
copy, imāgō, -inis, *f.*
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *m.*
corpse, cadāver, cadāveris, *n.*
couch, cubile, -is, *n.*
council, concilium, -ī, *n.*
country (*as opposed to the city*), rūs, rūris, *n.*
cover, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum.
covering, vēlum, -ī, *n.*
crawl, rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum.
creak, crepō, -āre, crepuī, crepitum.
create, creō, 1.
crime (*against society*), scelus, -eris, *n.*; (*against the gods*), nefās, *n.*, *indecl.*; (*against oneself*), flāgitum, -ī, *n.*; (*misdeed*), facinus, -oris, *n.*
crisis, discrīmen, -inis, *n.*
crooked, curvus, -a, -um.
cross, crux, crucis, *f.*; **go across**, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
cross-path, limes, -itis, *m.*

crude, crūdus, -a, -um.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
culture, cultus, -ūs, *m.*
curved, curvus, -a, -um.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
cut, caedō; -ere, cecidī, caesum; **cut down**, occidō, -ere, occidī, occisum; **cut off**, secō, -āre, secuī, secutum.

D

danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daring, audāx, -ācis.
darken, obscurō, 1.
daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
dead body, cadāver, cadāveris, *n.*
deadly disease, pestis, -is, *f.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
dearly (*at a high price*), cārē, *adv.*
death, mors, mortis, *f.*; **violent death**, nex, necis, *f.*
debt, aes aliēnum.
deceive, fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum.
decide, dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētum; (*judge*), iūdicō, 1.
decree, dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētum.
deep, altus, -a, -um.

- defend**, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendi, dēfēnsūm; vindicō, 1.
delay, moror, *dep.*, 1.
deliberate, dēliberō, 1.
delight, dēlectō, 1; (*joy*), gaudium, -ī, *n.*
demand, postulō, 1.
denarius (*about 17 cents*), dēnārius, -ī, *m.*
dense, dēnsus, -a, -um.
deny, negō, 1.
depart, proficiscor, -cisci, profectus sum; ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum.
departure, profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*
depth, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
desert, dēserō, -ere, dēserui, desertum.
design (*plan*), cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
desire, cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupitum.
desirous of, cupidus, -a, -um.
despoil, spoliō, 1.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum.
deter, dēterreō, -ēre, dēterrui.
devastate, vāstō, 1.
devour, vorō, 1.
die, morior, mori, mortuus sum.
differ, differō, differre, distuli, dilātum.
different, dissimilis, -e.
dignity, gravitās, -tātis, *f.*
diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f.*
disease, morbus, -ī, *m.*
disembark, ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum.
disgrace, turpitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
distribute, distribuō, -ere, distribuī, distribūtum.
district, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
disturb (*greatly*), perturbō, 1.
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
divide, dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum.
do (*act*), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum; (*make*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
dog, canis, -is, *m.*, *f.*
dollar, centussis, -is, *m.*
doors, forēs, -um, *f. pl.*
doubt, dubitō, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
down from, dē, *with abl.*
drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum.
drain, hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum.
draw, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; (*drag*), trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum; **draw up**, instruō, -ere, instrūxī, instructum; **draw from**, hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum.
dread, metus, -ūs, *m.*; (*verb*), metuō, -ere, metui.
dream, somnium, -ī, *n.*
drink, bibō, -ere, bibī.
drive, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum; **drive forward** (*pro-*

pel), *prōpellō*, -ere, -puli, -pulsum.
dry, *siccus*, -a, -um.
dwelt in, *incolō*, -ere, incolui, incultum.

E

each, *quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)*; **each (of two)**, *uterque, utraque, utrumque*.
eager, *alacer*, -cris, -ere;
eager for, *cupidus*, -a, -um.
eagerness, *studium*, -i, *n*.
eagle, *aquila*, -ae, *m., f*.
early, *mātūrē*, *adv*.
ease, *ōtium*, -i, *n*.
easily, *facile*, *adv*.
easy, *facilis*, -e.
eat, *vescor, vesci*.
effrontery, *audācia*, -ae, *f*.
egg, *ōvum*, -i, *n*.
eighteen, *duodēvigintī*.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut; (*implying choice*), *vel . . . vel*.
elect, *creō*, 1.
emerge, *ēmergō*, -ere, *ēmersi, ēmersum*.
empty, *inānis*, -e; *vacuus*, -a, -um.
encourage, *cōfirmō*, 1.
end, finis, -is, *m.*; (*verb*), *terminō*, 1.
endeavor, *cōnor, dep.*, 1.
endurance, *patientia*, -ae, *f*.
endure (tolerate), *tolerō*, 1.

enemy, *hostis*, -is; (*personal*), *inimicus*, -i, *m*.
enjoy, *fruor, frui, fructus sum*.
entire, *tōtus*, -a, -um.
envoy, *lēgātus*, -i, *m*.
envy, *invidia*, -ae, *f.*; (*verb*), *invidēō*, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.
equal, *pār, paris*.
equestrian, *equester*, -tris, -tre.
escape, *effugiō*, -ere, *effūgi, effugitum*.
estimate, *aestimō*, 1.
eternal, *aeternus*, -a, -um.
even (level), *aequus*, -a, -um; (*adv.*); *etiam*.
everlasting, *aeternus*, -a, -um.
exhaust ("do up"), *cōnficiō*, -ere, *cōnfēcī, cōnfectum*.
exhort, *hortor, dep.*, 1.
expect, *expectō*, 1.
experience, *experior*, -īrī, *expertus sum*.
exploits, *rēs gestae*.
explore, *explōrō*, 1.
extort, *extorqueō*, -ēre, *extorsī, extortum*.
eye, *oculus*, -i, *m*.

F

fair, *aequus*, -a, -um; (*just*), *iūstus*, -a, -um.
fairness, *iūstitia*, -ae, *f*.
faithful, *fidus*, -a, -um.

- fall**, cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsum ;
fall back, pedem referō,
 -ferre, rettulī, relātum.
false, falsus, -a, -um.
famous, clārus, -a, -um ; (*of*
high birth, well-known),
 nōbilis, nōbile.
far and wide, lātē, *adv.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farther, ulterior, -ius (*comp.*
of ultrā, ulterior, ultimus).
fasten, figō, -ere, fixī, fixum.
fate, fātum, -ī, *n.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fatigue, lassitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
favor (*good will*), grātia, -ae,
f. ; (*verb*), faveō, -ēre,
 fāvī, fautum.
favorable, secundus, -a, -um.
fear (*with awe*), vereor, -ērī,
 veritus sum ; timeō, -ēre,
 timuī ; (*dread*), metuō, -ere,
 metuī ; (*noun*), timor, -oris,
m. ; (*fright*), terror, -ōris,
m. ; (*dread*), metus, -ūs, *m.*
feed, nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum ;
feed upon, vescor, vescī.
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēn-
 sum ; **feel pain or grief**,
 doleō, -ēre, doluī.
feeling (*sentiment*), sententia,
 -ae, *f.*
ferocious, ferōx, -ōcis.
fertile, ferāx, -ācis.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agri, *m.* ; (*plain*),
 campus, -ī, *m.*
fierce, ferōx, -ōcis.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fight, pugnō, 1 ; (*noun*), pugna,
 -ae, *f.*
find, inveniō, -īre, invēnī,
 inventum ; **find out**, cog-
 nōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cogni-
 tum.
finish, perficiō, -ere, perfēcī,
 perfectum.
fire, ignis, -is, *m.* ; (*flame*),
 flamma, -ae, *f.*
firm, firmus, -a, -um.
fit (*fitted to, joined to*), aptus,
 -a, -um ; (*suitable*), idō-
 neus, -a, -um.
fix, figō, -ere, fixī, fixum.
flame, flamma, -ae, *f.*
flash, fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī.
flat, plānus, -a, -um.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum.
fleet (*of ships*), classis, -is,
f. ; (*swift*), vērōx, -ōcis.
flesh, carō, carnis, *f.*
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
flock, grex, gregis, *m.*
flourishing, flōrēns, -entis.
flower, flōs, flōris, *m.*
fly, volō, 1.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus
 sum.
following, posterus, posterior,
 postrēmus and postumus.
foolish, stultus, -a, -um.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
foot-hill (*root*), rādix, -icis, *f.*
foot-print, vēstīgium, -ī, *n.*

foot soldier, *pedes*, -itis, *m.*
 forbid, *vetō*, -āre, *vetui*, *veti-*
tum.
 force, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*, *f.*; forces
 (*troops*), *oōpiaē*, -ārum, *f. pl.*
 forehead, *frōns*, *frontis*, *f.*
 foreign, *exterus*, -a, -um.
 foresight, *prūdentia*, -ae, *f.*
 forest, *silva*, -ae, *f.*
 forget, *oblivīscor*, -ī, *oblītus*
sum.
 form, *fōrma*, -ae, *f.*
 fortifications, *moenia*, -ium,
n. pl.
 fortify, *mūniō*, -īre, -īvi or
 -īi, -ītum.
 fortunate, *fēlix*, -īcis.
 fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, *f.*
 fourth, *quārtus*, -a, -um.
 fraud, *fraus*, *fraudis*, *f.*
 free, *liber*, -era, -erum;
 (*verb*), *liberō*, 1.
 freedom (*license*), *licentia*, -ae,
f.
 freeze, *gelō*, 1.
 friend, *amicus*, -ī, *m.*
 friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, *f.*
 fright, terror, -ōris, *m.*
 frighten, *terreō*, -ēre, -ui,
territum.
 frightful, *tremendus*, -a, -um.
 from (*away from*), *ā*, *ab*, *with*
abl.; (*out of*), *ē*, *ex*, *with*
abl.
 front, *frōns*, *frontis*, *f.*
 fruit, *frūctus*, -ūs, *m.*
 full, *plēnus*, -a, -um.

G

gain possession of, *potior*,
 -īri, *potītus sum*.
 galley, *nāvis longa*.
 Gallic, *Gallicus*, -a, -um.
 game, *lūdus*, -ī, *m.*
 garden, *hortus*, -ī, *m.*
 garland, *corōna*, -ae, *f.*
 garment, *vestis*, -is, *f.*
 garrison, *praesidium*, -ī, *n.*
 gather, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*;
 gather together, *glomerō*, 1.
 Gaul, *Gallia*, -ae, *f.*; a Gaul,
Gallus, -ī, *m.*
 general (*in chief*), *imperātor*,
 -tōris, *m.*; (*leader*), *dux*,
ducis, *m.*
 gentle, *lōnis*, -e.
 gently, *lōniter*, *adv.*
 German, *Germānus*, -a, -um;
 a German, *Germānus*, -ī,
m.
 get possession of, *potior*, -īri,
potītus sum.
 get ready, *parō*, 1.
 gift, *dōnum*, -ī, *n.*; (*reward*),
mūnus, -eris, *n.*
 gird, *cingō*, -ere, *cīnxi*, *cīnc-*
tum.
 girl, *puella*, -ae, *f.*; (*maiden*),
virgō, -inis, *f.*
 give, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datum*;
 give over, *trādō*, *ere*, *trā-*
didi, *trāditum*.
 gladly, *libenter*, *adv.*
 gleam, *fulgeō*, *ēre*, *fulsī*.

glide, lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum.
 glory, glōria, -ae, *f*.
 glow, candeō, -ēre.
 gnaw, rōdō, -ere, rōsī, rōsum.
 go, eō, ire, iī (ivī), itum;
 (*make one's way*), vādō,
 -ere, vāsī, vāsum.
 goad on, stimulō, *l*.
 go astray, errō, *l*.
 go back (*return*), redeō, -ire,
 -iī, -itum.
 god, deus, deī, *m*.
 goddess, dea, deae, *f*.
 go forward (*make one's way*),
 vādō, -ere, vāsī, vāsum.
 gold, aurum, -ī, *n*.
 good, bonus, -a, -um; *comp.*,
 melior, -ius; *superl.*, opti-
 mus, -a, -um.
 good faith, fidēs, -eī, *f*.
 good fortune, good luck, fēli-
 citās, -tātis, *f*.
 go out, exeō, -ire, -iī, -itum.
 go to rest, quiēscō, -ere,
 quiēvī, quiētum.
 grade, gradus, -ūs, *m*.
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n*.;
 grain supply, rēs frūmen-
 tāria.
 grass, herba, -ae, *f*.
 grateful, grātus, -a, -um.
 great, magnus, -a, -um; great
 number, multitūdō, -dinis, *f*.
 greatness, magnitūdō, -dinis,
f.
 greedy of plunder, rapāx,
 rapācis.

Greek, Graecus, -a, -um; a
 Greek, Graecus, -ī, *m*.
 grief, dolor, -ōris, *m*.
 grieve, doleō, -ēre, dolui,
 dolitum.
 ground, humus, -ī, *f*.; on the
 ground, humī, *loc*.
 guard, custōs, -tōdis; (*garri-
 son*), praesidium, -ī, *n*.; (*verb*),
 custōdiō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, custōditum.
 guest, hospes, -pitis, *m*.
 guest friend, hospes, -pitis,
m.
 guest friendship, hospitium,
 -ī, *n*.
 guide, dux, ducis, *m*.

H

habit, mōs, mōris, *m*.
 hair, capillus, -ī, *m*.
 halt, cōnsistō, -ere, cōstiti.
 hand, manus, -ūs, *f*.; hand
 over, trādō, -ere, trādidi,
 trāditum.
 handsome, pulcher, -chra,
 -chrum.
 hang, pendeō, -ēre, pependi.
 happy, fēlix, -icis.
 harbor, portus, -ūs, *m*.
 hard, dūrus, -a, -um.
 harm, noceō, -ēre, nocui,
 nocitum.
 harmful, noxius, -a, -um.
 hasten, properō, *l*.
 hate, ōdī, ōdisse.
 hatred, odium, -ī, *n*.

- haughty**, superbus, -a, -um.
have, habeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum;
have power (*avail*), valeo, -ēre, valui.
head, caput, -itis, *n*.
health, salūs, -ūtis, *f*.; (*soundness*), sanitās, -tātis, *f*.
healthy, sānus, -a, -um.
heap, cumulus, -ī, *m*.
heap up, cumulō, *l*.
hear, audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum.
heart, cor, cordis, *n*.
heavens, caelum, -ī, *n*.
heavily, graviter, *adv*.
heaviness, gravitās, -tātis, *f*.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -dinis, *f*.
heir, hērēs, -ēdis, *m*., *f*.
help (*be profitable to*), prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui; (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, *n*.
hem in, contineō, -ēre, -uī, contentum.
herb, herba, -ae, *f*.
hide, obscurō, *l*.
high, altus, -a, -um; **of high birth**, nōbilis, -e.
hill, collis, -is, *m*.
himself, herself, etc. (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum; (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, *etc*.
hinder, prohibeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum; (*impede*), impediō, -īre, -ivī or -ii, itum.
hinge, cardō, -dinis, *m*.
his (own), her (own), etc., suus, sua, suum.
- hold**, habeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum; teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum;
hold off, prohibeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
hollow, cavus, -a, -um.
holy, sāctus, -a, -um.
home, domus, -ūs, -ī, *f*.
honey, mel, mellis, *n*.
honor, honor, -ōris, *m*.
honorable, honestus, -a, -um; (*upright*), probus, -a, -um.
honorably, honestē, *adv*.
hope, spēs, speī, *f*.; (*verb*), spērō, *l*.
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n*.
horse, equus, -ī, *m*.
horseman, eques, equitis, *m*.; (*cavalry*), equitēs, equitum, *m. pl*.
hospitality, hospitium, -ī, *n*.
host, hospes, -pitis, *m*.
hour, hōra, -ae, *f*.
house (*home*), domus, -ūs or -ī, *f*.; aedēs, -ium, *f. pl*.; (*building*), aedificium, -ī, *n*.
how, quam; (*in what way*), quōmodo; **how great**, quantus, -a, -um; **how many**, quot, *indecl*.; **how do you do?** quid agis? or salvē!
hundred, centum, *indecl*.

I

I, ego, meī, *pers. pron*.
ice, glaciēs, -ēī, *f*.

icy, gelidus, -a, -um; icy coldness, gelū, -ūs, *n.*
 illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
 image, imāgō, -inis, *f.*
 imitate, imitor, *dep.*, 1.
 immediately, statim, *adv.*
 impede, impediō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītum.
 impetuous, vehemēns, -mentis.
 impetuously, vehementer, *adv.*
 implements, arma, -ōrum, *n.*
 in, in, *with the abl.*
 increase, augeō, -ēre, auxili, auctum.
 incredible, incredibilis, -e.
 indulge, indulgē, -ēre, indulsi.
 infantry, peditēs, peditum, *m. pl.*
 influence, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
 inform, certiōrem (or certiōrēs) faciō, -ere, feci, factum.
 inhabit, incolō, -ere, incolui.
 inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m., f.*
 injure, noceō, -ēre, nocui, nocitum.
 injurious, noxius, -a, -um.
 injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
 injustice, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
 in order that, ut; in order that not, nē.
 inquire, quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum.
 interest (it interests), interest, interesse, interfuit.

interior of, interior, -ius (*comp. of* intrā, interior, intimus).
 in that place, ibi, *adv.*
 into, in, *with the acc.*
 intrust, mandō, 1.
 in turn, in vicem, vicissim.
 in vain, frūstrā, *adv.*
 invent, fingō, -ere, finxi, fictum.
 island, insula, -ae, *f.*
 Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
 it pleases, libet, -ēre, libuit.

J

jail, carcer, carceris, *m.*
 javelin, pilum, -ī, *n.*
 join, iungō, -ere, iūnxi, iūctum.
 joint, artus, -ūs, *m.*
 journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
 joy, gaudium, -ī, *n.*
 judge, iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*; (*verb*), iūdicō, 1.
 Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*
 just, iustus, -a, -um; (*fair*), aequus, -a, -um.
 justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*; (*law*), iūs, iūris, *n.*

K

keep, servō, 1.
 key, clāvis, -is, *f.*
 kill, (*cut down*), occidō, -ere, occidi, occisum; (*put to death*), interficiō, -ere, inter-

fēci, interfectum; (*murder*),
necō, 1.
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*; (*man-
ner*), modus, -ī, *m.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī *or*
sciī, scitum.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
lament, lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī.
land, terra, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
late, tardus, -a, -um.
laugh, laugh at, rīdeō, -ēre,
risī, rīsum.
law (*justice*), iūs, iūris, *n.*
lawsuit, lis, litis, *f.*
lay waste, vāstō, 1.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, duc-
tum.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leading man, princeps, prīn-
cipis, *m.*
leaf, folium, -ī, *n.*
league, foedus, -eris, *n.*
leap, salīō, -īre, saluī, saltum.
leave behind, relinquo, -ere,
reliquī, relictum.
left, sinister, -tra, -trum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
leisure, ōtium, -ī, *n.*
length, longitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
lenient, clēmēns, -entis.
lest, nē.

letter (*of the alphabet*), littera,
-ae, *f.*; (*an epistle*), epis-
tula, -ae, *f.*; litterae, -ārum,
f. pl.
level, plānus, -a, -um; (*even*),
aequus, -a, -um.
license (*freedom*), licentia, -ae,
f.
lie (*be situated*), iaceō, -ēre,
iacuī; **lie down**, cubō, -āre,
cubuī, cubitum; **lie open**,
pateō, -ēre, patuī.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
lifetime, aevum, -ī, *n.*
light, levis, -e; (*noun*), lūx,
lūcis, *f.*
lightning, fulmen, -minis, *n.*
likewise, item, *adv.*
limb, artus, -ūs, *m.*
limit, finis, -is, *m.*; terminus,
-ī, *m.*
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
lion, lioness, leō, -ōnis, *m.*, *f.*
little, parvus, -a, -um; (*adv.*),
paulum, paulō.
live, vīvō, -ere, vixī, vietum.
lively, alacer, -eris, -ere.
living, vīvus, -a, -um.
lofty, altus, -a, -um.
long, longus, -a, -um.
long for, cupiō, -ere, cupivī,
cupitum.
look out for, caveō, -ēre, cāvī,
cautum.
loosen, solvō, -ere, solvī, solū-
tum.

lot, sors, sortis, *f.*
 love, amō, 1; (*noun*), amor,
 -ōris, *m.*
 lucky, fēlix, fēlicis.

M

machine, māchina, -ae, *f.*
maiden, virgō, -inis, *f.*
make (*do*), faciō, -ere, fēcī,
 factum; **make a march**,
 iter facere.
man, vir, virī, *m.*; (*human be-*
ing), homō, hominis, *m. (f.)*.
manage, gerō, -ere, gessi, ges-
 tum.
manliness, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
manner, modus, -ī, *m.*
march, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī,
 factum.
Marcus, Mark, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
marry, nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūp-
 tum.
master, dominus, -ī, *m.*; **ma-**
gister, -trī, *m.*
material, māteria, -ae, *f.*
mature, mātūrus, -a, -um.
measure out, mētior, -īrī,
 mēnsus sum.
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
merchant, mercātor, -tōris, *m.*
merciful, clēmēns, clēmentis.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
middle (*of*), medius, -a, -um.
migrate, migrō, 1.
mildly, lēniter, *adv.*
mile, mille passuum; **two**
 miles, duo milia passuum, *etc.*

milk, lac, lactis, *n.*
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*: (*of men-*
tal qualities), mēns, mentis, *f.*
mindful, memor, -oris.
misdeed, facinus, facinoris, *n.*
mistress, domina, -ae, *f.*
mix, misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mix-
 tum.
mode, modus, -ī, *m.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*; **aes**,
 aeris, *n.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
mourn, lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī.
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī,
 mōtum.
much, many, multus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitudō, -dinis,
f.
municipal town, mūnicipium,
 -ī, *n.*
municipality, mūnicipium.
murder, caedes, -is, *f.*; **nex**,
 necis, *f.*; (*verb*), necō, 1.
my, meus, mea, meum.

N

naked, nūdus, -a, -um.
name, appellō, 1; (*noun*),
 nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow pass, angustiae, -ārum,
f. pl.
nation, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
native land, fatherland, patria,
 -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*

near, ad *with acc.*; (*close by*),
iūxtā *with acc.*; *prope*.

nearer, propior, -ius (*comp. of*
prope, propior, proximus).

necessary (it is), necesse est;
(*adj.*), necessārius, -a, -um.

neglect, neglegō, -ere, neglēxī,
neglēctum.

neighbor, finitimus, -ī, *m.*

neighboring, finitimus, -a,
-um.

neither, neuter, -tra, -trum;
neither . . . nor, neque (nec)
. . . neque (nec); (*with pro-*
hibitions, etc., nēve (neu)
. . . nēve (neu).

Nervii, Nervī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

nevertheless, tamen, *adv.*

new, novus, -a, -um.

next, proximus, -a, -um
(*superl. of prope*, propior,
proximus).

night, nox, noctis, *f.*

no, nullus, -a, -um; (*in an-*
swer to questions), nōn, negō,
minimē, nōn ita est.

noble, nōbilis, -e.

nobody, nēmō, nullius, *m.*

no longer, iam, *with a neg.*

none, nullus, -a, -um,

no one, nēmō, nullius, *m.*

not, nōn; **not a few**, nōnnūllī,
-ae, -a.

nothing, nihil, *n., indecl.*

nourish, alō, -ere, aluī, altum
or alitum; nūtriō, -īre,
-īvi *or* -īi, nūtrītum.

now, nunc, *adv.*; **now for a**
long time, iam diū, iam
dūdum, iam pridem, *with*
pres. and past with the
force of perf. and past perf.
respectively.

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

oak, rōbur, -oris, *n.*

oath, iūs iūrāndum, iūris
iūrāndī, *n.*

obey (*appear for*), pāreō, -ēre,
pāruī, pāritum.

obscure (*darken*), obscūrō, *l.*

occupy, occupō, *l.*

Octavia, Octāvia, -ae, *f.*

often, saepe, *adv.*

of what sort, quālis, -e.

old, vetus, veteris; **old age**,
senectūs, -tūtis, *f.*; **old**
man, senex, senis, *m.*

one, ūnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*;
one . . . another, alius . . .
alius; **the one . . . the**
other, alter . . . alter.

only, sōlus, -a, -um.

open, patēns, patēntis.

opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*

oppose, adversor, dep., *l.*

or, aut; (*implying choice*), vel.

oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, ius-
sum; (*rank*), ordō, ōrdinis,
m.

other (the) of two, alter, altera,
alterum.

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitum (*with comp. inf.*);
oportet, -ēre, oportuit (*with inf. and subj. acc.*).
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
out of, ē, ex, *with abl.*
overcome, superō, 1.
overhang, impendeō, ēre.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitum.
ox, bōs, bovis, m.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, m.
pain, dolor, -ōris, m.
painting, pictūra, -ae, f.
pardon, ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum.
part, pars, partis, f.
patience, patientia, -ae, f.
pay, pendō, -ere, pependī, pēsum.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
peaceful, quiētus, -a, -um.
penalty, poena, -ae, f.
penetrate, penetrō, 1.
people, populus, -ī, m.
perceive, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēsum.
perform, fungor, fungī, fūctus sum.
peril, periculum, -ī, n.
period of time, tempestās, -tātis, f.
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum.

pestilence, pestis, -is, f.
pestilential, pestilēns, -lentis.
physician, medicus, -ī, m.
pick up (*lift up*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
picture, pictūra, -ae, f.
pierce, trānsfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum; figō.
pilot, gubernātor, -tōris, m.
pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
pity (it causes pity), miseret, -ēre, miseruit.
place, locus, -ī, m.; *pl.*, loca, also locī, -ōrum; (*verb*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
plain, campus, -ī, m.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, n.; (*reason*), ratiō, -ōnis, f.
play, lūdus, -ī, m.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pledge, fidēs, -eī, f.
plunder, praeda, -ae, f.
poem, carmen, -inis, n.
poet, poēta, -ae, m.
point, pūnetum, -ī, n.
poison, venēnum, -ī, n.; (*verb*), venēnō, 1.
poor, pauper, pauperis.
port, portus, -ūs, m.
portion, pars, partis, f.
pour, fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum.
power, potentia, -ae, f.
powerful, potēns, potentis.
praise, laudō, 1.
pray, orō, 1; (*offer prayers to*), precor, *dep.*, 1.

prayer, *prex*, *precis*, *f.*
 precept, *norma*, -ae, *f.*
 prefer, *mālō*, *mālle*, *māluī*.
 prepare, *parō*, 1.
 preserve, *servō*, 1.
 preside over, *praesideō*, -ēre,
 -sēdi, -sessum.
 press (hard), *premō*, -ere,
pressī, *pressum*.
 prevent, *impediō*, -īre, -ivī, *or*
 -iī, -itum; *prohibeō*, -ēre,
 -ui, -itum; *dēterreō*, -ēre,
 -uī.
 prey, *praeda*, -ae, *f.*
 price, *pretium*, -ī, *n.*
 prick, *pungō*, -ere, *pupugī*,
pūctum.
 prison, *carcer*, *carceris*, *m.*
 proceed, *prōgredior*, *prōgredi*,
prōgressus sum.
 prosperity, *rēs secundae*.
 protection, *praesidium*, -ī, *n.*;
 (*good faith*), *fidēs*, -eī, *f.*
 provided (only), *dum*, *modo*,
dummodo.
 province, *prōvincia*, -ae, *f.*
 public, *pūblicus*, -a, -um.
 punish, *pūniō*, -īre, -ivī *or*
 -iī, *pūnitum*; (*avenge*),
vindicō, 1.
 punishment, *poena*, -ae, *f.*
 pupil, *discipulus*, -ī, *m.*
 pure, *pūrus*, -a, -um; (*chaste*)
castus, -a, -um.
 purify, *pūrgō*, 1.
 push, *trūdō*, -ere, *trūsī*, *trū-*
sum.

put, *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *posi-*
tum; put aside (*down*),
dēpōnō; put to death, *in-*
terficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum;
 put to sea, *nāvēs solvō*, -ere,
solvī, *solūtum*.

Q

queen, *rēgina*, -ae, *f.*
 quickly, *celeriter*, *adv.*
 quiet (*noun*), *quiēs*, -ētis, *f.*;
 (*adj.*), *quiētus*, -a, -um;
tranquillus, -a, -um.
 quite a large number, *com-*
plūrēs, *complūra*, -ium.

R

race, *genus*, -eris, *n.*; (*na-*
tion), *nātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
 rank, *ōrdō*, -dinis, *m.*
 rapacious, *rapāx*, -ācis.
 rare, *rārus*, -a, -um.
 rashly, *temere*, *adv.*
 rashness, *temeritās*, -tātis, *f.*
 rather, *potius*, *adv.*
 ratify, *sanciō*, -īre, *sānxī*,
sānctum.
 raw, *crūdus*, -a, -um.
 read, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*.
 realize, *intellegō*, -ere, *intel-*
lēxī, *intellēctum*.
 reason, *ratiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
 recent, *recēns*, *recentis*.
 red, *ruber*, -bra, -brum.
 region, *regiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
 rejoice, *gaudeō*, -ēre, *gāvīsus*
sum.

remain , maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.	right , dexter, -tra, -trum; (<i>law</i>), iūs, iūris, <i>n.</i> ; (<i>just</i>), iūstus, -a, -um.
remaining , reliquus, -a, -um.	ripe , mātūrus, -a, -um.
remember , meminī, meminisse.	rise , orior, orīrī, ortus sum.
remove , tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.	rising , ortus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
render thanks , grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.	risk , discrimen, -inis, <i>n.</i> ; (<i>danger</i>), periculum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
renown , glōria, -ae, <i>f.</i>	river , flūmen, -inis, <i>n.</i>
renowned , clārus, -a, -um.	road , via, -ae, <i>f.</i>
repent (it repents), paenitet, -ēre, paenituit.	rob (<i>despoil</i>), spoliō, 1.
reply , respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōsum.	robust , rōbustus, -a, -um; validus, -a, -um.
report , nūntio, 1.	roll , volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtum; roll up (into a ball), glomerō, 1.
republic , rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, <i>f.</i>	Roman , Rōmānus, -a, -um; a Roman , Rōmānus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
resist , resistō, -ere, restitī.	Rome , Rōma, -ae, <i>f.</i>
resound , sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitum.	roof , tēctum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
rest , quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quiētum; (<i>noun</i>), quiēs, -ētis, <i>f.</i> ; rest of , reliquus, -a, -um.	root , rādix, -īcis, <i>f.</i>
restrain , contineō, -ēre, -uī, contentum.	rose , rosa, -ae, <i>f.</i>
retard , tardō, 1.	rough (<i>bristling</i>), horridus, -a, -um; asper, aspera, asperum.
retreat (<i>withdraw</i>), cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum; pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.	rouse , excutiō, -ere, excussī, excussum.
return , redeō, -īre, rediī, reditum; revertor, -ī, revertī, reversum.	route , iter, itineris, <i>n.</i>
reward , mūnus, -eris, <i>n.</i>	row , ōrdō, -dinis, <i>m.</i>
rich , opulentus, -a, -um.	rule , regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum; (<i>precept</i>), norma, -ae, <i>f.</i>
riches , opēs, opum, <i>f. pl.</i>	run , currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum.

S

sacred, sacer, -cra, crum; (*sanctified*), sāctus, -a, -um.

safe , tūtus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um.	separate , dividō, -ere, divisī, divisum.
safety , salūs, -ūtis, <i>f</i> .	servant , servus, -ī, <i>m</i> .; serva, -ae, <i>f</i> .
said I, said he , inquam, inquit.	serve , serviō, -īre, -iī, itum.
sail , vēlum, -ī, <i>n</i> .	set bounds to , terminō, <i>l</i> ;
sailor , nauta, -ae, <i>m</i> .	set free , liberō, <i>l</i> ; set out ,
salt , sāl, salis, <i>n</i> .	proficiscor, -ciscī, profectus sum.
same , idem, eadem, idem.	setting , occāsus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .
savage , ferōx, -ōcis.	settler , colōnus, -ī, <i>m</i> .
save , servō, <i>l</i> .	seven , septem, <i>indecl</i> .
say , dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum; (for), fārī, fātus sum; say yes (<i>affirm</i>), aiō.	seventy , septuāginta, <i>indecl</i> .
scatter (<i>pour</i>), fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum; (<i>sprinkle</i>), spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum.	severely , graviter, <i>adv</i> .
scout , explōrātor, -tōris, <i>m</i> .	shade , umbra, -ae, <i>f</i> .
sea , mare, maris, <i>n</i> .	shame (it shames), pudet, -ēre, puduit; (<i>sense of honor</i>), pudor, -ōris, <i>m</i> .
seat , sēdēs, -is, <i>f</i> .	shape , fōrma, -ae, <i>f</i> .; (<i>verb</i>), fingō, -ere, finxī, fīctum.
second , sēcundus, -a, -um.	sharp , ācer, ācris, ācre.
see , videō, -ēre, vīdī, visum; (<i>catch sight of</i>), cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.	sharply , ācriter, <i>adv</i> .
seed , sēmen, -inis, <i>n</i> .	shatter (<i>break</i>), frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum; concutiō -ere, concussī, concussum.
seek , petō, -erē, petivī, petitum; (<i>ask question</i>), quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum.	shepherd , pāstor, -tōris, <i>m</i> .; be shepherd of , pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum.
seem , videor, -ērī, visus sum.	ship , nāvis, -is, <i>f</i> .; (<i>of war</i>), nāvis longa.
seize , occupō, <i>l</i> ; (<i>snatch</i>), rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum.	short , brevis, -e.
sell , vëndō, -ere, vëndidī, vënditum.	shortness , brevitas, -tātis, <i>f</i> .
senate , senātus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .	shudder at , horreō, -ēre, -uī.
send , mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.	shun , vitō, <i>l</i> .
	sickness , morbus, -ī, <i>m</i> .
	sign , signum, -ī, <i>n</i> .
	silver , argentum, -ī, <i>n</i> .

- similar**, similis, -e.
simple, simplex, simplicis.
since, cum, quoniam.
sinew, nervus, -ī, *m*.
sink, mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum.
sister, soror, sorōris, *f*.
sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.
size (*greatness*), magnitūdō, -dinis, *f*.
skill, ars, artis, *f*.
sky, caelum, -ī, *n*.
slaughter, caedēs, -is, *f*.
slave, servus, -ī, *m*.; *serva*, -ae, *f*.
sleep, dormiō, -īre, -īvī or ii, dormitum; (*noun*), somnus, -ī, *m*.
slip, lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum.
slippery, lūbricus, -a, -um.
sluggish, tardus, -a, -um.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smoke, fūmus, -ī, *m*.
smooth, lēnis, -e.
snatch, rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptum.
so, tam, ita, *adv*.; **so many**, tot, *indecl*.; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um; **so that**, ut.
soft, mollis, -e.
soldier, miles, -itis, *m*.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī; (*not a few*), nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.
son, filius, -ī, *m*.
song, carmen, -inis, *n*.
sorrow, dolor, -ōris, *m*.
sort, genus, -eris, *n*.
soul, animus, -ī, *n*.
sound (*healthy*), sānus, -a, -um; (*make a noise*), sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitum.
sow, serō, -ere, sēvī, satum.
space, spatium, -ī, *n*.
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī or parsī, parsum.
speak, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum; loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
spear, pilum, -ī, *n*.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f*.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, *f*.
spirit, animus, -ī, *m*.
spoil, spolium, -ī, *n*.
spoke (of a wheel), radius, -ī, *m*.
spot, macula, -ae, *f*.; (*verb*), maculō, 1.
spring, fōns, fontis, *m*.
sprinkle, spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum.
spur (of mountains), rādix, -icis, *f*.
spy (upon), speculor, *dep*., 1.
stack (*place down*), dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
stain, macula, -ae, *f*.; (*verb*), maculō, 1.
stand, stō, stāre, steti, statum.
standard, signum, -ī, *n*.
star, stella, -ae, *f*.; (*constellation*), sidus, -eris, *n*.
start (*leap forth*), exsilīō, -īre, exsiluī.

state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*; (*commonwealth*), rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, *f.*
 stealthily, fūrtim, *adv.*
 steer, gubernō, *l.*
 step, gradus, -ūs, *m.*
 stick, haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesum.
 still, tranquillus, -a, -um; (*nevertheless*), tamen, *adv.*
 stimulate, stimulō, *l.*
 stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*
 storm, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*
 story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
 straight, rēctus, -a, -um.
 strength, vīs, vim, vī; *pl.*, virēs, -ium.
 strengthen, cōnfirmō, *l.*
 stretch out, pateō, -ēre, patuī.
 strew, sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum.
 strike, percutiō, -ere, percussī, percussum.
 strong, validus, -a, -um; (*brave*), fortis, -e; (*firm*), firmus, -a, -um.
 struggle, certāmen, -inis, *n.*
 such, tālis, -e.
 suffer, patior, patī, passus sum.
 suitable, idōneus, -a, -um; (*well-fitted*), aptus, -a, -um.
 sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
 support, alō, -ere, aluī, altum or alitum.
 sure, certus, -a, -um.

surround, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum; (*gird*), cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cinctum.
 survive, supersum, -esse, superfuī.
 sustain, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, sustentum.
 swallow (greedily), vorō, *l.*
 swear (*take an oath*), iūro, *l.*
 sweet, dulcis, -e; (*pleasant*), suāvis, -e.
 swift, celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx, vēlōcis.
 swiftly, celeriter, *adv.*
 swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
 sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

tail, cauda (cōda), -ae, *f.*
 take, capiō, -ere, -cēpī, cap-tum; take an oath, iūrō, *l.*; take a position, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum; take up, sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmp-tum.
 talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
 tax, vectīgal, vectīgālis, *n.*
 teach, doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum.
 teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
 tell (a story), nārrō, *l.*
 tempest, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*
 ten, decem, indecl.
 tender, tener, -era, -erum; (*soft*), mollis, -e.
 tenth, decimus, -a, -um.

- terrify**, terreō, -ere, terrui, territorium.
- territory**, finēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
- terror**, terror, -ōris, *m.*
- test**, probō, *l.*
- than**, quam.
- that** (*of yours*), iste, ista, istud; (*yonder, well-known, famous*), ille, illa, illud; *is*, ea, id.
- theft**, furtum, -ī, *n.*
- there**, ibi, *adv.*
- therefore**, itaque.
- thick**, dēnsus, -a, -um.
- thin**, rārus, -a, -um; tenuis, -e.
- thing**, rēs, rei, *f.*
- think**, putō, *l*; arbitror, *dep.*, *l*; (*feel*), sentiō, -īre, sēnsi, sēnsus; (*estimate*), existimō, *l*; reor, rēri, ratus sum; cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsui, cēnsus.
- thinness**, tenuitas, -tātis, *f.*
- this** (*of mine*), hic, haec, hoc.
- thoroughly frightened**, perterritus, -a, -um (*perterreō*).
- thousand**, mille, *indecl.*; thousands, milia, -ium, *n. pl.*
- three hundred**, trecenti, -ae, -a.
- threshold**, limen, -inis, *n.*
- through**, per, *with acc.*
- throw**, iacio, -ere, iēcī, iactum; **throw away**, abiciō, -ere, abiēcī, abiectum; **throw into confusion**, perturbō, *l.*
- thrust**, trūdō, -ere, trūsī, trūsum.
- thunder**, tonō, -āre, tonui.
- thunderbolt**, fulmen, -inis, *n.*
- till**, colō, -ere, colui, cultum.
- timber**, māteria, -ae, *f.*
- time**, tempus, -oris, *n.*
- timid**, timidus, -a, -um.
- tired**, lassus, -a, -um.
- Titus**, Titus, -ī, *m.*
- to**, ad, *with acc.*; (*into*), in, *with acc.*
- toil**, labor, -ōris, *m.*
- tongue**, lingua, -ae, *f.*
- tooth**, dēns, dentis, *m.*
- top of**, summus, -a, -um (*superl. of superus, superior, supremus and summus*).
- touch**, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum.
- town**, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
- trace**, vēstigium, -ī, *n.*
- track**, vēstigium, -ī, *n.*; (*of a wheel*), orbita, -ae, *f.*
- trader**, mercātor, -tōris, *m.*
- treachery**, perfidia, -ae, *f.*; insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
- treaty**, foedus, -eris, *n.*
- tree**, arbor, -oris, *f.*
- tremble**, tremō, -ere, tremui.
- tribe**, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
- tribute**, vectigal, -gālis, *n.*
- triumph**, triumphus, -ī, *m.*
- true**, vērus, -a, -um.
- trumpet**, tuba, -ae, *f.*

trust, *crēdō*, -ere, *crēdidi*,
crēditum; (*confide in*),
fido, -ere, *fisus sum*.
trusty, *fidus*, -a, -um.
try, *cōnor*, *dep.*, 1; **try out**,
expor, -iri, *expertus sum*.
tube, *tubus*, -i, *m*.
tumult, *tumultus*, -ūs, *m*.
turn back, *revertor*, -ī, -vertī,
 -versum.
twelve, *duodecim*, *indecl*.
twist, *torqueō*, -ēre, *torsi*,
tortum.

U

unbelievable, *incrēdibilis*, -e.
understand, *intellegō*, -ere, *intellēxi*, *intellēctum*.
unfair, *inīquus*, -a, -um.
unfriendly, *inimicus*, -a, -um.
unhappy, *miser*, -era, -erum;
 (*unlucky*), *infēlix*, -īcis.
unhealthy, *pestilēns*, -lentis.
unjust, *inīquus*, -a, -um.
unlike, *dissimilis*, -e.
until, *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*.
unworthy, *indignus*, -a, -um.
upright, *probus*, -a, -um.
uprising, *tumultus*, -ūs, *m*.
urge, *hortor*, *dep.*, 1.
use, *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum*.

V

valor, *virtūs*, -tūtis, *f*.
vehement, *vehemēns*, -mentis;
 (*violent*), *violentus*, -a, -um.
veil, *vēlum*, -ī, *n*.

Vergil, *Vergilius*, -ī, *m*.
very many, *complūrēs*, *complūra*, -ium.
victor, *victor*, -ōris, *m*.
victory, *victōria*, -ae, *f*.
violent, *violentus*, -a, -um;
vehemēns, -mentis.
Virgil, *Vergilius*, -ī, *m*.
virtues, *virtūtēs*, -um, *f. pl*.
voice, *vōx*, *vōcis*, *f*.
vow, *voveō*, -ēre, *vōvī*, *vōtum*.

W

wage (war), *gerō*, -ere, *gessi*,
gestum.
wait for, *expectō*, 1.
wall, *mūrus*, -ī, *m*.; **walls**
 (*fortifications*), *moenia*,
 -ium, *n. pl*.
wander, *errō*, 1; *vagor*, *dep.*, 1.
war, *bellum*, -ī, *n*.
warn, *moneō*, -ēre, *monuī*,
monitum.
wash, *lavō*, -āre, *lāvī*, *lautum*
 or *lōtum*.
watch, *speculor*, *dep.*, 1; **watch**
over, *praesideō*, -ēre, -sēdī,
 -sessum.
water, *aqua*, -ae, *f*.
wave, *unda*, -ae, *f*.
way, *via*, -ae, *f*.
wealth, *opēs*, *opum*, *f. pl*.
wealthy, *opulentus*, -a, -um.
weary, *lassus*, -a, -um.
weather, *tempestās*, -tātis, *f*.
weave, *texō*, -ere, *texuī*, *tex-*
tum.

- weigh**, pendō, -ere, pependi, pēsum.
weight, gravitās, -tātus, *f*.
weighty, gravis, -e.
wheel, rota, -ae, *f*.
where, ubi.
whether, num.
which (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum.
while, dum.
whirl around, rotō, 1.
white, albus, -a, -um; (*glis-tening*), candidus, -a, -um.
whole, tōtus, tōta, tōtum.
why, cūr; quam ob rem.
wicked, nefārius, -a, -um.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
widely, lātē, *adv*.
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f*.
wind, ventus, -ī, *m*.
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n*.
wing (*of an army*), cornū, -ūs, *n*.
wisdom, prūdentia, -ae, *f*.
wish, volō, velle, voluī; (*wish for*), optō, 1; *wish not*, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
with, eum, *with abl*.; **with difficulty**, difficile, difficulter, *adv*.; **with much difficulty**, difficillimē; **with pleasure** (*willing*), libēns, -entis.
withdraw, discēdō, -ere, discessī, discessum.
witness, testis, -is, *m*.
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f*.; *mulier*, -ieris, *f*.
wonder'at, mīror, *dep.*, 1.
- wood**, lignum, -ī, *n*.; **woods**, silva, -ae, *f*.
wooded, silvestris, -tre.
word, verbum, -ī, *n*.
work, labor, -ōris, *m*.; (*verb*), labōrō, 1.
worm, vermis, -is, *m*.
worse, peior (*comp. of malus*, peior, pessimus).
worthy, dignus, -a, -um.
wound, vulnus, -eris, *n*.; (*verb*), vulnerō, 1.
wrath, ira, -ae, *f*.
wreath, corōna, -ae, *f*.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum.
wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f*.
- Y**
- year**, annus, -ī, *m*.
yes, aiō, ita, sic, certe, sãnē, quidem, etiam, vērō, rēctē enimvērō.
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum.
you, tū, tuī, *pers. pron*.
young, iuvenis, iūnior (*minor* nātū), minimus (nātū); **young man**, iuvenis, -is, *m*.; *adulēscēns*, -centis, *m*.
your (*of one person*), tuus, tua, tuum; (*of more than one*), vester, -tra, trum.
- Z**
- zeal**, studium, -ī, *n*.
zealous, studiōsus, -a, -um.

INDEX

The numbers refer to sections, except those with p., which refer to pages.

- Abbreviations, from the Latin, p. 272.
- Ablative, of separation, of means or instrument, of agent, 31; of place, of accompaniment, 38; of respect, 50; of manner, 67; of cause, 72; descriptive, 106; absolute, 155; of price, 177; with comparatives, 209; measure of difference, 216.
- Accent, 11.
- Accusative, predicate, 72; subject, 161.
- Adjectives, agreement of, 44; ten irregular, 117; pronominal, 176, 193; declension of, pp. 278-282; comparison of, 206, 213, 214, p. 282; irregular comparison, 220, 225, pp. 282-283.
- Adverbs, 43, 104; comparison of, 208, 215, p. 283; irregular comparison of, 226, pp. 283-284.
- Agreement, of adjectives, 44; of relative, 189.
- Alphabet, 2.
- Antequam** and **priusquam** clauses, 321.
- Apposition, 26.
- Base, 18.
- Cases, 16.
- Clauses, causal, 309; concessive, 316; conditional, 345; descriptive relative, 341; with **dum**, 321.
- Conjugation, 17.
- Consonants, 6; pronunciation of, 7.
- Cum**, preposition with the abl. enclitic, 175, 188. Conjunction; temporal, 286; causal, 309; concessive, 316.
- Dative, of possession, 44; of purpose or tendency, 79; with adjectives, 120; with compound verbs, 102; verbs governing, 349; of agent, 368.
- Deponent Verbs, 159, 160; with the ablative, 239.
- Derivative Notebook, p. xviii, 22; sample pages of, pp. xxi-xxii.
- Diphthongs, 5.
- English Derivatives, dictation of, p. 101, n. 1; added words leading to, pp. 212-214.
- Eō**, 325.
- Facio**, compounds of, 315.
- Ferō**, 308.
- Fiō**, 313, 314.
- Gender of Nouns, 14; of first declension, p. 11, n. 1.
- Genitive, with adjectives, 55; partitive, 79; descriptive, 106; possessive, 150; of measure, 246.
- Gerund, 276.
- Gerundive, 276.
- Harmony of Tenses, 281.
- Imperative Constructions, 271.

- Index Book, 22, pp. xvii-xix.
 Indirect Discourse, general principles of, 376.
 Infinitive, complementary, 125; with subject accusative, 161; as noun, 372.
 Inflection, 13.
 Latin Derivation, pp. 132-137.
 Locative, 86.
Målō, 320.
Miseret, paenitet, etc., construction with, 349.
Nōlō, 320.
Nonne, num, -ne in questions, 73, 184.
 Nouns, gender of, 14; number of, 15; cases of, 16; declension, pp. 6, 11, 33, 67.
 Numerals, 243; cardinals, 244; declension of, 245; ordinals, 251.
 Order of Words, p. 10, n. 1.
 Paradigms, pp. 273-319.
 Parts of Speech, 12.
 Periphrastic Conjugations, 367.
 Place, relations of, 326.
Plūs, declension of, p. 281.
Postquam, etc., in temporal clauses, 321.
 Predicate Noun, 20.
 Prefixes, 100, pp. 322-323.
 Prepositions, 99, p. 321.
 Principal Parts, 65.
 Pronominal Adjectives, 176, 193.
 Pronouns, personal, reflexive, 175; demonstrative, 181; intensive, 182; relative, 188; agreement of, 189; interrogative, 193; indefinite, 194.
 Pronunciation, 1.
 Purpose, pure, 286; relative and substantive, 337; different ways of expressing, 354.
Quod, quia, quoniam clauses, 309.
 Quotations, Proverbs, Phrases, pp. 262-271.
 Reading Lessons, pp. 215-219.
 Reading Matter, pp. 215-245; notes to, pp. 246-258.
 Result, pure, 326; relative and substantive, 341.
 Rules of Syntax, pp. 319-333.
 Semi-deponents, 252.
 Songs, Latin, pp. 259-261.
 Space, extent of, 145.
 Subjunctive, synopsis of, 280; in indirect questions, 281; of purpose, 286, 337; with exhortations, in wishes, 291; in prohibitions, potential, 295; of result, 326, 341; of proviso, 354.
 Suffixes, Latin and English, pp. 132-137.
 Supines, 276.
 Syllables, 8; quantity of, 10.
 Synopsis of the indicative, 85; of the subjunctive, 280.
 Tense, 17; harmony of, 281; in indirect discourse, 376.
 Time, relations of, 145.
 Verbs, of fearing, construction with, 316; impersonal, 249; defective, 353; of remembering and forgetting, construction with, 354.
 Vocabulary, English-Latin, p. 335; Latin-English, p. 405.
Volō, 320.
 Vowels, 3; pronunciation of, 4; quantity of, 9.
 Word Order, p. 10, n. 1.

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY



FROM THE LIBRARY OF
ALBERT ANDREW HOWARD
POPE PROFESSOR OF LATIN

THE GIFT OF HIS SON
HERMANN HAGEN HOWARD
Class of 1916

RECEIVED OCTOBER 15, 1929

